

Securities Rulemaking Board, or the rules of the association, by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, being suspended or barred from being associated with a member, or any other fitting sanction.

(8) The rules of the association are in accordance with the provisions of subsection (h) of this section, and, in general, provide a fair procedure for the disciplining of members and persons associated with members, the denial of membership to any person seeking membership therein, the barring of any person from becoming associated with a member thereof, and the prohibition or limitation by the association of any person with respect to access to services offered by the association or a member thereof.

(9) The rules of the association do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(10) The requirements of subsection (c), insofar as these may be applicable, are satisfied.

(11) The rules of the association include provisions governing the form and content of quotations relating to securities sold otherwise than on a national securities exchange which may be distributed or published by any member or person associated with a member, and the persons to whom such quotations may be supplied. Such rules relating to quotations shall be designed to produce fair and informative quotations, to prevent fictitious or misleading quotations, and to promote orderly procedures for collecting, distributing, and publishing quotations.

(12) The rules of the association to promote just and equitable principles of trade, as required by paragraph (6), include rules to prevent members of the association from participating in any limited partnership rollup transaction (as such term is defined in paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 78n(h) of this title) unless such transaction was conducted in accordance with procedures designed to protect the rights of limited partners, including—

(A) the right of dissenting limited partners to one of the following:

(i) an appraisal and compensation;

(ii) retention of a security under substantially the same terms and conditions as the original issue;

(iii) approval of the limited partnership rollup transaction by not less than 75 percent of the outstanding securities of each of the participating limited partnerships;

(iv) the use of a committee that is independent, as determined in accordance with rules prescribed by the association, of the general partner or sponsor, that has been approved by a majority of the outstanding securities of each of the participating partnerships, and that has such authority as is necessary to protect the interest of limited partners, including the authority to hire independent advisors, to negotiate with the general partner or sponsor on behalf of the limited partners, and to make a recommendation to the limited partners with respect to the proposed transaction; or

(v) other comparable rights that are prescribed by rule by the association and that are designed to protect dissenting limited partners;

(B) the right not to have their voting power unfairly reduced or abridged;

(C) the right not to bear an unfair portion of the costs of a proposed limited partnership rollup transaction that is rejected; and

(D) restrictions on the conversion of contingent interests or fees into non-contingent interests or fees and restrictions on the receipt of a non-contingent equity interest in exchange for fees for services which have not yet been provided.

As used in this paragraph, the term "dissenting limited partner" means a person who, on the date on which soliciting material is mailed to investors, is a holder of a beneficial interest in a limited partnership that is the subject of a limited partnership rollup transaction, and who casts a vote against the transaction and complies with procedures established by the association, except that for purposes of an exchange or tender offer, such person shall file an objection in writing under the rules of the association during the period in which the offer is outstanding.

(13) The rules of the association prohibit the authorization for quotation on an automated interdealer quotation system sponsored by the association of any security designated by the Commission as a national market system security resulting from a limited partnership rollup transaction (as such term is defined in paragraphs (4) and (5) of section 78n(h) of this title), unless such transaction was conducted in accordance with procedures designed to protect the rights of limited partners, including—

(A) the right of dissenting limited partners to one of the following:

(i) an appraisal and compensation;

(ii) retention of a security under substantially the same terms and conditions as the original issue;

(iii) approval of the limited partnership rollup transaction by not less than 75 percent of the outstanding securities of each of the participating limited partnerships;

(iv) the use of a committee that is independent, as determined in accordance with rules prescribed by the association, of the general partner or sponsor, that has been approved by a majority of the outstanding securities of each of the participating partnerships, and that has such authority as is necessary to protect the interest of limited partners, including the authority to hire independent advisors, to negotiate with the general partner or sponsor on behalf of the limited partners, and to make a recommendation to the limited partners with respect to the proposed transaction; or

(v) other comparable rights that are prescribed by rule by the association and that are designed to protect dissenting limited partners;

- (B) the right not to have their voting power unfairly reduced or abridged;
- (C) the right not to bear an unfair portion of the costs of a proposed limited partnership rollup transaction that is rejected; and
- (D) restrictions on the conversion of contingent interests or fees into non-contingent interests or fees and restrictions on the receipt of a non-contingent equity interest in exchange for fees for services which have not yet been provided.

As used in this paragraph, the term "dissenting limited partner" means a person who, on the date on which soliciting material is mailed to investors, is a holder of a beneficial interest in a limited partnership that is the subject of a limited partnership rollup transaction, and who casts a vote against the transaction and complies with procedures established by the association, except that for purposes of an exchange or tender offer, such person shall file an objection in writing under the rules of the association during the period during which the offer is outstanding.

(14) The rules of the association include provisions governing the sales, or offers of sales, of securities on the premises of any military installation to any member of the Armed Forces or a dependent thereof, which rules require

- (A) the broker or dealer performing brokerage services to clearly and conspicuously disclose to potential investors—
  - (i) that the securities offered are not being offered or provided by the broker or dealer on behalf of the Federal Government, and that its offer is not sanctioned, recommended, or encouraged by the Federal Government; and
  - (ii) the identity of the registered broker-dealer offering the securities;
- (B) such broker or dealer to perform an appropriate suitability determination, including consideration of costs and knowledge about securities, prior to making a recommendation of a security to a member of the Armed Forces or a dependent thereof; and
- (C) that no person receive any referral fee or incentive compensation in connection with a sale or offer of sale of securities, unless such person is an associated person of a registered broker or dealer and is qualified pursuant to the rules of a self-regulatory organization.

(15) The rules of the association provide that the association shall—

- (A) request guidance from the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board in interpretation of the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board; and
- (B) provide information to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board about the enforcement actions and examinations of the association under section 78o-4(b)(2)(E) of this title, so that the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board may—
  - (i) assist in such enforcement actions and examinations; and
  - (ii) evaluate the ongoing effectiveness of the rules of the Board.

**(c) National association rules; provision for registration of affiliated securities association**

The Commission may permit or require the rules of an association applying for registration pursuant to subsection (b), to provide for the admission of an association registered as an affiliated securities association pursuant to subsection (d), to participation in said applicant association as an affiliate thereof, under terms permitting such powers and responsibilities to such affiliate, and under such other appropriate terms and conditions, as may be provided by the rules of said applicant association, if such rules appear to the Commission to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors and to carry out the purposes of this section. The duties and powers of the Commission with respect to any national securities association or any affiliated securities association shall in no way be limited by reason of any such affiliation.

**(d) Registration as affiliated association; prerequisites; association rules**

An applicant association shall not be registered as an affiliated securities association unless it appears to the Commission that—

- (1) such association, notwithstanding that it does not satisfy the requirements set forth in paragraph (1) of subsection (b), will, forthwith upon the registration thereof, be admitted to affiliation with an association registered as a national securities association pursuant to subsection (b), in the manner and under the terms and conditions provided by the rules of said national securities association in accordance with subsection (c); and
- (2) such association and its rules satisfy the requirements set forth in paragraphs (2) to (10), inclusive, and paragraph (12),<sup>1</sup> of subsection (b); except that in the case of any such association any restrictions upon membership therein of the type authorized by paragraph (3) of subsection (b) shall not be less stringent than in the case of the national securities association with which such association is to be affiliated.

**(e) Dealings with nonmember professionals**

(1) The rules of a registered securities association may provide that no member thereof shall deal with any nonmember professional (as defined in paragraph (2) of this subsection) except at the same prices, for the same commissions or fees, and on the same terms and conditions as are by such member accorded to the general public.

(2) For the purposes of this subsection, the term "nonmember professional" shall include (A) with respect to transactions in securities other than municipal securities, any registered broker or dealer who is not a member of any registered securities association, except such a broker or dealer who deals exclusively in commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, and commercial bills, and (B) with respect to transactions in municipal securities, any municipal securities dealer (other than a bank or division or department of a bank) who is not a member of any registered securities association and any municipal securities broker who is not a member of any such association.

(3) Nothing in this subsection shall be so construed or applied as to prevent (A) any member of a registered securities association from granting to any other member of any registered securities association any dealer's discount, allowance, commission, or special terms, in connection with the purchase or sale of securities, or (B) any member of a registered securities association or any municipal securities dealer which is a bank or a division or department of a bank from granting to any member of any registered securities association or any such municipal securities dealer any dealer's discount, allowance, commission, or special terms in connection with the purchase or sale of municipal securities: *Provided, however,* That the granting of any such discount, allowance, commission, or special terms in connection with the purchase or sale of municipal securities shall be subject to rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board adopted pursuant to section 78o-4(b)(2)(K) of this title.

**(f) Transactions in municipal securities**

Nothing in subsection (b)(6) or (b)(11) of this section shall be construed to permit a registered securities association to make rules concerning any transaction by a registered broker or dealer in a municipal security.

**(g) Denial of membership**

(1) A registered securities association shall deny membership to any person who is not a registered broker or dealer.

(2) A registered securities association may, and in cases in which the Commission, by order, directs as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors shall, deny membership to any registered broker or dealer, and bar from becoming associated with a member any person, who is subject to a statutory disqualification. A registered securities association shall file notice with the Commission not less than thirty days prior to admitting any registered broker or dealer to membership or permitting any person to become associated with a member, if the association knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, that such broker or dealer or person was subject to a statutory disqualification. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3)(A) A registered securities association may deny membership to, or condition the membership of, a registered broker or dealer if (i) such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of financial responsibility or operational capability or such broker or dealer or any natural person associated with such broker or dealer does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the association or (ii) such broker or dealer or person associated with such broker or dealer has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he will again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A registered securities association may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a member and the natural persons associated with such an applicant in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the association.

(B) A registered securities association may bar a natural person from becoming associated with a member or condition the association of a natural person with a member if such natural person (i) does not meet such standards of training, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the association or (ii) has engaged and there is a reasonable likelihood he will again engage in acts or practices inconsistent with just and equitable principles of trade. A registered securities association may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to become a person associated with a member in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the association and require a natural person associated with a member, or any class of such natural persons, to be registered with the association in accordance with procedures so established.

(C) A registered securities association may bar any person from becoming associated with a member if such person does not agree (i) to supply the association with such information with respect to its relationship and dealings with the member as may be specified in the rules of the association and (ii) to permit examination of its books and records to verify the accuracy of any information so supplied.

(D) Nothing in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C) of this paragraph shall be construed to permit a registered securities association to deny membership to or condition the membership of, or bar any person from becoming associated with or condition the association of any person with, a broker or dealer that engages exclusively in transactions in municipal securities.

(4) A registered securities association may deny membership to a registered broker or dealer not engaged in a type of business in which the rules of the association require members to be engaged: *Provided, however,* That no registered securities association may deny membership to a registered broker or dealer by reason of the amount of such type of business done by such broker or dealer or the other types of business in which he is engaged.

**(h) Discipline of registered securities association members and persons associated with members; summary proceedings**

(1) In any proceeding by a registered securities association to determine whether a member or person associated with a member should be disciplined (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection) the association shall bring specific charges, notify such member or person of, and give him an opportunity to defend against, such charges, and keep a record. A determination by the association to impose a disciplinary sanction shall be supported by a statement setting forth—

(A) any act or practice in which such member or person associated with a member has been found to have engaged, or which such member or person has been found to have omitted;

(B) the specific provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or the rules of the association which any such act or practice, or omission to act, is deemed to violate; and

(C) the sanction imposed and the reason therefor.

(2) In any proceeding by a registered securities association to determine whether a person shall be denied membership, barred from becoming associated with a member, or prohibited or limited with respect to access to services offered by the association or a member thereof (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection), the association shall notify such person of and give him an opportunity to be heard upon, the specific grounds for denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation under consideration and keep a record. A determination by the association to deny membership, bar a person from becoming associated with a member, or prohibit or limit a person with respect to access to services offered by the association or a member thereof shall be supported by a statement setting forth the specific grounds on which the denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is based.

(3) A registered securities association may summarily (A) suspend a member or person associated with a member who has been and is expelled or suspended from any self-regulatory organization or barred or suspended from being associated with a member of any self-regulatory organization, (B) suspend a member who is in such financial or operating difficulty that the association determines and so notifies the Commission that the member cannot be permitted to continue to do business as a member with safety to investors, creditors, other members, or the association, or (C) limit or prohibit any person with respect to access to services offered by the association if subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph is applicable to such person or, in the case of a person who is not a member, if the association determines that such person does not meet the qualification requirements or other prerequisites for such access and such person cannot be permitted to continue to have such access with safety to investors, creditors, members, or the association. Any person aggrieved by any such summary action shall be promptly afforded an opportunity for a hearing by the association in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection. The Commission, by order, may stay any such summary action on its own motion or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby, if the Commission determines summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments) that such stay is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

**(i) Obligation to maintain registration, disciplinary, and other data**

**(1) Maintenance of system to respond to inquiries**

A registered securities association shall—

(A) establish and maintain a system for collecting and retaining registration information;

(B) establish and maintain a toll-free telephone listing, and a readily accessible electronic or other process, to receive and promptly respond to inquiries regarding—

(i) registration information on its members and their associated persons; and

(ii) registration information on the members and their associated persons of any registered national securities exchange that uses the system described in subparagraph (A) for the registration of its members and their associated persons; and

(C) adopt rules governing the process for making inquiries and the type, scope, and presentation of information to be provided in response to such inquiries in consultation with any registered national securities exchange providing information pursuant to subparagraph (B)(ii).

**(2) Recovery of costs**

A registered securities association may charge persons making inquiries described in paragraph (1)(B), other than individual investors, reasonable fees for responses to such inquiries.

**(3) Process for disputed information**

Each registered securities association shall adopt rules establishing an administrative process for disputing the accuracy of information provided in response to inquiries under this subsection in consultation with any registered national securities exchange providing information pursuant to paragraph (1)(B)(ii).

**(4) Limitation on liability**

A registered securities association, or an exchange reporting information to such an association, shall not have any liability to any person for any actions taken or omitted in good faith under this subsection.

**(5) Definition**

For purposes of this subsection, the term "registration information" means the information reported in connection with the registration or licensing of brokers and dealers and their associated persons, including disciplinary actions, regulatory, judicial, and arbitration proceedings, and other information required by law, or exchange or association rule, and the source and status of such information.

**(j) Registration for sales of private securities offerings**

A registered securities association shall create a limited qualification category for any associated person of a member who effects sales as part of a primary offering of securities not involving a public offering, pursuant to section 77c(b), 77d(2),<sup>1</sup> or 77d(6)<sup>1</sup> of this title and the rules and regulations thereunder, and shall deem qualified in such limited qualification category, without testing, any bank employee who, in the six month period preceding November 12, 1999, engaged in effecting such sales.

**(k) Limited purpose national securities association**

**(1) Regulation of members with respect to security futures products**

A futures association registered under section 21 of title 7 shall be a registered national securities association for the limited purpose of regulating the activities of members who are registered as brokers or dealers in security futures products pursuant to section 78o(b)(11) of this title.

**(2) Requirements for registration**

Such a securities association shall—

(A) be so organized and have the capacity to carry out the purposes of the securities laws applicable to security futures products and to comply, and (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78s(g)(2) of this title) to enforce compliance by its members and persons associated with its members, with the provisions of the securities laws applicable to security futures products, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its rules;

(B) have rules that—

(i) are designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices, to promote just and equitable principles of trade, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest, including rules governing sales practices and the advertising of security futures products reasonably comparable to those of other national securities associations registered pursuant to subsection (a) that are applicable to security futures products; and

(ii) are not designed to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this chapter or the administration of the association;

(C) have rules that provide that (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78s(g)(2) of this title) its members and persons associated with its members shall be appropriately disciplined for violation of any provision of the securities laws applicable to security futures products, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the association, by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, being suspended or barred from being associated with a member, or any other fitting sanction; and

(D) have rules that ensure that members and natural persons associated with members meet such standards of training, experience, and competence necessary to effect transactions in security futures products and are tested for their knowledge of securities and security futures products.

**(3) Exemption from rule change submission**

Such a securities association shall be exempt from submitting proposed rule changes pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title, except that—

(A) the association shall file proposed rule changes related to higher margin levels, fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, reporting, listing standards, or decimal pricing for security futures products, sales practices for, advertising of, or standards of training, experience, competence, or other qualifications for security futures products for persons who effect transactions in security futures products, or rules effectuating the association's obligation to enforce the securities laws pursuant to section 78s(b)(7) of this title;

(B) the association shall file pursuant to sections 78s(b)(1) and 78s(b)(2) of this title proposed rule changes related to margin, except for changes resulting in higher margin levels; and

(C) the association shall file pursuant to section 78s(b)(1) of this title proposed rule changes that have been abrogated by the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b)(7)(C) of this title.

**(4) Other exemptions**

Such a securities association shall be exempt from and shall not be required to enforce compliance by its members, and its members shall not, solely with respect to their transactions effected in security futures products, be required to comply, with the following provisions of this chapter and the rules thereunder:

(A) Section 78h of this title.

(B) Subsections (b)(1), (b)(3), (b)(4), (b)(5), (b)(8), (b)(10), (b)(11), (b)(12), (b)(13), (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) of this section.

(C) Subsections (d), (f), and (k)<sup>1</sup> of section 78q of this title.

(D) Subsections (a), (f), and (h) of section 78s of this title.

**(l) Rules to avoid duplicative regulation of dual registrants**

Consistent with this chapter, each national securities association registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting rules applicable to any broker or dealer registered with the Commission pursuant to section 78o(b) of this title (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 6f(a) of title 7 (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the application of—

(1) rules of such national securities association of the type specified in section 78o(c)(3)(B) of this title involving security futures products; and

(2) similar rules of national securities associations registered pursuant to subsection (k) of this section and national securities exchanges registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title involving security futures products.

#### **(m) Procedures and rules for security future products**

A national securities association registered pursuant to subsection (a) shall, not later than 8 months after December 21, 2000, implement the procedures specified in section 78f(h)(5)(A) of this title and adopt the rules specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of section 78f(h)(5) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §15A, as added June 25, 1938, ch. 677, §1, 52 Stat. 1070; amended Pub. L. 88–467, §7, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 574; Pub. L. 94–29, §12, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 127; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, §102(g), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3218; Pub. L. 101–429, title V, §509, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 957; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §106(b)(1), title III, §303(a), (c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2350, 2364, 2366; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §203, Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1391; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §§203(c), 206(j), (k)(1)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-422, 2763A-433; Pub. L. 109–290, §§5, 6, Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1319, 1320; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §975(f), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1923.)

### **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (b)(2), (6), (7), (9), (h)(1)(B), (k)(2)(B)(ii), (4), and (l), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Paragraph (12), of subsection (b) of this section, referred to in subsec. (d)(2), was omitted in the general amendment of subsec. (b) by Pub. L. 94–29, see par. (11) of subsec. (b). A new par. (12) was added by Pub. L. 103–302, §303(a).

Sections 77d(2) and 77d(6) of this title, referred to in subsec. (j), were redesignated sections 77d(a)(2) and 77d(a)(6), respectively, of this title by Pub. L. 112–106, title II, §201(b)(1), (c)(1), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 314.

Subsection (k) of section 78q of this title, referred to in subsec. (k)(4)(C), was redesignated subsec. (j) by Pub. L. 111–203, title VI, §617(a)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1616.

### **AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (b)(15). Pub. L. 111–203 added par. (15).

**2006**—Subsec. (b)(14). Pub. L. 109–290, §5, added par. (14).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 109–290, §6, inserted heading and amended text of subsec. (i) generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "A registered securities association shall, within one year from October 15, 1990, (1) establish and maintain a toll-free telephone listing to receive inquiries regarding disciplinary actions involving its members and their associated persons, and (2) promptly respond to such inquiries in writing. Such association may charge persons, other than individual investors, reasonable fees for written responses to such inquiries. Such an association shall not have any liability to any person for any actions taken or omitted in good faith under this paragraph."

**2000**—Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §203(c)], added subsec. (k).

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(j)], added subsec. (l).

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(k)(1)], added subsec. (m).

**1999**—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 106–102 added subsec. (j).

**1993**—Subsec. (b)(12). Pub. L. 103–202, §303(a), added par. (12).

Subsec. (b)(13). Pub. L. 103–202, §303(c), added par. (13).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103–202, §106(b)(1)(A), redesignated par. (3) as entire subsec. (f) and struck out pars. (1) and (2) which read as follows:

"(1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) of this subsection, nothing in this section shall be construed to apply with respect to any transaction by a registered broker or dealer in any exempted security.

"(2) A registered securities association may adopt and implement rules applicable to members of such association (A) to enforce compliance by registered brokers and dealers with applicable provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, (B) to provide that its members and persons associated with its members shall be appropriately disciplined, in accordance with subsections (b)(7), (b)(8), and (h) of this section, for violation of applicable provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, (C) to provide for reasonable inspection and examination of the books and records of registered brokers and dealers, (D) to provide for the matters described in paragraphs (b)(3), (b)(4), and (b)(5) of this section, (E) to implement the provisions of subsection (g) of this section, and (F) to prohibit fraudulent, misleading, deceptive, and false advertising."

Subsec. (g)(3)(D). Pub. L. 103–202, §106(b)(1)(B)(i), substituted "transactions in municipal securities" for "transactions in exempted securities".

Subsec. (g)(4), (5). Pub. L. 103–202, §106(b)(1)(B)(ii), (iii), redesignated par. (5) as (4) and struck out former par. (4) which allowed a registered securities association to deny membership to, condition the membership of, or to otherwise bar association with, the association, under circumstances where a

government securities broker or dealer or other person violated financial responsibility rules adopted under section 78o-5(b)(1)(A) of this title, or where it appeared likely that such person or entity had or would engage in conduct which would subject such person or entity to sanctions under section 78o-5(c) of this title.

**1990**—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 101-429 added subsec. (i).

**1986**—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(g)(1), amended subsec. (f) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (f) read as follows: "Nothing in this section shall be construed to apply with respect to any transaction by a broker or dealer in any exempted security."

Subsec. (g)(3)(D). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(g)(2)(A), added subpar. (D).

Subsec. (g)(4), (5). Pub. L. 99-571, §102(g)(2)(B), (C), added par. (4) and redesignated former par. (4) as (5).

**1975**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(2), struck out "with the Commission" after "registered", inserted reference to section 78s(a) of this title, substituted provisions covering an application for registration in the form prescribed by Commission rule containing the rules of the association and such other information and documents as the Commission prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors for provisions covering a statement in the form prescribed by the Commission setting forth specified information and accompanied by specified documents, and struck out provision that registration not be construed as a waiver of constitutional rights or as a waiver of the right to contest the validity of Commission rules or regulations.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(2), amended subsec. (b) generally, to conform its provisions concerning the registration and regulation of national and affiliated securities associations to those covering the registration and regulation of national securities exchanges contained in section 78f of this title and inserted provisions necessary to accommodate the creation of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board and to implement its purposes.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (i) as (e) and in subsec. (e) as so redesignated substituted "nonmember professional" for "nonmember broker or dealer" in par. (1), substituted "term 'nonmember professional' shall include (A) with respect to transactions in securities other than municipal securities, any registered broker or dealer who is not a member of any registered securities association, except such a broker or dealer who deals exclusively in commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, and commercial bills" for "term 'nonmember broker or dealer' shall include any broker or dealer who makes use of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce the purchase or sale of, any security otherwise than on a national securities exchange, who is not a member of any registered securities association, except a broker or dealer who deals exclusively in commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills" and added cl. (B) in par. (2), and, in par. (3), designated existing provisions as cl. (A) and added cl. (B). Former subsec. (e), covering the grant and denial of registration and the revocation of affiliated association registration, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (m) as (f). Former subsec. (f), covering withdrawal from registration, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), (4), added subsec. (g). Former subsec. (g), covering review by the Commission of adverse actions against association members and stays of such actions, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), (4), added subsec. (h). Former subsec. (h), covering the Commission's action upon findings, was struck out. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (i) as (e) and amended subsec. (e) as so redesignated.

Subsecs. (j) to (l). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), struck out subsecs. (j) to (l) which covered the filing of changes or additions to association rules and current information, the abrogation and alteration of association rules and supplements to association rules, the suspension of an association or its members, the revocation of registration, the expulsion of members, and the removal of officers or directors. See section 78s of this title.

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), redesignated subsec. (m) as (f).

Subsec. (n). Pub. L. 94-29, §12(3), struck out subsec. (n) which directed that provisions of this section prevail in the event of any conflict between this section and any other law of the United States in force on June 25, 1938.

**1964**—Subsec. (b)(1), (2). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(1), substituted a period for the semicolon at end of pars. (1) and (2).

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(1), (2), substituted a period for the semicolon at end of par. (3), struck out "of" before "any means", substituted "paragraph (4) or (5) of this subsection, or a rule of the association permitted under this paragraph. The rules" for "paragraph (4) of this subsection: *Provided*, That the rules", and inserted provision authorizing a registered securities association to adopt rules under

which it might exclude from membership persons who had been suspended or expelled from a national securities exchange or who were barred or suspended from being associated with all brokers or dealers who are members of such an exchange for violation of exchange rules.

Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(1), (3), substituted a period for the semicolon at end of par. (4), deleted from text preceding cl. (A) the language "or (2) any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such broker or dealer (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions), or any person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by such broker or dealer, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such", inserted in cl. (A) "or has been and is barred or suspended from being associated with all brokers or dealers which are members of such exchange", inserted in cl. (B) provision for suspension for period not exceeding twelve months or barring or suspending the broker or dealer from being associated with a broker or dealer, inserted at the beginning of cl. (C) "whether prior or subsequent to becoming a broker or dealer," (derived from former cl. (1) of this paragraph) and added to cl. (C) provision conferring jurisdiction upon the Commission, an exchange, or a registered securities association to determine whether an individual is the cause of disciplinary action taken by them against a broker or a dealer, and added cl. (D).

Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(4), added par. (5). Former par. (5) redesignated (6).

Subsec. (b)(6) to (8). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(1), (4), substituted periods for semicolons at end of paragraphs, and redesignated former pars. (5) to (7) as (6) to (8), respectively. Former pars. (6) to (8) redesignated (7) to (9), respectively.

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(1), (4), (5), substituted a period for the semicolon at the end, redesignated former par. (8) as (9), and inserted "and persons associated with its members" and "or being suspended or barred from being associated with all members," , respectively. Former par. (9) redesignated (10).

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(4), (6), redesignated former par. (9) as (10), and inserted in paragraph preceding cl. (A) "and persons associated with members", "or the barring of any person from being associated with a member", "or other persons", and "or person", substituted a period for a comma at end of cls. (A) and (B) and a period for ", and" at end of cl. (C), inserted in cl. (A) "or other person" in two places and in concluding sentence "or whether any person shall be barred from being associated with a member", "or person", "or bar" in two places, and substituted a period for "; and", respectively. Former par. (10) redesignated (11).

Subsec. (b)(11). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(4), redesignated former par. (10) as (11).

Subsec. (b)(12). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(7), added par. (12).

Pub. L. 88-467, §7(a)(7), inserted effective date provisions for application of subsec. (b) prior to its amendment and since its amendment with July 1, 1964 as the guiding date.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(b), substituted "(10)" for "(9)" and inserted "and paragraph (12)," after ", inclusive,".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(c), provided that disciplinary action taken by a registered securities association against a person associated with a member will be reviewable by the Commission, shortened the period for review by an aggrieved person from sixty days or within such longer period as the Commission may determine to thirty days or within such longer period as the Commission may determine, authorized the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing on the question of stay to order no stay of action of a registered securities association pending the Commission's decision on review, and authorized the Commission to limit the hearing on the question of stay to affidavits and oral arguments.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(d), made the procedures and the Commission's authority in reviewing disciplinary action by a registered securities association against members and in reviewing association action in denying membership also applicable to Commission review of disciplinary action against persons associated with members and to the barring by an association of any person from being associated with a member.

Subsec. (k)(2). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(e), inserted ", or with such modifications of such alteration or supplement as it deems necessary" after "in the manner theretofore requested", redesignated cls. (1) to (4) as (A) to (D), respectively, and inserted in cl. (A) "or the barring from being associated with a member" and "or persons associated with members, or the qualifications required for members or natural persons associated with members or any class thereof".

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 88-467, §7(f), substituted a period for a semicolon at end of par. (1) and inserted in par. (2) preceding cl. (A) ", or to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or to bar any person from being associated with a member thereof,".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111-203 effective Oct. 1, 2010, see section 975(i) of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as a note under section 78o of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1999 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 106–102 effective at the end of the 18-month period beginning on Nov. 12, 1999, see section 209 of Pub. L. 106–102, set out as a note under section 1828 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1993 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by section 303(a), (c) of Pub. L. 103–202 effective 12 months after Dec. 17, 1993, with provisions for rulemaking authority and review of filings prior to effective date, see section 304(a) of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78f of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78o–5 of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

### **CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by section 106(b)(1) of Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78o–5 of this title.

Amendment by section 303(a), (c) of Pub. L. 103–202 not to limit authority of Securities and Exchange Commission, a registered securities association or a national securities exchange under any provision of this chapter, or preclude the Commission or such association or exchange from imposing a remedy or procedure required to be imposed under such amendment, see section 304(b) of Pub. L. 103–202, set out in an Effective Date of 1993 Amendment note under section 78f of this title.

### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

<sup>1</sup> *See References in Text note below.*

## **§78o–4. Municipal securities**

### **(a) Registration of municipal securities dealers**

(1)(A) It shall be unlawful for any municipal securities dealer (other than one registered as a broker or dealer under section 78o of this title) to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security unless such municipal securities dealer is registered in accordance with this subsection.

(B) It shall be unlawful for a municipal advisor to provide advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products or the issuance of municipal securities, or to undertake a solicitation of a municipal entity or obligated person, unless the municipal advisor is registered in accordance with this subsection.

(2) A municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor and any persons associated with such municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor as

the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Within forty-five days of the date of the filing of such application (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred twenty days of the date of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for the conclusion of such proceedings for up to ninety days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant the registration of a municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such a finding or if it finds that if the applicant were so registered, its registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under subsection (c) of this section.

(3) Any provision of this chapter (other than section 78e of this title or paragraph (1) of this subsection) which prohibits any act, practice, or course of business if the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce is used in connection therewith shall also prohibit any such act, practice, or course of business by any registered municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor or any person acting on behalf of such municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor, irrespective of any use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection therewith.

(4) The Commission, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor, or class of brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, or municipal advisors from any provision of this section or the rules or regulations thereunder, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this section.

(5) No municipal advisor shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to provide advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products, the issuance of municipal securities, or to undertake a solicitation of a municipal entity or obligated person, in connection with which such municipal advisor engages in any fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative act or practice.

**(b) Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board; rules and regulations**

(1) The Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board shall be composed of 15 members, or such other number of members as specified by rules of the Board pursuant to paragraph (2)(B),<sup>1</sup> which shall perform the duties set forth in this section. The members of the Board shall serve as members for a term of 3 years or for such other terms as specified by rules of the Board pursuant to paragraph (2)(B), and shall consist of (A) 8 individuals who are independent of any municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor, at least 1 of whom shall be representative of institutional or retail investors in municipal securities, at least 1 of whom shall be representative of municipal entities, and at least 1 of whom shall be a member of the public with knowledge of or experience in the municipal industry (which members are hereinafter referred to as "public representatives"); and (B) 7 individuals who are associated with a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor, including at least 1 individual who is associated with and representative of brokers, dealers, or municipal securities dealers that are not banks or subsidiaries or departments or divisions of banks (which members are hereinafter referred to as "broker-dealer representatives"), at least 1 individual who is associated with and representative of municipal securities dealers which are banks or subsidiaries or departments or divisions of banks (which members are hereinafter referred to as "bank representatives"), and at least 1 individual who is associated with a municipal advisor (which members are hereinafter referred to as "advisor representatives" and, together with the broker-dealer representatives and the bank representatives, are referred to as "regulated representatives"). Each member of the board shall be knowledgeable of matters related to the municipal securities markets. Prior to the expiration of the terms of office of the members of the Board, an election shall be held under rules adopted by the Board (pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(B) of this section) of the members to succeed such members.

(2) The Board shall propose and adopt rules to effect the purposes of this chapter with respect to transactions in municipal securities effected by brokers, dealers, and municipal securities dealers and advice provided to or on behalf of municipal entities or obligated persons by brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors with respect to municipal financial products, the issuance of municipal securities, and solicitations of municipal entities or obligated persons undertaken by brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors. The rules of the Board, as a minimum, shall:

(A) provide that no municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer shall effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security, and no broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor shall provide advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products or the issuance of municipal securities, unless such municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer meets such standards of operational capability and such municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer and every natural person associated with such municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer meet such standards of training, experience, competence, and such other qualifications

as the Board finds necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors and municipal entities or obligated persons. In connection with the definition and application of such standards the Board may—

- (i) appropriately classify municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors (taking into account relevant matters, including types of business done, nature of securities other than municipal securities sold, and character of business organization), and persons associated with municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors;
- (ii) specify that all or any portion of such standards shall be applicable to any such class; and
- (iii) require persons in any such class to pass tests administered in accordance with subsection (c)(7) of this section.

(B) establish fair procedures for the nomination and election of members of the Board and assure fair representation in such nominations and elections of public representatives, broker dealer representatives, bank representatives, and advisor representatives. Such rules—

- (i) shall provide that the number of public representatives of the Board shall at all times exceed the total number of regulated representatives and that the membership shall at all times be as evenly divided in number as possible between public representatives and regulated representatives;
- (ii) shall specify the length or lengths of terms members shall serve;
- (iii) may increase the number of members which shall constitute the whole Board, provided that such number is an odd number; and
- (iv) shall establish requirements regarding the independence of public representatives.

(C) be designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices, to promote just and equitable principles of trade, to foster cooperation and coordination with persons engaged in regulating, clearing, settling, processing information with respect to, and facilitating transactions in municipal securities and municipal financial products, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a free and open market in municipal securities and municipal financial products, and, in general, to protect investors, municipal entities, obligated persons, and the public interest; and not be designed to permit unfair discrimination among customers, municipal entities, obligated persons, municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, or municipal advisors, to fix minimum profits, to impose any schedule or fix rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, or municipal advisors, to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this chapter or the administration of the Board, or to impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(D) if the Board deems appropriate, provide for the arbitration of claims, disputes, and controversies relating to transactions in municipal securities and advice concerning municipal financial products: *Provided, however*, that no person other than a municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, or person associated with such a municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor may be compelled to submit to such arbitration except at his instance and in accordance with section 78cc of this title.

(E) provide for the periodic examination in accordance with subsection (c)(7) of this section of municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors to determine compliance with applicable provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and the rules of the Board. Such rules shall specify the minimum scope and frequency of such examinations and shall be designed to avoid unnecessary regulatory duplication or undue regulatory burdens for any such municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor.

(F) include provisions governing the form and content of quotations relating to municipal securities which may be distributed or published by any municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or person associated with such a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer, and the persons to whom such quotations may be supplied. Such rules relating to quotations shall be designed to produce fair and informative quotations, to prevent fictitious or misleading quotations, and to promote orderly procedures for collecting, distributing, and publishing quotations.

(G) prescribe records to be made and kept by municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors and the periods for which such records shall be preserved.

(H) define the term "separately identifiable department or division", as that term is used in section 78c(a)(30) of this title, in accordance with specified and appropriate standards to assure that a bank is not deemed to be engaged in the business of buying and selling municipal securities through a separately identifiable department or division unless such department or division is organized and administered so as to permit independent examination and enforcement of applicable provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and the rules of the Board. A separately identifiable department or division of a bank may be engaged in activities other than those relating to municipal securities.

(I) provide for the operation and administration of the Board, including the selection of a Chairman from among the members of the Board, the compensation of the members of the Board, and the appointment and compensation of such employees, attorneys, and consultants as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out the Board's functions under this section.

(J) provide that each municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, and municipal advisor shall pay to the Board such reasonable fees and charges as may be necessary or appropriate to defray the costs and expenses of operating and administering the Board. Such rules shall specify the amount of such fees and charges, which may

include charges for failure to submit to the Board, or to any information system operated by the Board, within the prescribed timeframes, any items of information or documents required to be submitted under any rule issued by the Board.

(K) establish the terms and conditions under which any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer may sell, or prohibit any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer from selling, any part of a new issue of municipal securities to a related account of a broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer during the underwriting period.

(L) with respect to municipal advisors—

(i) prescribe means reasonably designed to prevent acts, practices, and courses of business as are not consistent with a municipal advisor's fiduciary duty to its clients;

(ii) provide continuing education requirements for municipal advisors;

(iii) provide professional standards; and

(iv) not impose a regulatory burden on small municipal advisors that is not necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, municipal entities, and obligated persons, provided that there is robust protection of investors against fraud.

(3) The Board, in conjunction with or on behalf of any Federal financial regulator or self-regulatory organization, may

(A) establish information systems; and

(B) assess such reasonable fees and charges for the submission of information to, or the receipt of information from, such systems from any persons which systems may be developed for the purposes of serving as a repository of information from municipal market participants or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of the Board, a Federal financial regulator, or a self-regulatory organization, except that the Board—

(i) may not charge a fee to municipal entities or obligated persons to submit documents or other information to the Board or charge a fee to any person to obtain, directly from the Internet site of the Board, documents or information submitted by municipal entities, obligated persons, brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, or municipal advisors, including documents submitted under the rules of the Board or the Commission; and

(ii) shall not be prohibited from charging commercially reasonable fees for automated subscription-based feeds or similar services, or for charging for other data or document-based services customized upon request of any person, made available to commercial enterprises, municipal securities market professionals, or the general public, whether delivered through the Internet or any other means, that contain all or part of the documents or information, subject to approval of the fees by the Commission under section 78s(b) of this title.

(4) The Board may provide guidance and assistance in the enforcement of, and examination for, compliance with the rules of the Board to the Commission, a registered securities association under section 78o-3 of this title, or any other appropriate regulatory agency, as applicable.

(5) The Board, the Commission, and a registered securities association under section 78o-3 of this title, or the designees of the Board, the Commission, or such association, shall meet not less frequently than 2 times a year—

(A) to describe the work of the Board, the Commission, and the registered securities association involving the regulation of municipal securities; and

(B) to share information about—

(i) the interpretation of the Board, the Commission, and the registered securities association of Board rules; and

(ii) examination and enforcement of compliance with Board rules.

(7) <sup>2</sup> Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair or limit the power of the Commission under this chapter.

**(c) Discipline of municipal securities dealers; censure; suspension or revocation of registration; other sanctions; investigations**

(1) No broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal security, and no broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to provide advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products, the issuance of municipal securities, or to undertake a solicitation of a municipal entity or obligated person, in contravention of any rule of the Board. A municipal advisor and any person associated with such municipal advisor shall be deemed to have a fiduciary duty to any municipal entity for whom such municipal advisor acts as a municipal advisor, and no municipal advisor may engage in any act, practice, or course of business which is not consistent with a municipal advisor's fiduciary duty or that is in contravention of any rule of the Board.

(2) The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations, suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoke the registration of any municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor, if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, denial, suspension, or revocation, is in the public interest and that such municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78o(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of

such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(3) Pending final determination whether any registration under this section shall be revoked, the Commission, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors or municipal entities or obligated person.<sup>3</sup> Any registered municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission may deem necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors or municipal entities or obligated person,<sup>3</sup> withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration of such municipal securities dealer or municipal advisor.

(4) The Commission, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities or functions of any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with a municipal securities dealer, or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months or bar any such person from being associated with a broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, transfer agent, or nationally recognized statistical rating organization, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78o(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4). It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom an order entered pursuant to this paragraph or paragraph (5) of this subsection suspending or barring him from being associated with a municipal securities dealer is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with a municipal securities dealer without the consent of the Commission, and it shall be unlawful for any municipal securities dealer to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with him without the consent of the Commission, if such municipal securities dealer knew, or, in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order.

(5) With respect to any municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the appropriate regulatory agency for such municipal securities dealer may sanction any such municipal securities dealer in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (2) of this subsection and any person associated with such municipal securities dealer in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (4) of this subsection. In addition, such appropriate regulatory agency may, in accordance with section 1818 of title 12, enforce compliance by such municipal securities dealer or any person associated with such municipal securities dealer with the provisions of this section, section 78q of this title, the rules of the Board, and the rules of the Commission pertaining to municipal securities dealers, persons associated with municipal securities dealers, and transactions in municipal securities. For purposes of the preceding sentence, any violation of any such provision shall constitute adequate basis for the issuance of any order under section 1818(b) or 1818(c) of title 12, and the customers of any such municipal securities dealer shall be deemed to be "depositors" as that term is used in section 1818(c) of title 12. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to affect in any way the powers of such appropriate regulatory agency to proceed against such municipal securities dealer under any other provision of law.

(6)(A) The Commission, prior to the entry of an order of investigation, or commencement of any proceedings, against any municipal securities dealer, or person associated with any municipal securities dealer, for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, for violation of any provision of this section, section 78o(c)(1) or 78o(c)(2) of this title, any rule or regulation under any such section, or any rule of the Board, shall (i) give notice to the appropriate regulatory agency for such municipal securities dealer of the identity of such municipal securities dealer or person associated with such municipal securities dealer, the nature of and basis for such proposed action, and whether the Commission is seeking a monetary penalty against such municipal securities dealer or such associated person pursuant to section 78u-2 of this title; and (ii) consult with such appropriate regulatory agency concerning the effect of such proposed action on sound banking practices and the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such action with any proceeding or proposed proceeding by such appropriate regulatory agency against such municipal securities dealer or associated person.

(B) The appropriate regulatory agency for a municipal securities dealer (if other than the Commission), prior to the entry of an order of investigation, or commencement of any proceedings, against such municipal securities dealer or person associated with such municipal securities dealer, for violation of any provision of this section, the rules of the Board, or the rules or regulations of the Commission pertaining to municipal securities dealers, persons associated with municipal securities dealers, or transactions in municipal securities shall (i) give notice to the Commission of the identity of such municipal securities dealer or person associated with such municipal securities dealer and the nature of and basis for such proposed action and (ii) consult with the Commission concerning the effect of such proposed action on the protection of investors or municipal entities or obligated person<sup>3</sup> and the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such action with any proceeding or proposed proceeding by the Commission against such municipal securities dealer or associated person.

(C) Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to impair or limit (other than by the requirement of prior consultation) the power of the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency for a municipal securities dealer to

initiate any action of a class described in this paragraph or to affect in any way the power of the Commission or such appropriate regulatory agency to initiate any other action pursuant to this chapter or any other provision of law.

(7)(A) Tests required pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(A)(iii) of this section shall be administered by or on behalf of and periodic examinations pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(E) of this section shall be conducted by—

- (i) a registered securities association, in the case of municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers who are members of such association;
- (ii) the appropriate regulatory agency for any municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer, in the case of all other municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers; and
- (iii) the Commission, or its designee, in the case of municipal advisors.

(B) A registered securities association shall make a report of any examination conducted pursuant to subsection (b)(2)(E) of this section and promptly furnish the Commission a copy thereof and any data supplied to it in connection with such examination. Subject to such limitations as the Commission, by rule, determines to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors or municipal entities or obligated person,<sup>3</sup> the Commission shall, on request, make available to the Board a copy of any report of an examination of a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer made by or furnished to the Commission pursuant to this paragraph or section 78q(c)(3) of this title.

(8) The Commission is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise, in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to remove from office or censure any person who is, or at the time of the alleged violation or abuse was, a member or employee of the Board, who, the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, has willfully (A) violated any provision of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, or the rules of the Board or (B) abused his authority.

(9)(A) Fines collected by the Commission for violations of the rules of the Board shall be equally divided between the Commission and the Board.

(B) Fines collected by a registered securities association under section 78o-3(b)(7)<sup>4</sup> of this title with respect to violations of the rules of the Board shall be accounted for by such registered securities association separately from other fines collected under section 78o-3(b)(7)<sup>4</sup> of this title and shall be allocated between such registered securities association and the Board, and such allocation shall require the registered securities association to pay to the Board 1/3 of all fines collected by the registered securities association reasonably allocable to violations of the rules of the Board, or such other portion of such fines as may be directed by the Commission upon agreement between the registered securities association and the Board.

#### **(d) Issuance of municipal securities**

(1) Neither the Commission nor the Board is authorized under this chapter, by rule or regulation, to require any issuer of municipal securities, directly or indirectly through a purchaser or prospective purchaser of securities from the issuer, to file with the Commission or the Board prior to the sale of such securities by the issuer any application, report, or document in connection with the issuance, sale, or distribution of such securities.

(2) The Board is not authorized under this chapter to require any issuer of municipal securities, directly or indirectly through a municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, or otherwise, to furnish to the Board or to a purchaser or a prospective purchaser of such securities any application, report, document, or information with respect to such issuer: *Provided, however,* That the Board may require municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers or municipal advisors to furnish to the Board or purchasers or prospective purchasers of municipal securities applications, reports, documents, and information with respect to the issuer thereof which is generally available from a source other than such issuer. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to impair or limit the power of the Commission under any provision of this chapter.

#### **(e) Definitions**

For purposes of this section—

- (1) the term "Board" means the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board established under subsection (b)(1);
- (2) the term "guaranteed investment contract" includes any investment that has specified withdrawal or reinvestment provisions and a specifically negotiated or bid interest rate, and also includes any agreement to supply investments on 2 or more future dates, such as a forward supply contract;
- (3) the term "investment strategies" includes plans or programs for the investment of the proceeds of municipal securities that are not municipal derivatives, guaranteed investment contracts, and the recommendation of and brokerage of municipal escrow investments;
- (4) the term "municipal advisor"—
  - (A) means a person (who is not a municipal entity or an employee of a municipal entity) that—
    - (i) provides advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products or the issuance of municipal securities, including advice with respect to the structure, timing, terms, and other similar matters concerning such financial products or issues; or
    - (ii) undertakes a solicitation of a municipal entity;

(B) includes financial advisors, guaranteed investment contract brokers, third-party marketers, placement agents, solicitors, finders, and swap advisors, if such persons are described in any of clauses (i) through (iii)<sup>5</sup> of

subparagraph (A); and

(C) does not include a broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer serving as an underwriter (as defined in section 77b(a)(11) of this title), any investment adviser registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.], or persons associated with such investment advisers who are providing investment advice, any commodity trading advisor registered under the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] or persons associated with a commodity trading advisor who are providing advice related to swaps, attorneys offering legal advice or providing services that are of a traditional legal nature, or engineers providing engineering advice;

(5) the term "municipal financial product" means municipal derivatives, guaranteed investment contracts, and investment strategies;

(6) the term "rules of the Board" means the rules proposed and adopted by the Board under subsection (b)(2);

(7) the term "person associated with a municipal advisor" or "associated person of an advisor" means—

(A) any partner, officer, director, or branch manager of such municipal advisor (or any person occupying a similar status or performing similar functions);

(B) any other employee of such municipal advisor who is engaged in the management, direction, supervision, or performance of any activities relating to the provision of advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products or the issuance of municipal securities; and

(C) any person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with such municipal advisor;

(8) the term "municipal entity" means any State, political subdivision of a State, or municipal corporate instrumentality of a State, including—

(A) any agency, authority, or instrumentality of the State, political subdivision, or municipal corporate instrumentality;

(B) any plan, program, or pool of assets sponsored or established by the State, political subdivision, or municipal corporate instrumentality or any agency, authority, or instrumentality thereof; and

(C) any other issuer of municipal securities;

(9) the term "solicitation of a municipal entity or obligated person" means a direct or indirect communication with a municipal entity or obligated person made by a person, for direct or indirect compensation, on behalf of a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, or investment adviser (as defined in section 202 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–2]) that does not control, is not controlled by, or is not under common control with the person undertaking such solicitation for the purpose of obtaining or retaining an engagement by a municipal entity or obligated person of a broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor for or in connection with municipal financial products, the issuance of municipal securities, or of an investment adviser to provide investment advisory services to or on behalf of a municipal entity; and

(10) the term "obligated person" means any person, including an issuer of municipal securities, who is either generally or through an enterprise, fund, or account of such person, committed by contract or other arrangement to support the payment of all or part of the obligations on the municipal securities to be sold in an offering of municipal securities.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §15B, as added Pub. L. 94–29, §13, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 131; amended Pub. L. 98–38, §4, June 6, 1983, 97 Stat. 207; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§318–320, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1256, 1257; Pub. L. 101–429, title II, §205, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 941; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §203(c)(1), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2718; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(9), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, §604(c)(1)(B), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §§925(a)(2), 929F(a), 975(a)–(e), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1850, 1853, 1915–1921.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3), (b)(2), (7), (c)(6)(C), (8), and (d), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Section 78o–3(b)(7) of this title, referred to in subsec. (c)(9)(B), was in the original "section 15A(7)", and was translated as meaning section 15A(b)(7) of act June 6, 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (e)(4)(C), is title II of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§80b–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b–20 of this title and Tables.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(4)(C), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(a)(1), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B).

Subsec. (a)(2), (3). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(a)(2), (3), inserted "or municipal advisor" after "municipal securities dealer" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(a)(4), substituted "dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor, or class of brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, or municipal advisors" for "dealer, or municipal securities dealer or class of brokers, dealers, or municipal securities dealers".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(a)(5), added par. (5).

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(b)(1)(C), which directed amendment of third sentence by striking out "initial", was executed in fourth sentence by striking out "initial" after "office of the" and after "such", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 111–203, §975(b)(1)(B), added second and third sentences and struck out former second sentence which read as follows: "The initial members of the Board shall serve as members for a term of two years, and shall consist of (A) five individuals who are not associated with any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer (other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer), at least one of whom shall be representative of investors in municipal securities, and at least one of whom shall be representative of issuers of municipal securities (which members are hereinafter referred to as 'public representatives'); (B) five individuals who are associated with and representative of municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers which are not banks or subsidiaries or departments or divisions of banks (which members are hereinafter referred to as 'broker-dealer representatives'); and (C) five individuals who are associated with and representative of municipal securities dealers which are banks or subsidiaries or departments or divisions of banks (which members are hereinafter referred to as 'bank representatives')."

Pub. L. 111–203, §975(b)(1)(A), in first sentence, substituted "The Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board shall be composed of 15 members, or such other number of members as specified by rules of the Board pursuant to paragraph (2)(B)," for "Not later than one hundred twenty days after June 4, 1975, the Commission shall establish a Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (hereinafter in this section referred to as the 'Board'), to be composed initially of fifteen members appointed by the Commission".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(b)(2)(A), in introductory provisions, inserted "and advice provided to or on behalf of municipal entities or obligated persons by brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors with respect to municipal financial products, the issuance of municipal securities, and solicitations of municipal entities or obligated persons undertaken by brokers, dealers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors" before period at end of first sentence and struck out "(Such rules are hereinafter collectively referred to in this chapter as 'rules of the Board'.)" before "The rules".

Subsec. (b)(2)(A). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(b)(2)(B), in introductory provisions, inserted ", and no broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor shall provide advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products or the issuance of municipal securities," after "sale of, any municipal security" and "and municipal entities or obligated persons" after "protection of investors", in cl. (i), substituted "municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors" for "municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers" in two places, in cl. (ii), inserted "and" at end, in cl. (iii), substituted period for "; and" at end, and struck out cl. (iv) which read as follows: "provide that persons in any such class other than municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers and partners, officers, and supervisory employees of municipal securities brokers or municipal securities dealers, may be qualified solely on the basis of compliance with such standards of training and such other qualifications as the Board finds appropriate."

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(b)(2)(C), amended subpar. (B) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (B) read as follows: "establish fair procedures for the nomination and election of members of the Board and assure fair representation in such nominations and elections of municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers. Such rules shall provide that the membership of the Board shall at all times be equally divided among public representatives, broker-dealer representatives, and bank representatives, and that the public representatives shall be subject to approval by the Commission to assure that no one of them is associated with any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer (other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer) and that at least one is representative of investors in municipal securities and at least one is representative of issuers of municipal securities. Such rules shall also specify the term members shall serve and may increase the number of members which shall constitute the whole Board provided that such number is an odd number."

Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(b)(2)(D), inserted "and municipal financial products" after "municipal securities" the first two places appearing and ", municipal entities, obligated persons," after "to protect investors" and substituted "among customers, municipal entities, obligated persons, municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, or municipal advisors," for "between customers, issuers,

municipal securities brokers, or municipal securities dealers," and "brokers, municipal securities dealers, or municipal advisors, to regulate" for "brokers or municipal securities dealers, to regulate".

Subsec. (b)(2)(D). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(b)(2)(E), inserted "and advice concerning municipal financial products" after "transactions in municipal securities" and "municipal advisor," before "or person associated" and substituted "that no" for "That no" and "a municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor may be compelled" for "a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer may be compelled".

Subsec. (b)(2)(E). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(b)(2)(F), substituted "municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors" for "municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers" and "municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor" for "municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer".

Subsec. (b)(2)(G). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(b)(2)(G), substituted "municipal securities brokers, municipal securities dealers, and municipal advisors" for "municipal securities brokers and municipal securities dealers".

Subsec. (b)(2)(J). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(b)(2)(H), substituted "each municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, and municipal advisor" for "each municipal securities broker and each municipal securities dealer" and inserted ", which may include charges for failure to submit to the Board, or to any information system operated by the Board, within the prescribed timeframes, any items of information or documents required to be submitted under any rule issued by the Board" after "such fees and charges".

Subsec. (b)(2)(K). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(b)(2)(I), substituted "a related account of a broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer" for "a municipal securities investment portfolio" and substituted "any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer" for "any municipal securities dealer" in two places.

Subsec. (b)(2)(L). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(b)(2)(J), added subpar. (L).

Subsec. (b)(3) to (5), (7). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(b)(3), (4), added pars. (3) to (5) and redesignated former par. (3) as (7).

Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(1), (2), inserted ", and no broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, or municipal advisor shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to provide advice to or on behalf of a municipal entity or obligated person with respect to municipal financial products, the issuance of municipal securities, or to undertake a solicitation of a municipal entity or obligated person," after "any municipal security" and inserted at end "A municipal advisor and any person associated with such municipal advisor shall be deemed to have a fiduciary duty to any municipal entity for whom such municipal advisor acts as a municipal advisor, and no municipal advisor may engage in any act, practice, or course of business which is not consistent with a municipal advisor's fiduciary duty or that is in contravention of any rule of the Board."

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(3), inserted "or municipal advisor" after "municipal securities dealer" in two places.

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(4), inserted "or municipal entities or obligated person" after "protection of investors" in two places and "or municipal advisor" after "municipal securities dealer" wherever appearing.

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(5), which directed amendment of par. (4) by inserting "or municipal advisor" after "municipal securities dealer or obligated person" each place that term appears, could not be executed because such term does not appear.

Pub. L. 111-203, §925(a)(2), substituted "12 months or bar any such person from being associated with a broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, transfer agent, or nationally recognized statistical rating organization," for "twelve months or bar any such person from being associated with a municipal securities dealer,".

Subsec. (c)(6)(B). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(6), inserted "or municipal entities or obligated person" after "protection of investors".

Subsec. (c)(7)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(7)(A), added cl. (iii).

Subsec. (c)(7)(B). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(7)(B), inserted "or municipal entities or obligated person" after "protection of investors".

Subsec. (c)(8). Pub. L. 111-203, §929F(a), substituted "any person who is, or at the time of the alleged violation or abuse was, a member or employee" for "any member or employee".

Subsec. (c)(9). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(c)(8), added par. (9).

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 111-203, §975(d)(2), which directed amendment of par. (2) by inserting "or municipal advisors" before "to furnish", was executed by making the insertion before "to furnish" the second place appearing, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 111-203, §975(d)(1), substituted "through a municipal securities broker, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, or otherwise" for "through a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer or otherwise".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(e), added subsec. (e).

**2002**—Subsec. (c)(2), (4). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted ", or is subject to an order or finding," for "or omission" and "(H), or (G)" for "or (G)".

**1998**—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "convicted of any offense" for "convicted by any offense" in first sentence.

**1990**—Subsec. (c)(2), (4). Pub. L. 101–550 substituted "(A), (D), (E), or (G)" for "(A), (D), or (E)".

Subsec. (c)(6)(A). Pub. L. 101–429 substituted ", the nature" for "and the nature" and "proposed action, and whether the Commission is seeking a monetary penalty against such municipal securities dealer or such associated person pursuant to section 78u–2 of this title; and" for "proposed action and".

**1987**—Subsec. (b)(2)(C). Pub. L. 100–181, §318, substituted "municipal securities dealers, to regulate" for "municipal security dealers, to regulate" "purposes of this chapter" for "purposes of this chapter or the securities", and "burden on competition" for "burden or competition".

Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 100–181, §319, substituted new first sentence for former first sentence which read as follows: "The Commission, by order, shall censure any person associated, or seeking to become associated with, a municipal securities dealer or suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or bar any such person from being associated with a municipal securities dealer, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act or omission enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), or (E) of paragraph (4) of section 78o(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4)."

Subsec. (c)(6)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, §320, substituted "Board" for "board".

**1983**—Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 98–38, §4(a), inserted "(other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer)" after "securities dealer".

Subsec. (b)(2)(B). Pub. L. 98–38, §4(b), inserted "(other than by reason of being under common control with, or indirectly controlling, any broker or dealer which is not a municipal securities broker or municipal securities dealer)" after "broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer".

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 925(a)(2) and 929F(a) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 975(a)–(e) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective Oct. 1, 2010, see section 975(i) of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 78o of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, except for subsec. (a) which is effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

<sup>1</sup> *So in original.*

<sup>2</sup> *So in original. Probably should be "(6)".*

<sup>3</sup> *So in original. Person probably should be plural.*

<sup>4</sup> *See References in Text note below.*

<sup>5</sup> *So in original. Subpar. (A) does not contain a cl. (iii).*

## §78o–4a. Commission Office of Municipal Securities

### (a) In general

There shall be in the Commission an Office of Municipal Securities, which shall—

- (1) administer the rules of the Commission with respect to the practices of municipal securities brokers and dealers, municipal securities advisors, municipal securities investors, and municipal securities issuers; and
- (2) coordinate with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board for rulemaking and enforcement actions as required by law.

**(b) Director of the Office**

The head of the Office of Municipal Securities shall be the Director, who shall report to the Chairman.

**(c) Staffing**

**(1) In general**

The Office of Municipal Securities shall be staffed sufficiently to carry out the requirements of this section.

**(2) Requirement**

The staff of the Office of Municipal Securities shall include individuals with knowledge of and expertise in municipal finance.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §979, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1926.)

### **CODIFICATION**

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010 and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

### **DEFINITIONS**

For definitions of terms used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## **§78o–5. Government securities brokers and dealers**

**(a) Registration requirements; notice to regulatory agencies; manner of registration; exemption from registration requirements**

(1)(A) It shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer (other than a registered broker or dealer or a financial institution) to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security unless such government securities broker or government securities dealer is registered in accordance with paragraph (2) of this subsection.

(B)(i) It shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer that is a registered broker or dealer or a financial institution to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security unless such government securities broker or government securities dealer has filed with the appropriate regulatory agency written notice that it is a government securities broker or government securities dealer. When such a government securities broker or government securities dealer ceases to act as such it shall file with the appropriate regulatory agency a written notice that it is no longer acting as a government securities broker or government securities dealer.

(ii) Such notices shall be in such form and contain such information concerning a government securities broker or government securities dealer that is a financial institution and any persons associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer as the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall, by rule, after consultation with each appropriate regulatory agency (including the Commission), prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Such notices shall be in such form and contain such information concerning a government securities broker or government securities dealer that is a registered broker or dealer and any persons associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer as the Commission shall, by rule, prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(iii) Each appropriate regulatory agency (other than the Commission) shall make available to the Commission the notices which have been filed with it under this subparagraph, and the Commission shall maintain and make available to the public such notices and the notices it receives under this subparagraph.

(2) A government securities broker or a government securities dealer subject to the registration requirement of paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection may be registered by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such government securities broker or government securities dealer and any persons associated with such government securities broker or government

securities dealer as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Within 45 days of the date of filing of such application (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within 120 days of the date of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings, the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for the conclusion of such proceedings for up to 90 days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant the registration of a government securities broker or a government securities dealer if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied. The order granting registration shall not be effective until such government securities broker or government securities dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title, or a securities association registered under section 78o-3 of this title, unless the Commission has exempted such government securities broker or government securities dealer, by rule or order, from such membership. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such a finding or if it finds that if the applicant were so registered, its registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under subsection (c) of this section.

(3) Any provision of this chapter (other than section 78e of this title or paragraph (1) of this subsection) which prohibits any act, practice, or course of business if the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce is used in connection therewith shall also prohibit any such act, practice, or course of business by any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or having filed notice under paragraph (1) of this subsection or any person acting on behalf of such government securities broker or government securities dealer, irrespective of any use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in connection therewith.

(4) No government securities broker or government securities dealer that is required to register under paragraph (1) (A) and that is not a member of the Securities Investor Protection Corporation shall effect any transaction in any security in contravention of such rules as the Commission shall prescribe pursuant to this subsection to assure that its customers receive complete, accurate, and timely disclosure of the inapplicability of Securities Investor Protection Corporation coverage to their accounts.

(5) The Secretary of the Treasury (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Secretary"), by rule or order, upon the Secretary's own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any government securities broker or government securities dealer, or class of government securities brokers or government securities dealers, from any provision of subsection (a), (b), or (d) of this section, other than subsection (d)(3), or the rules thereunder, if the Secretary finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this chapter.

#### **(b) Rules with respect to transactions in government securities**

(1) The Secretary shall propose and adopt rules to effect the purposes of this chapter with respect to transactions in government securities effected by government securities brokers and government securities dealers as follows:

(A) Such rules shall provide safeguards with respect to the financial responsibility and related practices of government securities brokers and government securities dealers including, but not limited to, capital adequacy standards, the acceptance of custody and use of customers' securities, the carrying and use of customers' deposits or credit balances, and the transfer and control of government securities subject to repurchase agreements and in similar transactions.

(B) Such rules shall require every government securities broker and government securities dealer to make reports to and furnish copies of records to the appropriate regulatory agency, and to file with the appropriate regulatory agency, annually or more frequently, a balance sheet and income statement certified by an independent public accountant, prepared on a calendar or fiscal year basis, and such other financial statements (which shall, as the Secretary specifies, be certified) and information concerning its financial condition as required by such rules.

(C) Such rules shall require records to be made and kept by government securities brokers and government securities dealers and shall specify the periods for which such records shall be preserved.

(2) RISK ASSESSMENT FOR HOLDING COMPANY SYSTEMS.—

(A) OBLIGATIONS TO OBTAIN, MAINTAIN, AND REPORT INFORMATION.—Every person who is registered as a government securities broker or government securities dealer under this section shall obtain such information and make and keep such records as the Secretary by rule prescribes concerning the registered person's policies, procedures, or systems for monitoring and controlling financial and operational risks to it resulting from the activities of any of its associated persons, other than a natural person. Such records shall describe, in the aggregate, each of the financial and securities activities conducted by, and customary sources of capital and funding of, those of its associated persons whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person, including its capital, its liquidity, or its ability to conduct or finance its operations. The Secretary, by rule, may require summary reports of such information to be filed with the registered person's appropriate regulatory agency no more frequently than quarterly.

(B) **AUTHORITY TO REQUIRE ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.**—If, as a result of adverse market conditions or based on reports provided pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph or other available information, the appropriate regulatory agency reasonably concludes that it has concerns regarding the financial or operational condition of any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered under this section, such agency may require the registered person to make reports concerning the financial and securities activities of any of such person's associated persons, other than a natural person, whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person. The appropriate regulatory agency, in requiring reports pursuant to this subparagraph, shall specify the information required, the period for which it is required, the time and date on which the information must be furnished, and whether the information is to be furnished directly to the appropriate regulatory agency or to a self-regulatory organization with primary responsibility for examining the registered person's financial and operational condition.

(C) **SPECIAL PROVISIONS WITH RESPECT TO ASSOCIATED PERSONS SUBJECT TO FEDERAL BANKING AGENCY REGULATION.**—

(i) **COOPERATION IN IMPLEMENTATION.**—In developing and implementing reporting requirements pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph with respect to associated persons subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the Secretary shall consult with and consider the views of each such Federal banking agency. If a Federal banking agency comments in writing on a proposed rule of the Secretary under this paragraph that has been published for comment, the Secretary shall respond in writing to such written comment before adopting the proposed rule. The Secretary shall, at the request of a Federal banking agency, publish such comment and response in the Federal Register at the time of publishing the adopted rule.

(ii) **USE OF BANKING AGENCY REPORTS.**—A registered government securities broker or government securities dealer shall be in compliance with any recordkeeping or reporting requirement adopted pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph concerning an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency if such government securities broker or government securities dealer utilizes for such recordkeeping or reporting requirement copies of reports filed by the associated person with the Federal banking agency pursuant to section 161 of title 12, subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, section 1817(a) of title 12, section 1467a(b) of title 12, or section 1847 of title 12. The Secretary may, however, by rule adopted pursuant to subparagraph (A), require any registered government securities broker or government securities dealer filing such reports with the appropriate regulatory agency to obtain, maintain, or report supplemental information if the Secretary makes an explicit finding, based on information provided by the appropriate regulatory agency, that such supplemental information is necessary to inform the appropriate regulatory agency regarding potential risks to such government securities broker or government securities dealer. Prior to requiring any such supplemental information, the Secretary shall first request the Federal banking agency to expand its reporting requirements to include such information.

(iii) **PROCEDURE FOR REQUIRING ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.**—Prior to making a request pursuant to subparagraph (B) of this paragraph for information with respect to an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the appropriate regulatory agency shall—

- (I) notify such banking agency of the information required with respect to such associated person; and
- (II) consult with such agency to determine whether the information required is available from such agency and for other purposes, unless the appropriate regulatory agency determines that any delay resulting from such consultation would be inconsistent with ensuring the financial and operational condition of the government securities broker or government securities dealer or the stability or integrity of the securities markets.

(iv) **EXCLUSION FOR EXAMINATION REPORTS.**—Nothing in this subparagraph shall be construed to permit the Secretary or an appropriate regulatory agency to require any registered government securities broker or government securities dealer to obtain, maintain, or furnish any examination report of any Federal banking agency or any supervisory recommendations or analysis contained therein.

(v) **CONFIDENTIALITY OF INFORMATION PROVIDED.**—No information provided to or obtained by an appropriate regulatory agency from any Federal banking agency pursuant to a request under clause (iii) of this subparagraph regarding any associated person which is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency may be disclosed to any other person (other than a self-regulatory organization), without the prior written approval of the Federal banking agency. Nothing in this clause shall authorize the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission.

(vi) **NOTICE TO BANKING AGENCIES CONCERNING FINANCIAL AND OPERATIONAL CONDITION CONCERNS.**—The Secretary or appropriate regulatory agency shall notify the Federal banking agency of any concerns of the Secretary or the appropriate regulatory agency regarding significant financial or operational risks resulting from the activities of any government securities broker or government securities dealer to any associated person thereof which is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of the Federal banking agency.

(vii) **DEFINITION.**—For purposes of this subparagraph, the term "Federal banking agency" shall have the same meaning as the term "appropriate Federal banking agency" in section 1813(q) of title 12.

(D) EXEMPTIONS.—The Secretary by rule or order may exempt any person or class of persons, under such terms and conditions and for such periods as the Secretary shall provide in such rule or order, from the provisions of this paragraph, and the rules thereunder. In granting such exemptions, the Secretary shall consider, among other factors —

- (i) whether information of the type required under this paragraph is available from a supervisory agency (as defined in section 3401(6) <sup>1</sup> of title 12), a State insurance commission or similar State agency, the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, or a similar foreign regulator;
- (ii) the primary business of any associated person;
- (iii) the nature and extent of domestic or foreign regulation of the associated person's activities;
- (iv) the nature and extent of the registered person's securities transactions; and
- (v) with respect to the registered person and its associated persons, on a consolidated basis, the amount and proportion of assets devoted to, and revenues derived from, activities in the United States securities markets.

(E) CONFORMITY WITH REQUIREMENTS UNDER SECTION 78q(h).—In exercising authority pursuant to subparagraph (A) of this paragraph concerning information with respect to associated persons of government securities brokers and government securities dealers who are also associated persons of registered brokers or dealers reporting to the Commission pursuant to section 78q(h) of this title, the requirements relating to such associated persons shall conform, to the greatest extent practicable, to the requirements under section 78q(h) of this title.

(F) AUTHORITY TO LIMIT DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION.—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary and any appropriate regulatory agency shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be reported under this paragraph, or any information supplied to the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency by any domestic or foreign regulatory agency that relates to the financial or operational condition of any associated person of a registered government securities broker or a government securities dealer. Nothing in this paragraph shall authorize the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Secretary or any appropriate regulatory agency from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this paragraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

(3)(A) With respect to any financial institution that has filed notice as a government securities broker or government securities dealer or that is required to file notice under subsection (a)(1)(B), the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer may issue such rules and regulations with respect to transactions in government securities as may be necessary to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices and to promote just and equitable principles of trade. If the Secretary of the Treasury determines, and notifies the appropriate regulatory agency, that such rule or regulation, if implemented, would, or as applied does (i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for government securities; or (ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section, the appropriate regulatory agency shall, prior to adopting the proposed rule or regulation, find that such rule or regulation is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Secretary's determination.

(B) The appropriate regulatory agency shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary prior to approving or amending a rule or regulation under this paragraph, except where the appropriate regulatory agency determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious and summary action and publishes its reasons therefor. If the Secretary comments in writing to the appropriate regulatory agency on a proposed rule or regulation that has been published for comment, the appropriate regulatory agency shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving the proposed rule or regulation.

(C) In promulgating rules under this section, the appropriate regulatory agency shall consider the sufficiency and appropriateness of then existing laws and rules applicable to government securities brokers, government securities dealers, and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers.

(4) Rules promulgated and orders issued under this section shall—

(A) be designed to prevent fraudulent and manipulative acts and practices and to protect the integrity, liquidity, and efficiency of the market for government securities, investors, and the public interest; and

(B) not be designed to permit unfair discrimination between customers, issuers, government securities brokers, or government securities dealers, or to impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(5) In promulgating rules and issuing orders under this section, the Secretary—

(A) may appropriately classify government securities brokers and government securities dealers (taking into account relevant matters, including types of business done, nature of securities other than government securities purchased or sold, and character of business organization) and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers;

(B) may determine, to the extent consistent with paragraph (2) of this subsection and with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this chapter, not to apply, in whole or in part, certain rules under this section, or to apply greater, lesser, or different standards, to certain classes of government securities brokers,

government securities dealers, or persons associated with government securities brokers or government securities dealers;

(C) shall consider the sufficiency and appropriateness of then existing laws and rules applicable to government securities brokers, government securities dealers, and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers; and

(D) shall consult with and consider the views of the Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, except where the Secretary determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons for such determination.

(6) If the Commission or the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System comments in writing on a proposed rule of the Secretary that has been published for comment, the Secretary shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving the proposed rule.

(7) No government securities broker or government securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security in contravention of any rule under this section.

### **(c) Sanctions for violations**

(1) With respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register under subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section—

(A) The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or revoke the registration of such government securities broker or government securities dealer, if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such government securities broker or government securities dealer, or any person associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer (whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated), has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 780(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(B) Pending final determination whether registration of any government securities broker or government securities dealer shall be revoked, the Commission, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to the Commission, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors. Any registered government securities broker or registered government securities dealer may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission may deem necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any registered government securities broker or registered government securities dealer is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a government securities broker or government securities dealer, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration of such government securities broker or government securities dealer.

(C) The Commission, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities or functions of any person who is, or at the time of the alleged misconduct was, associated or seeking to become associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register under subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months or bar any such person from being associated with such a government securities broker or government securities dealer, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 780(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4).

(2)(A) With respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer which is not registered or required to register under subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section, the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer may, in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection, censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or bar from acting as a government securities broker or government securities dealer any such government securities broker or government securities dealer, and may sanction any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer in the manner and for the reasons specified in paragraph (1)(C) of this subsection.

(B) In addition, where applicable, such appropriate regulatory agency may, in accordance with section 1818 of title 12, section 1464 of title 12, or section 1730<sup>2</sup> of title 12, enforce compliance by such government securities broker or government securities dealer or any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with such government securities broker or government securities dealer with the provisions of this section and the rules thereunder.

(C) For purposes of subparagraph (B) of this paragraph, any violation of any such provision shall constitute adequate basis for the issuance of any order under section 1818(b) or (c) of title 12, section 1464(d)(2) or (d)(3) <sup>2</sup> of title 12, or section 1730(e) or (f) <sup>2</sup> of title 12, and the customers of any such government securities broker or government securities dealer shall be deemed, respectively, "depositors" as that term is used in section 1818(c) of title 12, "savings account holders" as that term is used in section 1464(d)(3) <sup>2</sup> of title 12, or "insured members" as that term is used in section 1730(f) <sup>2</sup> of title 12.

(D) Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to affect in any way the powers of such appropriate regulatory agency to proceed against such government securities broker or government securities dealer under any other provision of law.

(E) Each appropriate regulatory agency (other than the Commission) shall promptly notify the Commission after it has imposed any sanction under this paragraph on a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or a person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer, and the Commission shall maintain, and make available to the public, a record of such sanctions and any sanctions imposed by it under this subsection.

(3) It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom an order entered pursuant to paragraph (1) or (2) of this subsection suspending or barring him from being associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer without the consent of the appropriate regulatory agency, and it shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with it without the consent of the appropriate regulatory agency, if such government securities broker or government securities dealer knew, or, in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order.

**(d) Records of brokers and dealers subject to examination**

(1) All records of a government securities broker or government securities dealer are subject at any time, or from time to time, to such reasonable periodic, special, or other examinations by representatives of the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer as such appropriate regulatory agency deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(2) Information received by an appropriate regulatory agency, the Secretary, or the Commission from or with respect to any government securities broker, government securities dealer, any person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or any other person subject to this section or rules promulgated thereunder, may be made available by the Secretary or the recipient agency to the Commission, the Secretary, the Department of Justice, the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, any self-regulatory organization, or any Federal Reserve Bank.

**(3) GOVERNMENT SECURITIES TRADE RECONSTRUCTION.—**

(A) FURNISHING RECORDS.—Every government securities broker and government securities dealer shall furnish to the Commission on request such records of government securities transactions, including records of the date and time of execution of trades, as the Commission may require to reconstruct trading in the course of a particular inquiry or investigation being conducted by the Commission for enforcement or surveillance purposes. In requiring information pursuant to this paragraph, the Commission shall specify the information required, the period for which it is required, the time and date on which the information must be furnished, and whether the information is to be furnished directly to the Commission, to the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, or to an appropriate regulatory agency or self-regulatory organization with responsibility for examining the government securities broker or government securities dealer. The Commission may require that such information be furnished in machine readable form notwithstanding any limitation in subparagraph (B). In utilizing its authority to require information in machine readable form, the Commission shall minimize the burden such requirement may place on small government securities brokers and dealers.

(B) LIMITATION; CONSTRUCTION.—The Commission shall not utilize its authority under this paragraph to develop regular reporting requirements, except that the Commission may require information to be furnished under this paragraph as frequently as necessary for particular inquiries or investigations for enforcement or surveillance purposes. This paragraph shall not be construed as requiring, or as authorizing the Commission to require, any government securities broker or government securities dealer to obtain or maintain any information for purposes of this paragraph which is not otherwise maintained by such broker or dealer in accordance with any other provision of law or usual and customary business practice. The Commission shall, where feasible, avoid requiring any information to be furnished under this paragraph that the Commission may obtain from the Federal Reserve Bank of New York.

(C) PROCEDURES FOR REQUIRING INFORMATION.—At the time the Commission requests any information pursuant to subparagraph (A) with respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission shall notify the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer and, upon request, furnish to the appropriate regulatory agency any information supplied to the Commission.

(D) CONSULTATION.—Within 90 days after December 17, 1993, and annually thereafter, or upon the request of any other appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission shall consult with the other appropriate regulatory agencies to determine the availability of records that may be required to be furnished under this paragraph and, for those records

available directly from the other appropriate regulatory agencies, to develop a procedure for furnishing such records expeditiously upon the Commission's request.

(E) **EXCLUSION FOR EXAMINATION REPORTS.**—Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed so as to permit the Commission to require any government securities broker or government securities dealer to obtain, maintain, or furnish any examination report of any appropriate regulatory agency other than the Commission or any supervisory recommendations or analysis contained in any such examination report.

(F) **AUTHORITY TO LIMIT DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION.**—Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission and the appropriate regulatory agencies shall not be compelled to disclose any information required or obtained under this paragraph. Nothing in this paragraph shall authorize the Commission or any appropriate regulatory agency to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission or any appropriate regulatory agency from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or from complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States, the Commission, or the appropriate regulatory agency. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subparagraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

**(e) Membership in national securities exchange; exemptions**

(1) It shall be unlawful for any government securities broker or government securities dealer registered or required to register with the Commission under subsection (a)(1)(A) to effect any transaction in, or induce or attempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any government security, unless such government securities broker or government securities dealer is a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title or a securities association registered under section 78o-3 of this title.

(2) The Commission, after consultation with the Secretary, by rule or order, as it deems consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt from paragraph (1) of this subsection any government securities broker or government securities dealer or class of government securities brokers or government securities dealers specified in such rule or order.

**(f) Large position reporting**

**(1) Reporting requirements**

The Secretary may adopt rules to require specified persons holding, maintaining, or controlling large positions in to-be-issued or recently issued Treasury securities to file such reports regarding such positions as the Secretary determines to be necessary and appropriate for the purpose of monitoring the impact in the Treasury securities market of concentrations of positions in Treasury securities and for the purpose of otherwise assisting the Commission in the enforcement of this chapter, taking into account any impact of such rules on the efficiency and liquidity of the Treasury securities market and the cost to taxpayers of funding the Federal debt. Unless otherwise specified by the Secretary, reports required under this subsection shall be filed with the Federal Reserve Bank of New York, acting as agent for the Secretary. Such reports shall, on a timely basis, be provided directly to the Commission by the person with whom they are filed.

**(2) Recordkeeping requirements**

Rules under this subsection may require persons holding, maintaining, or controlling large positions in Treasury securities to make and keep for prescribed periods such records as the Secretary determines are necessary or appropriate to ensure that such persons can comply with reporting requirements under this subsection.

**(3) Aggregation rules**

Rules under this subsection—

(A) may prescribe the manner in which positions and accounts shall be aggregated for the purpose of this subsection, including aggregation on the basis of common ownership or control; and

(B) may define which persons (individually or as a group) hold, maintain, or control large positions.

**(4) Definitional authority; determination of reporting threshold**

(A) In prescribing rules under this subsection, the Secretary may, consistent with the purpose of this subsection, define terms used in this subsection that are not otherwise defined in section 78c of this title.

(B) Rules under this subsection shall specify—

(i) the minimum size of positions subject to reporting under this subsection, which shall be no less than the size that provides the potential for manipulation or control of the supply or price, or the cost of financing arrangements, of an issue or the portion thereof that is available for trading;

(ii) the types of positions (which may include financing arrangements) to be reported;

(iii) the securities to be covered; and

(iv) the form and manner in which reports shall be transmitted, which may include transmission in machine readable form.

**(5) Exemptions**

Consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, the Secretary by rule or order may exempt in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, any person or class of persons, or any transaction or class of transactions, from the requirements of this subsection.

**(6) Limitation on disclosure of information**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Secretary and the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be kept or reported under this subsection. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Secretary or the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Secretary or the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or from complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States, the Secretary, or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this paragraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

**(g) Effect on other laws; authority of Commission**

(1) Nothing in this section except paragraph (2) of this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the authority under any other provision of law of the Commission, the Secretary of the Treasury, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, the Comptroller of the Currency, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Government National Mortgage Association.

(2) Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Commission shall not have any authority to make investigations of, require the filing of a statement by, or take any other action under this chapter against a government securities broker or government securities dealer, or any person associated with a government securities broker or government securities dealer, for any violation or threatened violation of the provisions of this section, other than subsection (d)(3)<sup>3</sup> or the rules or regulations thereunder, unless the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency for such government securities broker or government securities dealer. Nothing in the preceding sentence shall be construed to limit the authority of the Commission with respect to violations or threatened violations of any provision of this chapter other than this section (except subsection (d)(3)), the rules or regulations under any such other provision, or investigations pursuant to section 78u(a)(2) of this title to assist a foreign securities authority.

**(h) Emergency authority**

The Secretary may, by order, take any action with respect to a matter or action subject to regulation by the Secretary under this section, or the rules of the Secretary under this section, involving a government security or a market therein (or significant portion or segment of that market), that the Commission may take under section 78l(k)(2) of this title with respect to transactions in securities (other than exempted securities) or a market therein (or significant portion or segment of that market).

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §15C, as added Pub. L. 99–571, title I, §101, Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3208; amended Pub. L. 100–181, title VIII, §801(a), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 101–73, title VII, §744(u)(3), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 441; Pub. L. 101–432, §4(b), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 970; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §203(c), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2718; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §§102–104, 106(a), 108, 109(b)(1), (c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2345, 2346, 2349, 2351–2353; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(10), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, §604(c)(1)(B), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 108–458, title VII, §7803(d), Dec. 17, 2004, 118 Stat. 3863; Pub. L. 111–203, title III, §376(3), title IX, §§929F(b), 985(b)(6), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1569, 1854, 1934.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(3), (5), (b)(1), (2)(B), (4)(B), (d)(1), (f)(1), and (g)(2), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(C)(ii), was in the original "section 9 of the Federal Reserve Act", meaning section 9 of act Dec. 23, 1913, ch. 6, 38 Stat. 251, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter VIII (§321 et seq.) of chapter 3 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Section 3401(6) of title 12, referred to in subsec. (b)(2)(D)(i), was redesignated section 3401(7) of title 12 by Pub. L. 101–73, title IX, §941(1), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 496.

Section 1730 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(B), (C), was repealed by Pub. L. 101–73, title IV, §407, Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 363.

Section 1464(d)(2) and (d)(3) of title 12, referred to in subsec. (c)(2)(C), was amended generally by Pub. L. 101–73, title III, §301, Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 282, and, as so amended, no longer relates to issuance of orders nor contains the term "savings account holders".

**AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 111–203, §985(b)(6)(C), inserted after first sentence in concluding provisions: "The order granting registration shall not be effective until such government securities broker or government securities dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title, or a securities association registered under section 78o–3 of this title, unless the Commission has exempted such government securities broker or government securities dealer, by rule or order, from such membership."

Pub. L. 111–203, §985(b)(6)(A), (B), redesignated cls. (i) and (ii) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, realigned margins, and, in subpar. (B), struck out "The order granting registration shall not be effective until such government securities broker or government securities dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title, or a securities association registered under section 78o–3 of this title, unless the Commission has exempted such government securities broker

or government securities dealer, by rule or order, from such membership." after "grant or deny such registration."

Subsec. (c)(1)(C). Pub. L. 111–203, §929F(b)(1), substituted "any person who is, or at the time of the alleged misconduct was, associated or seeking to become associated" for "any person associated, or seeking to become associated,".

Subsec. (c)(2)(A), (B). Pub. L. 111–203, §929F(b)(2)(A), (B), inserted ", seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated" after "any person associated".

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §376(3), struck out "the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation," after "the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation,".

**2004**—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 108–458 added subsec. (h).

**2002**—Subsec. (c)(1)(A), (C). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted ", or is subject to an order or finding," for "or omission" and "(H), or (G)" for "or (G)".

**1998**—Subsec. (f)(5). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "class of persons" for "class or persons".

**1993**—Subsec. (a)(2)(ii). Pub. L. 103–202, §109(b)(1), inserted "The order granting registration shall not be effective until such government securities broker or government securities dealer has become a member of a national securities exchange registered under section 78f of this title, or a securities association registered under section 78o–3 of this title, unless the Commission has exempted such government securities broker or government securities dealer, by rule or order, from such membership." before "The Commission may extend".

Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 103–202, §108(2), added par. (4). Former par. (4) redesignated (5).

Pub. L. 103–202, §103(b)(1), inserted ", other than subsection (d)(3)," after "subsection (a), (b), or (d) of this section".

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 103–202, §108(1), redesignated par. (4) as (5).

Subsec. (b)(3) to (7). Pub. L. 103–202, §106(a), added par. (3) and redesignated former pars. (3) to (6) as (4) to (7), respectively.

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 103–202, §109(c), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "Information received by any appropriate regulatory agency or the Secretary from or with respect to any government securities broker or government securities dealer or with respect to any person associated therewith may be made available by the Secretary or the recipient agency to the Commission, the Secretary, any appropriate regulatory agency, and any self-regulatory organization."

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 103–202, §103(a), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103–202, §104(2), added subsec. (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 103–202, §103(b)(2), inserted ", other than subsection (d)(3)" after "threatened violation of the provisions of this section" and "(except subsection (d)(3))" after "other than this section".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 103–202, §104(1), redesignated subsec. (f) as (g).

Pub. L. 103–202, §102, struck out subsec. (g) which read as follows:

"(1) The authority of the Secretary to issue orders and to propose and adopt rules under this section shall terminate on October 1, 1991.

"(2) All orders and rules—

"(A) which have been issued or adopted by the Secretary, and

"(B) which are in effect on the date specified in paragraph (1),

shall continue in effect according to their terms."

**1990**—Subsec. (b)(2) to (6). Pub. L. 101–432 added par. (2) and redesignated former pars. (2) to (5) as (3) to (6), respectively.

Subsec. (c)(1)(A), (C). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(c)(1), substituted "(A), (D), (E), or (G)" for "(A), (D), or (E)".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 101–550, §203(c)(2), substituted "the rules or regulations under any such other provision, or investigations pursuant to section 78u(a)(2) of this title to assist a foreign securities authority" for "or the rules or regulations under any such other provision".

**1989**—Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 101–73 substituted "Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision" for "Federal Home Loan Bank Board".

**1987**—Subsec. (a)(1)(B)(i). Pub. L. 100–181 substituted "When such" for "When".

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 929F(b) and 985(b)(6) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 376(3) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the transfer date, see section 351 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 906 of Title 2, The Congress.

### EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 99–571, title IV, §§401–403, Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3224, 3225, provided that:

**"SEC. 401. GENERAL EFFECTIVE DATES.**

"Except as provided in section 402, this Act [enacting section 78o–5 of this title and section 9110 of Title 31, Money and Finance, amending sections 78c, 78o, 78o–3, 78q, 78w, 78y, 80a–9, and 80b–3 of this title and section 3121 of Title 31, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 78a and 78o–5 of this title] and the amendments made by this Act shall take effect 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1986].

**"SEC. 402. EFFECTIVE DATE AND REQUIREMENTS FOR REGULATIONS.**

"Notwithstanding section 401, the Secretary of the Treasury and each appropriate regulatory agency shall, within 120 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1986], publish for notice and public comment such regulations as are initially required to implement this Act, which regulations shall become effective as temporary regulations 210 days after the date of enactment of this Act and as final regulations not later than 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act.

**"SEC. 403. REGISTRATION DATE.**

"No person may continue to act as a government securities broker or government securities dealer after 270 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1986] unless such person has been registered or has provided notice to the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency as required by the amendment made by section 101 of this Act [enacting section 78o–5 of this title]."

### **TRANSITIONAL AND SAVINGS PROVISIONS**

Pub. L. 99–571, title III, §301, Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3224, provided that:

"(a) EFFECT ON PENDING ADMINISTRATIVE PROCEEDINGS.—The provisions of this Act [see Effective Date note above] shall not affect any proceedings pending on the effective date of this Act [see Effective Date note above].

"(b) EFFECT ON PENDING JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS.—The provisions of this Act shall not affect suits commenced prior to the effective date of this Act, and in all such suits, proceedings shall be had, appeals taken, and judgments rendered in the same manner and effect as if this Act had not been enacted.

"(c) DISCRETION OF THE FEDERAL RESERVE BANK OF NEW YORK.—Nothing in this Act shall be construed to limit or impair the discretion or authority of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York to require reports or establish terms and conditions in connection with the Bank's relationship with any government securities broker or government securities dealer, including a primary dealer.

"(d) JURISDICTION OF THE COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION.—Nothing in this Act affects the jurisdiction of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission as set forth in the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] over trading of commodity futures contracts and options on such contracts involving government securities."

### **CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT**

Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §111, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2353, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—No provision of, or amendment made by, this title [amending this section and sections 78c, 78o, 78o–3, 78s, and 78w of this title and enacting provisions set out as notes below] may be construed

—

"(1) to govern the initial issuance of any public debt obligation, or

"(2) to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization—

"(A) to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance,

"(B) to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or

"(C) to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance.

"(b) EXCEPTION.—Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to the amendment made by section 110 of this Act [amending section 78o of this title].

"(c) PUBLIC DEBT OBLIGATION.—For purposes of this section, the term 'public debt obligation' means an obligation subject to the public debt limit established in section 3101 of title 31, United States Code."

### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation abolished and functions transferred, see sections 401 to 406 of Pub. L. 101–73, set out as a note under section 1437 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

### **CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS**

Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §101, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2344, provided that: "The Congress finds that—

"(1) the liquid and efficient operation of the government securities market is essential to facilitate government borrowing at the lowest possible cost to taxpayers;

"(2) the fair and honest treatment of investors will strengthen the integrity and liquidity of the government securities market;

"(3) rules promulgated by the Secretary of the Treasury pursuant to the Government Securities Act of 1986 [see Short Title of 1986 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] have worked well to protect investors from unregulated dealers and maintain the efficiency of the government securities market; and

"(4) extending the authority of the Secretary and providing new authority will ensure the continued strength of the government securities market."

Pub. L. 99-571, §1(b), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3208, provided that: "The Congress finds that transactions in government securities are affected with a public interest which makes it necessary—

"(1) to provide for the integrity, stability, and efficiency of such transactions and of matters and practices related thereto;

"(2) to impose adequate regulation of government securities brokers and government securities dealers generally; and

"(3) to require appropriate financial responsibility, recordkeeping, reporting, and related regulatory requirements;

in order to protect investors and to insure the maintenance of fair, honest, and liquid markets in such securities."

### **STUDY OF REGULATORY SYSTEM FOR GOVERNMENT SECURITIES**

Pub. L. 103-202, title I, §112, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2354, provided that:

"(a) JOINT STUDY.—The Secretary of the Treasury, the Securities and Exchange Commission, and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall—

"(1) with respect to any rules promulgated or amended after October 1, 1991, pursuant to section 15C of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78o-5] or any amendment made by this title [amending this section and sections 78c, 78o, 78o-3, 78s, and 78w of this title], and any national securities association rule changes applicable principally to government securities transactions approved after October 1, 1991—

"(A) evaluate the effectiveness of such rules in carrying out the purposes of such Act [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.]; and

"(B) evaluate the impact of any such rules on the efficiency and liquidity of the government securities market and the cost of funding the Federal debt;

"(2) evaluate the effectiveness of surveillance and enforcement with respect to government securities, and the impact on such surveillance and enforcement of the availability of automated, time-sequenced records of essential information pertaining to trades in such securities; and

"(3) submit to the Congress, not later than March 31, 1998, any recommendations they may consider appropriate concerning—

"(A) the regulation of government securities brokers and government securities dealers;

"(B) the dissemination of information concerning quotations for and transactions in government securities;

"(C) the prevention of sales practice abuses in connection with transactions in government securities; and

"(D) such other matters as they consider appropriate.

"(b) TREASURY STUDY.—The Secretary of the Treasury, in consultation with the Securities and Exchange Commission, shall—

"(1) conduct a study of—

"(A) the identity and nature of the business of government securities brokers and government securities dealers that are registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission under section 15C of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78o-5]; and

"(B) the continuing need for, and regulatory and financial consequences of, a separate regulatory system for such government securities brokers and government securities dealers; and

"(2) submit to the Congress, not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Dec. 17, 1993], the Secretary's recommendations for change, if any, or such other recommendations as the Secretary considers appropriate."

### **STUDIES AND RECOMMENDATIONS WITH RESPECT TO EXTENSION OF TREASURY AUTHORITY**

Pub. L. 99–571, title I, §103, Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3221, directed Secretary of the Treasury, together with Securities and Exchange Commission and Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, to evaluate the effectiveness of the rules promulgated pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 78o–5 in effecting the purposes of this chapter, and shall submit to Congress, not later than Oct. 1, 1990, their recommendation with respect to the extension of the Secretary's authority under 15 U.S.C. 78o–5 and such other recommendations as they considered appropriate; and directed Comptroller General to conduct a study of the regulation of government securities brokers and government securities dealers pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 78o–5 and the effectiveness of the amendments made by this Act in protecting investors and in effecting the purposes described in 15 U.S.C. 78o–5(b)(2), and submit to Congress, not later than Mar. 31, 1990, his recommendations with respect to the extension of the Secretary's authority under 15 U.S.C. 78o–5 and such other recommendations as he considered appropriate.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>2</sup> See References in Text note below.

<sup>3</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by a comma.

## §78o–6. Securities analysts and research reports

### (a) Analyst protections

The Commission, or upon the authorization and direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange, shall have adopted, not later than 1 year after July 30, 2002, rules reasonably designed to address conflicts of interest that can arise when securities analysts recommend equity securities in research reports and public appearances, in order to improve the objectivity of research and provide investors with more useful and reliable information, including rules designed—

(1) to foster greater public confidence in securities research, and to protect the objectivity and independence of securities analysts, by—

(A) restricting the prepublication clearance or approval of research reports by persons employed by the broker or dealer who are engaged in investment banking activities, or persons not directly responsible for investment research, other than legal or compliance staff;

(B) limiting the supervision and compensatory evaluation of securities analysts to officials employed by the broker or dealer who are not engaged in investment banking activities; and

(C) requiring that a broker or dealer and persons employed by a broker or dealer who are involved with investment banking activities may not, directly or indirectly, retaliate against or threaten to retaliate against any securities analyst employed by that broker or dealer or its affiliates as a result of an adverse, negative, or otherwise unfavorable research report that may adversely affect the present or prospective investment banking relationship of the broker or dealer with the issuer that is the subject of the research report, except that such rules may not limit the authority of a broker or dealer to discipline a securities analyst for causes other than such research report in accordance with the policies and procedures of the firm;

(2) to define periods during which brokers or dealers who have participated, or are to participate, in a public offering of securities as underwriters or dealers should not publish or otherwise distribute research reports relating to such securities or to the issuer of such securities;

(3) to establish structural and institutional safeguards within registered brokers or dealers to assure that securities analysts are separated by appropriate informational partitions within the firm from the review, pressure, or oversight of those whose involvement in investment banking activities might potentially bias their judgment or supervision; and

(4) to address such other issues as the Commission, or such association or exchange, determines appropriate.

### (b) Disclosure

The Commission, or upon the authorization and direction of the Commission, a registered securities association or national securities exchange, shall have adopted, not later than 1 year after July 30, 2002, rules reasonably designed to require each securities analyst to disclose in public appearances, and each registered broker or dealer to disclose in each research report, as applicable, conflicts of interest that are known or should have been known by the securities analyst or the broker or dealer, to exist at the time of the appearance or the date of distribution of the report, including

(1) the extent to which the securities analyst has debt or equity investments in the issuer that is the subject of the appearance or research report;

(2) whether any compensation has been received by the registered broker or dealer, or any affiliate thereof, including the securities analyst, from the issuer that is the subject of the appearance or research report, subject to such exemptions as the Commission may determine appropriate and necessary to prevent disclosure by virtue of

this paragraph of material non-public information regarding specific potential future investment banking transactions of such issuer, as is appropriate in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors;

(3) whether an issuer, the securities of which are recommended in the appearance or research report, currently is, or during the 1-year period preceding the date of the appearance or date of distribution of the report has been, a client of the registered broker or dealer, and if so, stating the types of services provided to the issuer;

(4) whether the securities analyst received compensation with respect to a research report, based upon (among any other factors) the investment banking revenues (either generally or specifically earned from the issuer being analyzed) of the registered broker or dealer; and

(5) such other disclosures of conflicts of interest that are material to investors, research analysts, or the broker or dealer as the Commission, or such association or exchange, determines appropriate.

### **(c) Limitation**

Notwithstanding subsection (a) or any other provision of law, neither the Commission nor any national securities association registered under section 78o-3 of this title may adopt or maintain any rule or regulation in connection with an initial public offering of the common equity of an emerging growth company—

(1) restricting, based on functional role, which associated persons of a broker, dealer, or member of a national securities association, may arrange for communications between a securities analyst and a potential investor; or

(2) restricting a securities analyst from participating in any communications with the management of an emerging growth company that is also attended by any other associated person of a broker, dealer, or member of a national securities association whose functional role is other than as a securities analyst.

### **(d) Definitions**

In this section—

(1) the term "securities analyst" means any associated person of a registered broker or dealer that is principally responsible for, and any associated person who reports directly or indirectly to a securities analyst in connection with, the preparation of the substance of a research report, whether or not any such person has the job title of "securities analyst"; and

(2) the term "research report" means a written or electronic communication that includes an analysis of equity securities of individual companies or industries, and that provides information reasonably sufficient upon which to base an investment decision.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §15D, as added Pub. L. 107-204, title V, §501(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 791; amended Pub. L. 112-106, title I, §105(b), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 311.)

## **AMENDMENTS**

**2012**—Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 112-106 added subsec. (c) and redesignated former subsec. (c) as (d).

## **POST OFFERING COMMUNICATIONS**

Pub. L. 112-106, title I, §105(d), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 311, provided that: "Neither the [Securities and Exchange] Commission nor any national securities association registered under section 15A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78o-3] may adopt or maintain any rule or regulation prohibiting any broker, dealer, or member of a national securities association from publishing or distributing any research report or making a public appearance, with respect to the securities of an emerging growth company, either—

"(1) within any prescribed period of time following the initial public offering date of the emerging growth company; or

"(2) within any prescribed period of time prior to the expiration date of any agreement between the broker, dealer, or member of a national securities association and the emerging growth company or its shareholders that restricts or prohibits the sale of securities held by the emerging growth company or its shareholders after the initial public offering date."

## **COMMISSION AUTHORITY**

Pub. L. 107-204, title V, §501(c), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 793, provided that: "The Commission may promulgate and amend its regulations, or direct a registered securities association or national securities exchange to promulgate and amend its rules, to carry out section 15D of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78o-6], as added by this section, as is necessary for the protection of investors and in the public interest."

## **§78o-7. Registration of nationally recognized statistical rating organizations**

### **(a) Registration procedures**

#### **(1) Application for registration**

**(A) In general**

A credit rating agency that elects to be treated as a nationally recognized statistical rating organization for purposes of this chapter (in this section referred to as the "applicant"), shall furnish to the Commission an application for registration, in such form as the Commission shall require, by rule or regulation issued in accordance with subsection (n), and containing the information described in subparagraph (B).

**(B) Required information**

An application for registration under this section shall contain information regarding—

- (i) credit ratings performance measurement statistics over short-term, mid-term, and long-term periods (as applicable) of the applicant;
- (ii) the procedures and methodologies that the applicant uses in determining credit ratings;
- (iii) policies or procedures adopted and implemented by the applicant to prevent the misuse, in violation of this chapter (or the rules and regulations hereunder), of material, nonpublic information;
- (iv) the organizational structure of the applicant;
- (v) whether or not the applicant has in effect a code of ethics, and if not, the reasons therefor;
- (vi) any conflict of interest relating to the issuance of credit ratings by the applicant;
- (vii) the categories described in any of clauses (i) through (v) of section 78c(a)(62)(B) of this title with respect to which the applicant intends to apply for registration under this section;
- (viii) on a confidential basis, a list of the 20 largest issuers and subscribers that use the credit rating services of the applicant, by amount of net revenues received therefrom in the fiscal year immediately preceding the date of submission of the application;
- (ix) on a confidential basis, as to each applicable category of obligor described in any of clauses (i) through (v) of section 78c(a)(62)(B) of this title, written certifications described in subparagraph (C), except as provided in subparagraph (D); and
- (x) any other information and documents concerning the applicant and any person associated with such applicant as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(C) Written certifications**

Written certifications required by subparagraph (B)(ix)—

- (i) shall be provided from not fewer than 10 qualified institutional buyers, none of which is affiliated with the applicant;
- (ii) may address more than one category of obligors described in any of clauses (i) through (v) of section 78c(a)(62)(B) of this title;
- (iii) shall include not fewer than 2 certifications for each such category of obligor; and
- (iv) shall state that the qualified institutional buyer—
  - (I) meets the definition of a qualified institutional buyer under section 78c(a)(64) of this title; and
  - (II) has used the credit ratings of the applicant for at least the 3 years immediately preceding the date of the certification in the subject category or categories of obligors.

**(D) Exemption from certification requirement**

A written certification under subparagraph (B)(ix) is not required with respect to any credit rating agency which has received, or been the subject of, a no-action letter from the staff of the Commission prior to August 2, 2006, stating that such staff would not recommend enforcement action against any broker or dealer that considers credit ratings issued by such credit rating agency to be ratings from a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(E) Limitation on liability of qualified institutional buyers**

No qualified institutional buyer shall be liable in any private right of action for any opinion or statement expressed in a certification made pursuant to subparagraph (B)(ix).

**(2) Review of application****(A) Initial determination**

Not later than 90 days after the date on which the application for registration is furnished to the Commission under paragraph (1) (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents) the Commission shall—

- (i) by order, grant such registration for ratings in the subject category or categories of obligors, as described in clauses (i) through (v) of section 78c(a)(62)(B) of this title; or
- (ii) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied.

**(B) Conduct of proceedings****(i) Content**

Proceedings referred to in subparagraph (A)(ii) shall—

- (I) include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and an opportunity for hearing; and
- (II) be concluded not later than 120 days after the date on which the application for registration is furnished to the Commission under paragraph (1).

**(ii) Determination**

At the conclusion of such proceedings, the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such application for registration.

**(iii) Extension authorized**

The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for not longer than 90 days, if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding, or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

**(C) Grounds for decision**

The Commission shall grant registration under this subsection—

(i) if the Commission finds that the requirements of this section are satisfied; and

(ii) unless the Commission finds (in which case the Commission shall deny such registration) that—

(I) the applicant does not have adequate financial and managerial resources to consistently produce credit ratings with integrity and to materially comply with the procedures and methodologies disclosed under paragraph (1)(B) and with subsections (g), (h), (i), and (j); or

(II) if the applicant were so registered, its registration would be subject to suspension or revocation under subsection (d).

**(3) Public availability of information**

Subject to section 78x of this title, the Commission shall, by rule, require a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, upon the granting of registration under this section, to make the information and documents submitted to the Commission in its completed application for registration, or in any amendment submitted under paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (b), publicly available on its website, or through another comparable, readily accessible means, except as provided in clauses (viii) and (ix) of paragraph (1)(B).

**(b) Update of registration****(1) Update**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall promptly amend its application for registration under this section if any information or document provided therein becomes materially inaccurate, except that a nationally recognized statistical rating organization is not required to amend—

(A) the information required to be filed under subsection (a)(1)(B)(i) by filing information under this paragraph, but shall amend such information in the annual submission of the organization under paragraph (2) of this subsection; or

(B) the certifications required to be provided under subsection (a)(1)(B)(ix) by filing information under this paragraph.

**(2) Certification**

Not later than 90 days after the end of each calendar year, each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall file with the Commission an amendment to its registration, in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors—

(A) certifying that the information and documents in the application for registration of such nationally recognized statistical rating organization (other than the certifications required under subsection (a)(1)(B)(ix)) continue to be accurate; and

(B) listing any material change that occurred to such information or documents during the previous calendar year.

**(c) Accountability for ratings procedures****(1) Authority**

The Commission shall have exclusive authority to enforce the provisions of this section in accordance with this chapter with respect to any nationally recognized statistical rating organization, if such nationally recognized statistical rating organization issues credit ratings in material contravention of those procedures relating to such nationally recognized statistical rating organization, including procedures relating to the prevention of misuse of nonpublic information and conflicts of interest, that such nationally recognized statistical rating organization—

(A) includes in its application for registration under subsection (a)(1)(B)(ii); or

(B) makes and disseminates in reports pursuant to section 78q(a) of this title or the rules and regulations thereunder.

**(2) Limitation**

The rules and regulations that the Commission may prescribe pursuant to this chapter, as they apply to nationally recognized statistical rating organizations, shall be narrowly tailored to meet the requirements of this chapter applicable to nationally recognized statistical rating organizations. Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, or any other provision of law, neither the Commission nor any State (or political subdivision thereof) may regulate the substance of credit ratings or the procedures and methodologies by which any nationally recognized statistical rating organization determines credit ratings. Nothing in this paragraph may be construed to afford a

defense against any action or proceeding brought by the Commission to enforce the antifraud provisions of the securities laws.

### **(3) Internal controls over processes for determining credit ratings**

#### **(A) In general**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall establish, maintain, enforce, and document an effective internal control structure governing the implementation of and adherence to policies, procedures, and methodologies for determining credit ratings, taking into consideration such factors as the Commission may prescribe, by rule.

#### **(B) Attestation requirement**

The Commission shall prescribe rules requiring each nationally recognized statistical rating organization to submit to the Commission an annual internal controls report, which shall contain—

- (i) a description of the responsibility of the management of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization in establishing and maintaining an effective internal control structure under subparagraph (A);
- (ii) an assessment of the effectiveness of the internal control structure of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization; and
- (iii) the attestation of the chief executive officer, or equivalent individual, of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

### **(d) Censure, denial, or suspension of registration; notice and hearing**

#### **(1) In general**

The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or revoke the registration of any nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or with respect to any person who is associated with, who is seeking to become associated with, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, who was associated or was seeking to become associated with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, the Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities or functions of such person, suspend for a period not exceeding 1 year, or bar such person from being associated with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, bar or revocation is necessary for the protection of investors and in the public interest and that such nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or any person associated with such an organization, whether prior to or subsequent to becoming so associated—

(A) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of section 78o(b)(4) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in section 78o(b)(4)(B) of this title, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of section 78o(b)(4) of this title, during the 10-year period preceding the date of commencement of the proceedings under this subsection, or at any time thereafter;

(B) has been convicted during the 10-year period preceding the date on which an application for registration is filed with the Commission under this section, or at any time thereafter, of—

- (i) any crime that is punishable by imprisonment for 1 or more years, and that is not described in section 78o(b)(4)(B) of this title; or
- (ii) a substantially equivalent crime by a foreign court of competent jurisdiction;

(C) is subject to any order of the Commission barring or suspending the right of the person to be associated with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization;

(D) fails to file the certifications required under subsection (b)(2);

(E) fails to maintain adequate financial and managerial resources to consistently produce credit ratings with integrity; <sup>1</sup>

(F) has failed reasonably to supervise, with a view to preventing a violation of the securities laws, an individual who commits such a violation, if the individual is subject to the supervision of that person.

### **(2) Suspension or revocation for particular class of securities**

#### **(A) In general**

The Commission may temporarily suspend or permanently revoke the registration of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization with respect to a particular class or subclass of securities, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that the nationally recognized statistical rating organization does not have adequate financial and managerial resources to consistently produce credit ratings with integrity.

#### **(B) Considerations**

In making any determination under subparagraph (A), the Commission shall consider—

- (i) whether the nationally recognized statistical rating organization has failed over a sustained period of time, as determined by the Commission, to produce ratings that are accurate for that class or subclass of securities; and
- (ii) such other factors as the Commission may determine.

**(e) Termination of registration****(1) Voluntary withdrawal**

A nationally recognized statistical rating organization may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission may establish as necessary in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by furnishing a written notice of withdrawal to the Commission.

**(2) Commission authority**

In addition to any other authority of the Commission under this chapter, if the Commission finds that a nationally recognized statistical rating organization is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a credit rating agency, the Commission, by order, shall cancel the registration under this section of such nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(f) Representations****(1) Ban on representations of sponsorship by United States or agency thereof**

It shall be unlawful for any nationally recognized statistical rating organization to represent or imply in any manner whatsoever that such nationally recognized statistical rating organization has been designated, sponsored, recommended, or approved, or that the abilities or qualifications thereof have in any respect been passed upon, by the United States or any agency, officer, or employee thereof.

**(2) Ban on representation as NRSRO of unregistered credit rating agencies**

It shall be unlawful for any credit rating agency that is not registered under this section as a nationally recognized statistical rating organization to state that such credit rating agency is a nationally recognized statistical rating organization registered under this chapter.

**(3) Statement of registration under Securities Exchange Act of 1934 provisions**

No provision of paragraph (1) shall be construed to prohibit a statement that a nationally recognized statistical rating organization is a nationally recognized statistical rating organization under this chapter, if such statement is true in fact and if the effect of such registration is not misrepresented.

**(g) Prevention of misuse of nonpublic information****(1) Organization policies and procedures**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall establish, maintain, and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed, taking into consideration the nature of the business of such nationally recognized statistical rating organization, to prevent the misuse in violation of this chapter, or the rules or regulations hereunder, of material, nonpublic information by such nationally recognized statistical rating organization or any person associated with such nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(2) Commission authority**

The Commission shall issue final rules in accordance with subsection (n) to require specific policies or procedures that are reasonably designed to prevent misuse in violation of this chapter (or the rules or regulations hereunder) of material, nonpublic information.

**(h) Management of conflicts of interest****(1) Organization policies and procedures**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall establish, maintain, and enforce written policies and procedures reasonably designed, taking into consideration the nature of the business of such nationally recognized statistical rating organization and affiliated persons and affiliated companies thereof, to address and manage any conflicts of interest that can arise from such business.

**(2) Commission authority**

The Commission shall issue final rules in accordance with subsection (n) to prohibit, or require the management and disclosure of, any conflicts of interest relating to the issuance of credit ratings by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, including, without limitation, conflicts of interest relating to—

(A) the manner in which a nationally recognized statistical rating organization is compensated by the obligor, or any affiliate of the obligor, for issuing credit ratings or providing related services;

(B) the provision of consulting, advisory, or other services by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or any person associated with such nationally recognized statistical rating organization, to the obligor, or any affiliate of the obligor;

(C) business relationships, ownership interests, or any other financial or personal interests between a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or any person associated with such nationally recognized statistical rating organization, and the obligor, or any affiliate of the obligor;

(D) any affiliation of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, or any person associated with such nationally recognized statistical rating organization, with any person that underwrites the securities or money market instruments that are the subject of a credit rating; and

(E) any other potential conflict of interest, as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

### **(3) Separation of ratings from sales and marketing**

#### **(A) Rules required**

The Commission shall issue rules to prevent the sales and marketing considerations of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization from influencing the production of ratings by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

#### **(B) Contents of rules**

The rules issued under subparagraph (A) shall provide for—

- (i) exceptions for small nationally recognized statistical rating organizations with respect to which the Commission determines that the separation of the production of ratings and sales and marketing activities is not appropriate; and
- (ii) suspension or revocation of the registration of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, if the Commission finds, on the record, after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that—
  - (I) the nationally recognized statistical rating organization has committed a violation of a rule issued under this subsection; and
  - (II) the violation of a rule issued under this subsection affected a rating.

### **(4) Look-back requirement**

#### **(A) Review by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall establish, maintain, and enforce policies and procedures reasonably designed to ensure that, in any case in which an employee of a person subject to a credit rating of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization or the issuer, underwriter, or sponsor of a security or money market instrument subject to a credit rating of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization was employed by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization and participated in any capacity in determining credit ratings for the person or the securities or money market instruments during the 1-year period preceding the date an action was taken with respect to the credit rating, the nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall—

- (i) conduct a review to determine whether any conflicts of interest of the employee influenced the credit rating; and
- (ii) take action to revise the rating if appropriate, in accordance with such rules as the Commission shall prescribe.

#### **(B) Review by Commission**

##### **(i) In general**

The Commission shall conduct periodic reviews of the policies described in subparagraph (A) and the implementation of the policies at each nationally recognized statistical rating organization to ensure they are reasonably designed and implemented to most effectively eliminate conflicts of interest.

##### **(ii) Timing of reviews**

The Commission shall review the code of ethics and conflict of interest policy of each nationally recognized statistical rating organization—

- (I) not less frequently than annually; and
- (II) whenever such policies are materially modified or amended.

### **(5) Report to Commission on certain employment transitions**

#### **(A) Report required**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall report to the Commission any case such organization knows or can reasonably be expected to know where a person associated with such organization within the previous 5 years obtains employment with any obligor, issuer, underwriter, or sponsor of a security or money market instrument for which the organization issued a credit rating during the 12-month period prior to such employment, if such employee—

- (i) was a senior officer of such organization;
- (ii) participated in any capacity in determining credit ratings for such obligor, issuer, underwriter, or sponsor; or
- (iii) supervised an employee described in clause (ii).

#### **(B) Public disclosure**

Upon receiving such a report, the Commission shall make such information publicly available.

### **(i) Prohibited conduct**

#### **(1) Prohibited acts and practices**

The Commission shall issue final rules in accordance with subsection (n) to prohibit any act or practice relating to the issuance of credit ratings by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization that the Commission

determines to be unfair, coercive, or abusive, including any act or practice relating to—

(A) conditioning or threatening to condition the issuance of a credit rating on the purchase by the obligor or an affiliate thereof of other services or products, including pre-credit rating assessment products, of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization or any person associated with such nationally recognized statistical rating organization;

(B) lowering or threatening to lower a credit rating on, or refusing to rate, securities or money market instruments issued by an asset pool or as part of any asset-backed or mortgage-backed securities transaction, unless a portion of the assets within such pool or part of such transaction, as applicable, also is rated by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization; or

(C) modifying or threatening to modify a credit rating or otherwise departing from its adopted systematic procedures and methodologies in determining credit ratings, based on whether the obligor, or an affiliate of the obligor, purchases or will purchase the credit rating or any other service or product of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization or any person associated with such organization.

## **(2) Rule of construction**

Nothing in paragraph (1), or in any rules or regulations adopted thereunder, may be construed to modify, impair, or supersede the operation of any of the antitrust laws (as defined in section 12 of this title, except that such term includes section 45 of this title, to the extent that such section 45 applies to unfair methods of competition).

## **(j) Designation of compliance officer**

### **(1) In general**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall designate an individual responsible for administering the policies and procedures that are required to be established pursuant to subsections (g) and (h), and for ensuring compliance with the securities laws and the rules and regulations thereunder, including those promulgated by the Commission pursuant to this section.

### **(2) Limitations**

#### **(A) In general**

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), an individual designated under paragraph (1) may not, while serving in the designated capacity—

- (i) perform credit ratings;
- (ii) participate in the development of ratings methodologies or models;
- (iii) perform marketing or sales functions; or
- (iv) participate in establishing compensation levels, other than for employees working for that individual.

#### **(B) Exception**

The Commission may exempt a small nationally recognized statistical rating organization from the limitations under this paragraph, if the Commission finds that compliance with such limitations would impose an unreasonable burden on the nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

### **(3) Other duties**

Each individual designated under paragraph (1) shall establish procedures for the receipt, retention, and treatment of—

- (A) complaints regarding credit ratings, models, methodologies, and compliance with the securities laws and the policies and procedures developed under this section; and
- (B) confidential, anonymous complaints by employees or users of credit ratings.

### **(4) Compensation**

The compensation of each compliance officer appointed under paragraph (1) shall not be linked to the financial performance of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization and shall be arranged so as to ensure the independence of the officer's judgment.

### **(5) Annual reports required**

#### **(A) Annual reports required**

Each individual designated under paragraph (1) shall submit to the nationally recognized statistical rating organization an annual report on the compliance of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization with the securities laws and the policies and procedures of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization that includes—

- (i) a description of any material changes to the code of ethics and conflict of interest policies of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization; and
- (ii) a certification that the report is accurate and complete.

#### **(B) Submission of reports to the Commission**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall file the reports required under subparagraph (A) together with the financial report that is required to be submitted to the Commission under this section.

## **(k) Statements of financial condition**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall, on a confidential basis, file with the Commission, at intervals determined by the Commission, such financial statements, certified (if required by the rules or regulations of the Commission) by an independent public accountant, and information concerning its financial condition, as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(l) Sole method of registration**

**(1) In general**

On and after the effective date of this section, a credit rating agency may only be registered as a nationally recognized statistical rating organization for any purpose in accordance with this section.

**(2) Prohibition on reliance on no-action relief**

On and after the effective date of this section—

(A) an entity that, before that date, received advice, approval, or a no-action letter from the Commission or staff thereof to be treated as a nationally recognized statistical rating organization pursuant to the Commission rule at section 240.15c3-1 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, may represent itself or act as a nationally recognized statistical rating organization only—

- (i) during Commission consideration of the application, if such entity has filed an application for registration under this section; and
- (ii) on and after the date of approval of its application for registration under this section; and

(B) the advice, approval, or no-action letter described in subparagraph (A) shall be void.

**(3) Notice to other agencies**

Not later than 30 days after September 29, 2006, the Commission shall give notice of the actions undertaken pursuant to this section to each Federal agency which employs in its rules and regulations the term "nationally recognized statistical rating organization" (as that term is used under Commission rule 15c3-1 (17 C.F.R. 240.15c3-1), as in effect on September 29, 2006).

**(m) Accountability**

**(1) In general**

The enforcement and penalty provisions of this chapter shall apply to statements made by a credit rating agency in the same manner and to the same extent as such provisions apply to statements made by a registered public accounting firm or a securities analyst under the securities laws, and such statements shall not be deemed forward-looking statements for the purposes of section 78u-5 of this title.

**(2) Rulemaking**

The Commission shall issue such rules as may be necessary to carry out this subsection.

**(n) Regulations**

**(1) New provisions**

Such rules and regulations as are required by this section or are otherwise necessary to carry out this section, including the application form required under subsection (a)—

- (A) shall be issued by the Commission in final form, not later than 270 days after September 29, 2006; and
- (B) shall become effective not later than 270 days after September 29, 2006.

**(2) Review of existing regulations**

Not later than 270 days after September 29, 2006, the Commission shall—

- (A) review its existing rules and regulations which employ the term "nationally recognized statistical rating organization" or "NRSRO"; and
- (B) amend or revise such rules and regulations in accordance with the purposes of this section, as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(o) NRSROs subject to Commission authority**

**(1) In general**

No provision of the laws of any State or political subdivision thereof requiring the registration, licensing, or qualification as a credit rating agency or a nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall apply to any nationally recognized statistical rating organization or person employed by or working under the control of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(2) Limitation**

Nothing in this subsection prohibits the securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of any State from investigating and bringing an enforcement action with respect to fraud or deceit against any nationally recognized statistical rating organization or person associated with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(p) Regulation of nationally recognized statistical rating organizations**

**(1) Establishment of Office of Credit Ratings****(A) Office established**

The Commission shall establish within the Commission an Office of Credit Ratings (referred to in this subsection as the "Office") to administer the rules of the Commission—

- (i) with respect to the practices of nationally recognized statistical rating organizations in determining ratings, for the protection of users of credit ratings and in the public interest;
- (ii) to promote accuracy in credit ratings issued by nationally recognized statistical rating organizations; and
- (iii) to ensure that such ratings are not unduly influenced by conflicts of interest.

**(B) Director of the Office**

The head of the Office shall be the Director, who shall report to the Chairman.

**(2) Staffing**

The Office established under this subsection shall be staffed sufficiently to carry out fully the requirements of this section. The staff shall include persons with knowledge of and expertise in corporate, municipal, and structured debt finance.

**(3) Commission examinations****(A) Annual examinations required**

The Office shall conduct an examination of each nationally recognized statistical rating organization at least annually.

**(B) Conduct of examinations**

Each examination under subparagraph (A) shall include a review of—

- (i) whether the nationally recognized statistical rating organization conducts business in accordance with the policies, procedures, and rating methodologies of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization;
- (ii) the management of conflicts of interest by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization;
- (iii) implementation of ethics policies by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization;
- (iv) the internal supervisory controls of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization;
- (v) the governance of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization;
- (vi) the activities of the individual designated by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization under subsection (j)(1);
- (vii) the processing of complaints by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization; and
- (viii) the policies of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization governing the post-employment activities of former staff of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(C) Inspection reports**

The Commission shall make available to the public, in an easily understandable format, an annual report summarizing—

- (i) the essential findings of all examinations conducted under subparagraph (A), as deemed appropriate by the Commission;
- (ii) the responses by the nationally recognized statistical rating organizations to any material regulatory deficiencies identified by the Commission under clause (i); and
- (iii) whether the nationally recognized statistical rating organizations have appropriately addressed the recommendations of the Commission contained in previous reports under this subparagraph.

**(4) Rulemaking authority**

The Commission shall—

- (A) establish, by rule, fines, and other penalties applicable to any nationally recognized statistical rating organization that violates the requirements of this section and the rules thereunder; and
- (B) issue such rules as may be necessary to carry out this section.

**(q) Transparency of ratings performance****(1) Rulemaking required**

The Commission shall, by rule, require that each nationally recognized statistical rating organization publicly disclose information on the initial credit ratings determined by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization for each type of obligor, security, and money market instrument, and any subsequent changes to such credit ratings, for the purpose of allowing users of credit ratings to evaluate the accuracy of ratings and compare the performance of ratings by different nationally recognized statistical rating organizations.

**(2) Content**

The rules of the Commission under this subsection shall require, at a minimum, disclosures that—

- (A) are comparable among nationally recognized statistical rating organizations, to allow users of credit ratings to compare the performance of credit ratings across nationally recognized statistical rating organizations;
- (B) are clear and informative for investors having a wide range of sophistication who use or might use credit ratings;

(C) include performance information over a range of years and for a variety of types of credit ratings, including for credit ratings withdrawn by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization;

(D) are published and made freely available by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization, on an easily accessible portion of its website, and in writing, when requested;

(E) are appropriate to the business model of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization; and

(F) each nationally recognized statistical rating organization include an attestation with any credit rating it issues affirming that no part of the rating was influenced by any other business activities, that the rating was based solely on the merits of the instruments being rated, and that such rating was an independent evaluation of the risks and merits of the instrument.

**(r) Credit ratings methodologies**

The Commission shall prescribe rules, for the protection of investors and in the public interest, with respect to the procedures and methodologies, including qualitative and quantitative data and models, used by nationally recognized statistical rating organizations that require each nationally recognized statistical rating organization—

(1) to ensure that credit ratings are determined using procedures and methodologies, including qualitative and quantitative data and models, that are—

(A) approved by the board of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization, a body performing a function similar to that of a board; and

(B) in accordance with the policies and procedures of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization for the development and modification of credit rating procedures and methodologies;

(2) to ensure that when material changes to credit rating procedures and methodologies (including changes to qualitative and quantitative data and models) are made, that—

(A) the changes are applied consistently to all credit ratings to which the changed procedures and methodologies apply;

(B) to the extent that changes are made to credit rating surveillance procedures and methodologies, the changes are applied to then-current credit ratings by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization within a reasonable time period determined by the Commission, by rule; and

(C) the nationally recognized statistical rating organization publicly discloses the reason for the change; and

(3) to notify users of credit ratings—

(A) of the version of a procedure or methodology, including the qualitative methodology or quantitative inputs, used with respect to a particular credit rating;

(B) when a material change is made to a procedure or methodology, including to a qualitative model or quantitative inputs;

(C) when a significant error is identified in a procedure or methodology, including a qualitative or quantitative model, that may result in credit rating actions; and

(D) of the likelihood of a material change described in subparagraph (B) resulting in a change in current credit ratings.

**(s) Transparency of credit rating methodologies and information reviewed**

**(1) Form for disclosures**

The Commission shall require, by rule, each nationally recognized statistical rating organization to prescribe a form to accompany the publication of each credit rating that discloses—

(A) information relating to—

(i) the assumptions underlying the credit rating procedures and methodologies;

(ii) the data that was relied on to determine the credit rating; and

(iii) if applicable, how the nationally recognized statistical rating organization used servicer or remittance reports, and with what frequency, to conduct surveillance of the credit rating; and

(B) information that can be used by investors and other users of credit ratings to better understand credit ratings in each class of credit rating issued by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(2) Format**

The form developed under paragraph (1) shall—

(A) be easy to use and helpful for users of credit ratings to understand the information contained in the report;

(B) require the nationally recognized statistical rating organization to provide the content described in paragraph (3)(B) in a manner that is directly comparable across types of securities; and

(3)(B) in a manner that is directly comparable across types of securities; and

(C) be made readily available to users of credit ratings, in electronic or paper form, as the Commission may, by rule, determine.

**(3) Content of form**

**(A) Qualitative content**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall disclose on the form developed under paragraph (1)—

(1)—

- (i) the credit ratings produced by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization;
- (ii) the main assumptions and principles used in constructing procedures and methodologies, including qualitative methodologies and quantitative inputs and assumptions about the correlation of defaults across underlying assets used in rating structured products;
- (iii) the potential limitations of the credit ratings, and the types of risks excluded from the credit ratings that the nationally recognized statistical rating organization does not comment on, including liquidity, market, and other risks;
- (iv) information on the uncertainty of the credit rating, including—
  - (I) information on the reliability, accuracy, and quality of the data relied on in determining the credit rating; and
  - (II) a statement relating to the extent to which data essential to the determination of the credit rating were reliable or limited, including—
    - (aa) any limits on the scope of historical data; and
    - (bb) any limits in accessibility to certain documents or other types of information that would have better informed the credit rating;
- (v) whether and to what extent third party due diligence services have been used by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization, a description of the information that such third party reviewed in conducting due diligence services, and a description of the findings or conclusions of such third party;
- (vi) a description of the data about any obligor, issuer, security, or money market instrument that were relied upon for the purpose of determining the credit rating;
- (vii) a statement containing an overall assessment of the quality of information available and considered in producing a rating for an obligor, security, or money market instrument, in relation to the quality of information available to the nationally recognized statistical rating organization in rating similar issuances;
- (viii) information relating to conflicts of interest of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization; and
- (ix) such additional information as the Commission may require.

#### **(B) Quantitative content**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall disclose on the form developed under this subsection—

- (i) an explanation or measure of the potential volatility of the credit rating, including—
  - (I) any factors that might lead to a change in the credit ratings; and
  - (II) the magnitude of the change that a user can expect under different market conditions;
- (ii) information on the content of the rating, including—
  - (I) the historical performance of the rating; and
  - (II) the expected probability of default and the expected loss in the event of default;
- (iii) information on the sensitivity of the rating to assumptions made by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization, including—
  - (I) 5 assumptions made in the ratings process that, without accounting for any other factor, would have the greatest impact on a rating if the assumptions were proven false or inaccurate; and
  - (II) an analysis, using specific examples, of how each of the 5 assumptions identified under subclause (I) impacts a rating;<sup>2</sup>
- (iv) such additional information as may be required by the Commission.

#### **(4) Due diligence services for asset-backed securities**

##### **(A) Findings**

The issuer or underwriter of any asset-backed security shall make publicly available the findings and conclusions of any third-party due diligence report obtained by the issuer or underwriter.

##### **(B) Certification required**

In any case in which third-party due diligence services are employed by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, an issuer, or an underwriter, the person providing the due diligence services shall provide to any nationally recognized statistical rating organization that produces a rating to which such services relate, written certification, as provided in subparagraph (C).

##### **(C) Format and content**

The Commission shall establish the appropriate format and content for the written certifications required under subparagraph (B), to ensure that providers of due diligence services have conducted a thorough review of data, documentation, and other relevant information necessary for a nationally recognized statistical rating organization to provide an accurate rating.

##### **(D) Disclosure of certification**

The Commission shall adopt rules requiring a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, at the time at which the nationally recognized statistical rating organization produces a rating, to disclose the certification described in subparagraph (B) to the public in a manner that allows the public to determine the adequacy and level of due diligence services provided by a third party.

**(t) Corporate governance, organization, and management of conflicts of interest**

**(1) Board of directors**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall have a board of directors.

**(2) Independent directors**

**(A) In general**

At least  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the board of directors, but not fewer than 2 of the members thereof, shall be independent of the nationally recognized statistical rating agency. A portion of the independent directors shall include users of ratings from a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(B) Independence determination**

In order to be considered independent for purposes of this subsection, a member of the board of directors of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization—

- (i) may not, other than in his or her capacity as a member of the board of directors or any committee thereof—
  - (I) accept any consulting, advisory, or other compensatory fee from the nationally recognized statistical rating organization; or
  - (II) be a person associated with the nationally recognized statistical rating organization or with any affiliated company thereof; and

(ii) shall be disqualified from any deliberation involving a specific rating in which the independent board member has a financial interest in the outcome of the rating.

**(C) Compensation and term**

The compensation of the independent members of the board of directors of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall not be linked to the business performance of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization, and shall be arranged so as to ensure the independence of their judgment. The term of office of the independent directors shall be for a pre-agreed fixed period, not to exceed 5 years, and shall not be renewable.

**(3) Duties of board of directors**

In addition to the overall responsibilities of the board of directors, the board shall oversee—

- (A) the establishment, maintenance, and enforcement of policies and procedures for determining credit ratings;
- (B) the establishment, maintenance, and enforcement of policies and procedures to address, manage, and disclose any conflicts of interest;
- (C) the effectiveness of the internal control system with respect to policies and procedures for determining credit ratings; and
- (D) the compensation and promotion policies and practices of the nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(4) Treatment of NRSRO subsidiaries**

If a nationally recognized statistical rating organization is a subsidiary of a parent entity, the board of the directors of the parent entity may satisfy the requirements of this subsection by assigning to a committee of such board of directors the duties under paragraph (3), if—

- (A) at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  of the members of the committee (including the chairperson of the committee) are independent, as defined in this section; and
- (B) at least 1 member of the committee is a user of ratings from a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(5) Exception authority**

If the Commission finds that compliance with the provisions of this subsection present an unreasonable burden on a small nationally recognized statistical rating organization, the Commission may permit the nationally recognized statistical rating organization to delegate such responsibilities to a committee that includes at least one individual who is a user of ratings of a nationally recognized statistical rating organization.

**(u) Duty to report tips alleging material violations of law**

**(1) Duty to report**

Each nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall refer to the appropriate law enforcement or regulatory authorities any information that the nationally recognized statistical rating organization receives from a third party and finds credible that alleges that an issuer of securities rated by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization has committed or is committing a material violation of law that has not been adjudicated by a Federal or State court.

**(2) Rule of construction**

Nothing in paragraph (1) may be construed to require a nationally recognized statistical rating organization to verify the accuracy of the information described in paragraph (1).

**(v) Information from sources other than the issuer**

In producing a credit rating, a nationally recognized statistical rating organization shall consider information about an issuer that the nationally recognized statistical rating organization has, or receives from a source other than the issuer or underwriter, that the nationally recognized statistical rating organization finds credible and potentially significant to a rating decision.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §15E, as added Pub. L. 109–291, §4(a), Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1329; amended Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §§932(a), 933(a), 934, 935, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1872, 1883, 1884.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1)(A), (B)(iii), (c), (e)(2), (f)(2), (3), (g), and (m)(1), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (f)(3), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, as amended, which is classified principally to this chapter (§78a et seq.). For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

**AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (b)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(1)(A), substituted "filed" for "furnished" and "filing" for "furnishing".

Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(1)(B), substituted "filing" for "furnishing".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(1)(C), substituted "file with" for "furnish to" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(2)(A), inserted "any other provision of this section, or" after "Notwithstanding" and inserted at end "Nothing in this paragraph may be construed to afford a defense against any action or proceeding brought by the Commission to enforce the antifraud provisions of the securities laws."

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(2)(B), added par. (3).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(3), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted heading, inserted ", or with respect to any person who is associated with, who is seeking to become associated with, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, who was associated or was seeking to become associated with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization, the Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities or functions of such person, suspend for a period not exceeding 1 year, or bar such person from being associated with a nationally recognized statistical rating organization," before "if the Commission finds" and "bar" before "or revocation is necessary", redesignated former pars. (1) to (5) as subpars. (A) to (E), respectively, of par. (1) and former subpars. (A) and (B) of par. (2) as cls. (i) and (ii), respectively, of subpar. (B), in subpar. (B), substituted "filed with" for "furnished to" in introductory provisions, in subpar. (D), substituted "file" for "furnish", and added subpar. (F) and par. (2).

Subsec. (h)(3) to (5). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(4), added pars. (3) to (5).

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(5), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted heading, and added pars. (2) to (5).

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(6), substituted "file with" for "furnish to".

Subsec. (l)(2)(A)(i). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(7), substituted "filed" for "furnished".

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 111–203, §933(a), amended subsec. (m) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (m) provided that registration did not constitute a waiver of rights, privileges, or defenses and that this section could not be construed as creating any private right of action.

Subsecs. (p) to (t). Pub. L. 111–203, §932(a)(8), added subsecs. (p) to (t) and struck out former subsec. (p) which related to applicability date of this section.

Subsec. (u). Pub. L. 111–203, §934, added subsec. (u).

Subsec. (v). Pub. L. 111–203, §935, added subsec. (v).

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

**REGULATIONS**

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §937, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1885, provided that: "Unless otherwise specifically provided in this subtitle [subtitle C (§§931–939H) of title IX of Pub. L. 111–203, enacting sections 780–8 and

78o–9 of this title, amending this section and sections 78c, 78u–4, and 80a–6 of this title, sections 24a, 1817, 1831e, and 4519 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and section 286hh of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 78m and 78o–9 of this title, and section 24a of Title 12], the [Securities and Exchange] Commission shall issue final regulations, as required by this subtitle and the amendments made by this subtitle, not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010]."

### **QUALIFICATION STANDARDS FOR CREDIT RATING ANALYSTS**

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §936, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1884, provided that: "Not later than 1 year after the date of enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010], the Commission shall issue rules that are reasonably designed to ensure that any person employed by a nationally recognized statistical rating organization to perform credit ratings—

"(1) meets standards of training, experience, and competence necessary to produce accurate ratings for the categories of issuers whose securities the person rates; and

"(2) is tested for knowledge of the credit rating process."

[For definitions of terms used in section 936 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

### **REVIEW OF RELIANCE ON RATINGS**

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §939A, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1887, provided that:

"(a) AGENCY REVIEW.—Not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of this subtitle [July 21, 2010], each Federal agency shall, to the extent applicable, review—

"(1) any regulation issued by such agency that requires the use of an assessment of the credit-worthiness of a security or money market instrument; and

"(2) any references to or requirements in such regulations regarding credit ratings.

"(b) MODIFICATIONS REQUIRED.—Each such agency shall modify any such regulations identified by the review conducted under subsection (a) to remove any reference to or requirement of reliance on credit ratings and to substitute in such regulations such standard of credit-worthiness as each respective agency shall determine as appropriate for such regulations. In making such determination, such agencies shall seek to establish, to the extent feasible, uniform standards of credit-worthiness for use by each such agency, taking into account the entities regulated by each such agency and the purposes for which such entities would rely on such standards of credit-worthiness.

"(c) REPORT.—Upon conclusion of the review required under subsection (a), each Federal agency shall transmit a report to Congress containing a description of any modification of any regulation such agency made pursuant to subsection (b)."

[For definition of "security" as used in section 939A of Pub. L. 111–203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

### **REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES IN ASSET-BACKED OFFERINGS**

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §943, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1897, provided that: "Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall prescribe regulations on the use of representations and warranties in the market for asset-backed securities (as that term is defined in section 3(a)(77) [now 3(a)(79)] of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(79)], as added by this subtitle) that—

"(1) require each national [sic] recognized statistical rating organization to include in any report accompanying a credit rating a description of—

"(A) the representations, warranties, and enforcement mechanisms available to investors; and

"(B) how they differ from the representations, warranties, and enforcement mechanisms in issuances of similar securities; and

"(2) require any securitizer (as that term is defined in section 15G(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78o–11(a)], as added by this subtitle) to disclose fulfilled and unfulfilled repurchase requests across all trusts aggregated by the securitizer, so that investors may identify asset originators with clear underwriting deficiencies."

[For definitions of terms used in section 943 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

### **FINDINGS**

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §931, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1872, provided that: "Congress finds the following:

"(1) Because of the systemic importance of credit ratings and the reliance placed on credit ratings by individual and institutional investors and financial regulators, the activities and performances of

credit rating agencies, including nationally recognized statistical rating organizations, are matters of national public interest, as credit rating agencies are central to capital formation, investor confidence, and the efficient performance of the United States economy.

"(2) Credit rating agencies, including nationally recognized statistical rating organizations, play a critical 'gatekeeper' role in the debt market that is functionally similar to that of securities analysts, who evaluate the quality of securities in the equity market, and auditors, who review the financial statements of firms. Such role justifies a similar level of public oversight and accountability.

"(3) Because credit rating agencies perform evaluative and analytical services on behalf of clients, much as other financial 'gatekeepers' do, the activities of credit rating agencies are fundamentally commercial in character and should be subject to the same standards of liability and oversight as apply to auditors, securities analysts, and investment bankers.

"(4) In certain activities, particularly in advising arrangers of structured financial products on potential ratings of such products, credit rating agencies face conflicts of interest that need to be carefully monitored and that therefore should be addressed explicitly in legislation in order to give clearer authority to the Securities and Exchange Commission.

"(5) In the recent financial crisis, the ratings on structured financial products have proven to be inaccurate. This inaccuracy contributed significantly to the mismanagement of risks by financial institutions and investors, which in turn adversely impacted the health of the economy in the United States and around the world. Such inaccuracy necessitates increased accountability on the part of credit rating agencies."

[For definitions of terms used in section 931 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

Pub. L. 109–291, §2, Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1327, provided that: "Upon the basis of facts disclosed by the record and report of the Securities and Exchange Commission made pursuant to section 702 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 [Pub. L. 107–204] (116 Stat. 797), hearings before the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives during the 108th and 109th Congresses, comment letters to the concept releases and proposed rules of the Commission, and facts otherwise disclosed and ascertained, Congress finds that credit rating agencies are of national importance, in that, among other things—

"(1) their ratings, publications, writings, analyses, and reports are furnished and distributed, and their contracts, subscription agreements, and other arrangements with clients are negotiated and performed, by the use of the mails and other means and instrumentalities of interstate commerce;

"(2) their ratings, publications, writings, analyses, and reports customarily relate to the purchase and sale of securities traded on securities exchanges and in interstate over-the-counter markets, securities issued by companies engaged in business in interstate commerce, and securities issued by national banks and member banks of the Federal Reserve System;

"(3) the foregoing transactions occur in such volume as substantially to affect interstate commerce, the securities markets, the national banking system, and the national economy;

"(4) the oversight of such credit rating agencies serves the compelling interest of investor protection;

"(5) the 2 largest credit rating agencies serve the vast majority of the market, and additional competition is in the public interest; and

"(6) the Commission has indicated that it needs statutory authority to oversee the credit rating industry."

### **SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION ANNUAL REPORT**

Pub. L. 109–291, §6, Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1338, provided that: "The Commission shall submit an annual report to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives that, with respect to the year to which the report relates—

"(1) identifies applicants for registration under section 15E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78o–7], as added by this Act;

"(2) specifies the number of and actions taken on such applications; and

"(3) specifies the views of the Commission on the state of competition, transparency, and conflicts of interest among nationally recognized statistical rating organizations."

### **DEFINITIONS**

Pub. L. 109–291, §3(b), Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1328, provided that: "As used in this Act [see Short Title of 2006 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title]—

"(1) the term 'Commission' means the Securities and Exchange Commission; and

"(2) the term 'nationally recognized statistical rating organization' has the same meaning as in section 3(a)(62) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(62)], as added by this Act."

<sup>1</sup> *So in original. The word "or" probably should appear.*

<sup>2</sup> *So in original. The word "and" probably should appear.*

## §78o–8. Universal ratings symbols

### (a) Rulemaking

The Commission shall require, by rule, each nationally recognized statistical rating organization to establish, maintain, and enforce written policies and procedures that—

- (1) assess the probability that an issuer of a security or money market instrument will default, fail to make timely payments, or otherwise not make payments to investors in accordance with the terms of the security or money market instrument;
- (2) clearly define and disclose the meaning of any symbol used by the nationally recognized statistical rating organization to denote a credit rating; and
- (3) apply any symbol described in paragraph (2) in a manner that is consistent for all types of securities and money market instruments for which the symbol is used.

### (b) Rule of construction

Nothing in this section shall prohibit a nationally recognized statistical rating organization from using distinct sets of symbols to denote credit ratings for different types of securities or money market instruments.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §938, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1885.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010 and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## DEFINITIONS

For definitions of terms used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## §78o–9. Study and rulemaking on assigned credit ratings

### (a) Definition

In this section, the term "structured finance product" means an asset-backed security, as defined in section 3(a)(77) <sup>1</sup> of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(79)], as added by section 941, <sup>1</sup> and any structured product based on an asset-backed security, as determined by the Commission, by rule.

### (b) Study

The Commission shall carry out a study of—

- (1) the credit rating process for structured finance products and the conflicts of interest associated with the issuer-pay and the subscriber-pay models;
- (2) the feasibility of establishing a system in which a public or private utility or a self-regulatory organization assigns nationally recognized statistical rating organizations to determine the credit ratings of structured finance products, including—
  - (A) an assessment of potential mechanisms for determining fees for the nationally recognized statistical rating organizations;
  - (B) appropriate methods for paying fees to the nationally recognized statistical rating organizations;
  - (C) the extent to which the creation of such a system would be viewed as the creation of moral hazard by the Federal Government; and
  - (D) any constitutional or other issues concerning the establishment of such a system;

(3) the range of metrics that could be used to determine the accuracy of credit ratings; and

(4) alternative means for compensating nationally recognized statistical rating organizations that would create incentives for accurate credit ratings.

**(c) Report and recommendation**

Not later than 24 months after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report that contains—

- (1) the findings of the study required under subsection (b); and
- (2) any recommendations for regulatory or statutory changes that the Commission determines should be made to implement the findings of the study required under subsection (b).

**(d) Rulemaking**

**(1) Rulemaking**

After submission of the report under subsection (c), the Commission shall, by rule, as the Commission determines is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, establish a system for the assignment of nationally recognized statistical rating organizations to determine the initial credit ratings of structured finance products, in a manner that prevents the issuer, sponsor, or underwriter of the structured finance product from selecting the nationally recognized statistical rating organization that will determine the initial credit ratings and monitor such credit ratings. In issuing any rule under this paragraph, the Commission shall give thorough consideration to the provisions of section 15E(w) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as that provision would have been added by section 939D of H.R. 4173 (111th Congress), as passed by the Senate on May 20, 2010, and shall implement the system described in such section 939D unless the Commission determines that an alternative system would better serve the public interest and the protection of investors.

**(2) Rule of construction**

Nothing in this subsection may be construed to limit or suspend any other rulemaking authority of the Commission. (Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §939F, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1889.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

Section 3(a)(77) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (a), was redesignated section 3(a)(79) of that Act by Pub. L. 112–106, title I, §101(b)(1), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 307, and is classified to section 78c(a)(79) of this title.

Section 941, referred to in subsec. (a), means section 941 of Pub. L. 111–203.

Section 15E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), is classified to section 78o–7 of this title.

H.R. 4173, referred to in subsec. (d)(1), became Pub. L. 111–203. As enacted, section 939D of Pub. L. 111–203 did not add a subsec. (w) to section 15E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78o–7) but enacted provisions set out as a note below. For the provisions of section 15E(w) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as that provision would have been added by section 939D of H.R. 4173 (111th Congress), as passed by the Senate on May 20, 2010, see 156 Cong. Rec. 80 at pp. S4338, S4339 (daily ed. May 25, 2010).

**CODIFICATION**

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010 and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

**GOVERNMENT ACCOUNTABILITY OFFICE STUDY ON ALTERNATIVE BUSINESS MODELS**

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §939D, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1888, provided that:

"(a) **STUDY.**—The Comptroller General of the United States shall conduct a study on alternative means for compensating nationally recognized statistical rating organizations in order to create incentives for nationally recognized statistical rating organizations to provide more accurate credit ratings, including any statutory changes that would be required to facilitate the use of an alternative means of compensation.

"(b) **REPORT.**—Not later than 18 months after the date of enactment of this Act [July 21, 2010], the Comptroller General shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report on the results of the study conducted under subsection (a), including recommendations, if any, for providing incentives to credit rating agencies to improve the credit rating process."

[For definition of "nationally recognized statistical rating organization" as used in section 939D of Pub. L. 111–203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

## DEFINITIONS

For definitions of terms used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

### §78o–10. Registration and regulation of security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants

#### (a) Registration

##### (1) Security-based swap dealers

It shall be unlawful for any person to act as a security-based swap dealer unless the person is registered as a security-based swap dealer with the Commission.

##### (2) Major security-based swap participants

It shall be unlawful for any person to act as a major security-based swap participant unless the person is registered as a major security-based swap participant with the Commission.

#### (b) Requirements

##### (1) In general

A person shall register as a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant by filing a registration application with the Commission.

##### (2) Contents

###### (A) In general

The application shall be made in such form and manner as prescribed by the Commission, and shall contain such information, as the Commission considers necessary concerning the business in which the applicant is or will be engaged.

###### (B) Continual reporting

A person that is registered as a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall continue to submit to the Commission reports that contain such information pertaining to the business of the person as the Commission may require.

##### (3) Expiration

Each registration under this section shall expire at such time as the Commission may prescribe by rule or regulation.

##### (4) Rules

Except as provided in subsections (d) and (e), the Commission may prescribe rules applicable to security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants, including rules that limit the activities of non-bank security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants.

##### (5) Transition

Not later than 1 year after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall issue rules under this section to provide for the registration of security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants.

##### (6) Statutory disqualification

Except to the extent otherwise specifically provided by rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, it shall be unlawful for a security-based swap dealer or a major security-based swap participant to permit any person associated with a security-based swap dealer or a major security-based swap participant who is subject to a statutory disqualification to effect or be involved in effecting security-based swaps on behalf of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, if the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of the statutory disqualification.

#### (c) Dual registration

##### (1) Security-based swap dealer

Any person that is required to be registered as a security-based swap dealer under this section shall register with the Commission, regardless of whether the person also is registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission as a swap dealer.

##### (2) Major security-based swap participant

Any person that is required to be registered as a major security-based swap participant under this section shall register with the Commission, regardless of whether the person also is registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission as a major swap participant.

**(d) Rulemaking**

**(1) In general**

The Commission shall adopt rules for persons that are registered as security-based swap dealers or major security-based swap participants under this section.

**(2) Exception for prudential requirements**

**(A) In general**

The Commission may not prescribe rules imposing prudential requirements on security-based swap dealers or major security-based swap participants for which there is a prudential regulator.

**(B) Applicability**

Subparagraph (A) does not limit the authority of the Commission to prescribe rules as directed under this section.

**(e) Capital and margin requirements**

**(1) In general**

**(A) Security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants that are banks**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant for which there is not a prudential regulator shall meet such minimum capital requirements and minimum initial and variation margin requirements as the prudential regulator shall by rule or regulation prescribe under paragraph (2)(A).

**(B) Security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants that are not banks**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant for which there is not a prudential regulator shall meet such minimum capital requirements and minimum initial and variation margin requirements as the Commission shall by rule or regulation prescribe under paragraph (2)(B).

**(2) Rules**

**(A) Security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants that are banks**

The prudential regulators, in consultation with the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, shall adopt rules for security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants, with respect to their activities as a swap dealer or major swap participant, for which there is a prudential regulator imposing—

- (i) capital requirements; and
- (ii) both initial and variation margin requirements on all security-based swaps that are not cleared by a registered clearing agency.

**(B) Security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants that are not banks**

The Commission shall adopt rules for security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants, with respect to their activities as a swap dealer or major swap participant, for which there is not a prudential regulator imposing—

- (i) capital requirements; and
- (ii) both initial and variation margin requirements on all swaps that are not cleared by a registered clearing agency.

**(C) Capital**

In setting capital requirements for a person that is designated as a security-based swap dealer or a major security-based swap participant for a single type or single class or category of security-based swap or activities, the prudential regulator and the Commission shall take into account the risks associated with other types of security-based swaps or classes of security-based swaps or categories of security-based swaps engaged in and the other activities conducted by that person that are not otherwise subject to regulation applicable to that person by virtue of the status of the person.

**(3) Standards for capital and margin**

**(A) In general**

To offset the greater risk to the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant and the financial system arising from the use of security-based swaps that are not cleared, the requirements imposed under paragraph (2) shall—

- (i) help ensure the safety and soundness of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant; and
- (ii) be appropriate for the risk associated with the non-cleared security-based swaps held as a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant.

**(B) Rule of construction****(i) In general**

Nothing in this section shall limit, or be construed to limit, the authority—

(I) of the Commission to set financial responsibility rules for a broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o(b) of this title (except for section 78o(b)(11) thereof) in accordance with section 78o(c)(3) of this title; or

(II) of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission to set financial responsibility rules for a futures commission merchant or introducing broker registered pursuant to section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 6f(a)] (except for section 4f(a)(3) [7 U.S.C. 6f(a)(3)] thereof) in accordance with section 4f(b) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 6f(b)].

**(ii) Futures commission merchants and other dealers**

A futures commission merchant, introducing broker, broker, or dealer shall maintain sufficient capital to comply with the stricter of any applicable capital requirements to which such futures commission merchant, introducing broker, broker, or dealer is subject to under this chapter or the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.].

**(C) Margin requirements**

In prescribing margin requirements under this subsection, the prudential regulator with respect to security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants that are depository institutions, and the Commission with respect to security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants that are not depository institutions shall permit the use of noncash collateral, as the regulator or the Commission determines to be consistent with—

- (i) preserving the financial integrity of markets trading security-based swaps; and
- (ii) preserving the stability of the United States financial system.

**(D) Comparability of capital and margin requirements****(i) In general**

The prudential regulators, the Commission, and the Securities and Exchange Commission shall periodically (but not less frequently than annually) consult on minimum capital requirements and minimum initial and variation margin requirements.

**(ii) Comparability**

The entities described in clause (i) shall, to the maximum extent practicable, establish and maintain comparable minimum capital requirements and minimum initial and variation margin requirements, including the use of noncash collateral, for—

- (I) security-based swap dealers; and
- (II) major security-based swap participants.

**(4) Applicability with respect to counterparties**

The requirements of paragraphs (2)(A)(ii) and (2)(B)(ii) shall not apply to a security-based swap in which a counterparty qualifies for an exception under section 78c–3(g)(1) of this title or satisfies the criteria in section 78c–3(g)(4) of this title.

**(f) Reporting and recordkeeping****(1) In general**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant—

(A) shall make such reports as are required by the Commission, by rule or regulation, regarding the transactions and positions and financial condition of the registered security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant;

(B)(i) for which there is a prudential regulator, shall keep books and records of all activities related to the business as a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant in such form and manner and for such period as may be prescribed by the Commission by rule or regulation; and

(ii) for which there is no prudential regulator, shall keep books and records in such form and manner and for such period as may be prescribed by the Commission by rule or regulation; and

(C) shall keep books and records described in subparagraph (B) open to inspection and examination by any representative of the Commission.

**(2) Rules**

The Commission shall adopt rules governing reporting and recordkeeping for security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants.

**(g) Daily trading records****(1) In general**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall maintain daily trading records of the security-based swaps of the registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant and all related records (including related cash or forward transactions) and recorded communications, including electronic mail, instant messages, and recordings of telephone calls, for such period as may be required by the Commission by rule or regulation.

**(2) Information requirements**

The daily trading records shall include such information as the Commission shall require by rule or regulation.

**(3) Counterparty records**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall maintain daily trading records for each counterparty in a manner and form that is identifiable with each security-based swap transaction.

**(4) Audit trail**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall maintain a complete audit trail for conducting comprehensive and accurate trade reconstructions.

**(5) Rules**

The Commission shall adopt rules governing daily trading records for security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants.

**(h) Business conduct standards**

**(1) In general**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall conform with such business conduct standards as prescribed in paragraph (3) and as may be prescribed by the Commission by rule or regulation that relate to—

- (A) fraud, manipulation, and other abusive practices involving security-based swaps (including security-based swaps that are offered but not entered into);
- (B) diligent supervision of the business of the registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant;
- (C) adherence to all applicable position limits; and
- (D) such other matters as the Commission determines to be appropriate.

**(2) Responsibilities with respect to special entities**

**(A) Advising special entities**

A security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant that acts as an advisor to <sup>1</sup> special entity regarding a security-based swap shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (4) with respect to such special entity.

**(B) Entering of security-based swaps with respect to special entities**

A security-based swap dealer that enters into or offers to enter into <sup>1</sup> security-based swap with a special entity shall comply with the requirements of paragraph (5) with respect to such special entity.

**(C) Special entity defined**

For purposes of this subsection, the term "special entity" means—

- (i) a Federal agency;
- (ii) a State, State agency, city, county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a State or;
- (iii) any employee benefit plan, as defined in section 3 of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1002);
- (iv) any governmental plan, as defined in section 3 of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1002); or
- (v) any endowment, including an endowment that is an organization described in section 501(c)(3) of title 26.

**(3) Business conduct requirements**

Business conduct requirements adopted by the Commission shall—

- (A) establish a duty for a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant to verify that any counterparty meets the eligibility standards for an eligible contract participant;
- (B) require disclosure by the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant to any counterparty to the transaction (other than a security-based swap dealer, major security-based swap participant, security-based swap dealer, or major security-based swap participant) of—
  - (i) information about the material risks and characteristics of the security-based swap;
  - (ii) any material incentives or conflicts of interest that the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant may have in connection with the security-based swap; and
  - (iii)(I) for cleared security-based swaps, upon the request of the counterparty, receipt of the daily mark of the transaction from the appropriate derivatives clearing organization; and

(II) for uncleared security-based swaps, receipt of the daily mark of the transaction from the security-based swap dealer or the major security-based swap participant;

(C) establish a duty for a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant to communicate in a fair and balanced manner based on principles of fair dealing and good faith; and

(D) establish such other standards and requirements as the Commission may determine are appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

#### **(4) Special requirements for security-based swap dealers acting as advisors**

##### **(A) In general**

It shall be unlawful for a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant—

(i) to employ any device, scheme, or artifice to defraud any special entity or prospective customer who is a special entity;

(ii) to engage in any transaction, practice, or course of business that operates as a fraud or deceit on any special entity or prospective customer who is a special entity; or

(iii) to engage in any act, practice, or course of business that is fraudulent, deceptive, or manipulative.

##### **(B) Duty**

Any security-based swap dealer that acts as an advisor to a special entity shall have a duty to act in the best interests of the special entity.

##### **(C) Reasonable efforts**

Any security-based swap dealer that acts as an advisor to a special entity shall make reasonable efforts to obtain such information as is necessary to make a reasonable determination that any security-based swap recommended by the security-based swap dealer is in the best interests of the special entity, including information relating to—

(i) the financial status of the special entity;

(ii) the tax status of the special entity;

(iii) the investment or financing objectives of the special entity; and

(iv) any other information that the Commission may prescribe by rule or regulation.

#### **(5) Special requirements for security-based swap dealers as counterparties to special entities**

##### **(A) In general**

Any security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant that offers to or enters into a security-based swap with a special entity shall—

(i) comply with any duty established by the Commission for a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, with respect to a counterparty that is an eligible contract participant within the meaning of subclause (I) or (II) of clause (vii) of section 1a(18) of the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1a(18)], that requires the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant to have a reasonable basis to believe that the counterparty that is a special entity has an independent representative that—

(I) has sufficient knowledge to evaluate the transaction and risks;

(II) is not subject to a statutory disqualification;

(III) is independent of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant;

(IV) undertakes a duty to act in the best interests of the counterparty it represents;

(V) makes appropriate disclosures;

(VI) will provide written representations to the special entity regarding fair pricing and the appropriateness of the transaction; and

(VII) in the case of employee benefit plans subject to the Employee Retirement Income Security Act <sup>2</sup> of 1974 [29 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.], is a fiduciary as defined in section 3 of that Act (29 U.S.C. 1002); and

(ii) before the initiation of the transaction, disclose to the special entity in writing the capacity in which the security-based swap dealer is acting.

##### **(B) Commission authority**

The Commission may establish such other standards and requirements under this paragraph as the Commission may determine are appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

#### **(6) Rules**

The Commission shall prescribe rules under this subsection governing business conduct standards for security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants.

#### **(7) Applicability**

This subsection shall not apply with respect to a transaction that is—

(A) initiated by a special entity on an exchange or security-based swaps execution facility; and

(B) the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant does not know the identity of the counterparty to the transaction.

**(i) Documentation standards**

**(1) In general**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall conform with such standards as may be prescribed by the Commission, by rule or regulation, that relate to timely and accurate confirmation, processing, netting, documentation, and valuation of all security-based swaps.

**(2) Rules**

The Commission shall adopt rules governing documentation standards for security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants.

**(j) Duties**

Each registered security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall, at all times, comply with the following requirements:

**(1) Monitoring of trading**

The security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall monitor its trading in security-based swaps to prevent violations of applicable position limits.

**(2) Risk management procedures**

The security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall establish robust and professional risk management systems adequate for managing the day-to-day business of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant.

**(3) Disclosure of general information**

The security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall disclose to the Commission and to the prudential regulator for the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, as applicable, information concerning—

- (A) terms and conditions of its security-based swaps;
- (B) security-based swap trading operations, mechanisms, and practices;
- (C) financial integrity protections relating to security-based swaps; and
- (D) other information relevant to its trading in security-based swaps.

**(4) Ability to obtain information**

The security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall—

- (A) establish and enforce internal systems and procedures to obtain any necessary information to perform any of the functions described in this section; and
- (B) provide the information to the Commission and to the prudential regulator for the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, as applicable, on request.

**(5) Conflicts of interest**

The security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall implement conflict-of-interest systems and procedures that—

- (A) establish structural and institutional safeguards to ensure that the activities of any person within the firm relating to research or analysis of the price or market for any security-based swap or acting in a role of providing clearing activities or making determinations as to accepting clearing customers are separated by appropriate informational partitions within the firm from the review, pressure, or oversight of persons whose involvement in pricing, trading, or clearing activities might potentially bias their judgment or supervision and contravene the core principles of open access and the business conduct standards described in this chapter; and
- (B) address such other issues as the Commission determines to be appropriate.

**(6) Antitrust considerations**

Unless necessary or appropriate to achieve the purposes of this chapter, the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant shall not—

- (A) adopt any process or take any action that results in any unreasonable restraint of trade; or
- (B) impose any material anticompetitive burden on trading or clearing.

**(7) Rules**

The Commission shall prescribe rules under this subsection governing duties of security-based swap dealers and major security-based swap participants.

**(k) Designation of chief compliance officer**

**(1) In general**

Each security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant shall designate an individual to serve as a chief compliance officer.

**(2) Duties**

The chief compliance officer shall—

(A) report directly to the board or to the senior officer of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant;

(B) review the compliance of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant with respect to the security-based swap dealer and major security-based swap participant requirements described in this section;

(C) in consultation with the board of directors, a body performing a function similar to the board, or the senior officer of the organization, resolve any conflicts of interest that may arise;

(D) be responsible for administering each policy and procedure that is required to be established pursuant to this section;

(E) ensure compliance with this chapter (including regulations) relating to security-based swaps, including each rule prescribed by the Commission under this section;

(F) establish procedures for the remediation of noncompliance issues identified by the chief compliance officer through any—

- (i) compliance office review;
- (ii) look-back;
- (iii) internal or external audit finding;
- (iv) self-reported error; or
- (v) validated complaint; and

(G) establish and follow appropriate procedures for the handling, management response, remediation, retesting, and closing of noncompliance issues.

**(3) Annual reports****(A) In general**

In accordance with rules prescribed by the Commission, the chief compliance officer shall annually prepare and sign a report that contains a description of—

- (i) the compliance of the security-based swap dealer or major swap participant with respect to this chapter (including regulations); and
- (ii) each policy and procedure of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant of the chief compliance officer (including the code of ethics and conflict of interest policies).

**(B) Requirements**

A compliance report under subparagraph (A) shall—

- (i) accompany each appropriate financial report of the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant that is required to be furnished to the Commission pursuant to this section; and
- (ii) include a certification that, under penalty of law, the compliance report is accurate and complete.

**(I) Enforcement and administrative proceeding authority****(1) Primary enforcement authority****(A) Securities and Exchange Commission**

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), (C), or (D), the Commission shall have primary authority to enforce subtitle B, and the amendments made by subtitle B of the Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010, with respect to any person.

**(B) Prudential regulators**

The prudential regulators shall have exclusive authority to enforce the provisions of subsection (e) and other prudential requirements of this chapter (including risk management standards), with respect to security-based swap dealers or major security-based swap participants for which they are the prudential regulator.

**(C) Referral****(i) Violations of nonprudential requirements**

If the appropriate Federal banking agency for security-based swap dealers or major security-based swap participants that are depository institutions has cause to believe that such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant may have engaged in conduct that constitutes a violation of the nonprudential requirements of this section or rules adopted by the Commission thereunder, the agency may recommend in writing to the Commission that the Commission initiate an enforcement proceeding as authorized under this chapter. The recommendation shall be accompanied by a written explanation of the concerns giving rise to the recommendation.

**(ii) Violations of prudential requirements**

If the Commission has cause to believe that a securities-based swap dealer or major securities-based swap participant that has a prudential regulator may have engaged in conduct that constitute <sup>3</sup> a violation of the

prudential requirements of subsection (e) or rules adopted thereunder, the Commission may recommend in writing to the prudential regulator that the prudential regulator initiate an enforcement proceeding as authorized under this chapter. The recommendation shall be accompanied by a written explanation of the concerns giving rise to the recommendation.

#### **(D) Backstop enforcement authority**

##### **(i) Initiation of enforcement proceeding by prudential regulator**

If the Commission does not initiate an enforcement proceeding before the end of the 90-day period beginning on the date on which the Commission receives a written report under subsection <sup>4</sup> (C)(i), the prudential regulator may initiate an enforcement proceeding.

##### **(ii) Initiation of enforcement proceeding by Commission**

If the prudential regulator does not initiate an enforcement proceeding before the end of the 90-day period beginning on the date on which the prudential regulator receives a written report under subsection <sup>4</sup> (C)(ii), the Commission may initiate an enforcement proceeding.

#### **(2) Censure, denial, suspension; notice and hearing**

The Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, or revoke the registration of any security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant that has registered with the Commission pursuant to subsection (b) if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, or revocation is in the public interest and that such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, or any person associated with such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant effecting or involved in effecting transactions in security-based swaps on behalf of such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated—

(A) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), or (E) of paragraph (4) of section 78o(b) of this title;

(B) has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this subsection;

(C) is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4);

(D) is subject to an order or a final order specified in subparagraph (F) or (H), respectively, of such paragraph (4); or

(E) has been found by a foreign financial regulatory authority to have committed or omitted any act, or violated any foreign statute or regulation, enumerated in subparagraph (G) of such paragraph (4).

#### **(3) Associated persons**

With respect to any person who is associated, who is seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, who was associated or was seeking to become associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant for the purpose of effecting or being involved in effecting security-based swaps on behalf of such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, the Commission, by order, shall censure, place limitations on the activities or functions of such person, or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or bar such person from being associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for a hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person—

(A) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), or (E) of paragraph (4) of section 78o(b) of this title;

(B) has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within 10 years of the commencement of the proceedings under this subsection;

(C) is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4);

(D) is subject to an order or a final order specified in subparagraph (F) or (H), respectively, of such paragraph (4); or

(E) has been found by a foreign financial regulatory authority to have committed or omitted any act, or violated any foreign statute or regulation, enumerated in subparagraph (G) of such paragraph (4).

#### **(4) Unlawful conduct**

It shall be unlawful—

(A) for any person as to whom an order under paragraph (3) is in effect, without the consent of the Commission, willfully to become, or to be, associated with a security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant in contravention of such order; or

(B) for any security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant to permit such a person, without the consent of the Commission, to become or remain a person associated with the security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant in contravention of such order, if such security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §15F, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §764(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1784; amended Pub. L. 114–1, title III, §302(b), Jan. 12, 2015, 129 Stat. 28.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (e)(3)(B)(ii), (j)(5)(A), (6), (k)(2)(E), (3)(A)(i), and (l)(1)(B), (C), was in the original "this title", and this chapter, referred to in subsec. (h)(3)(D), (5)(B), was in the original "this Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsec. (e)(3)(B)(ii), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, referred to in subsec. (h)(5)(A)(i)(VII), is Pub. L. 93–406, Sept. 2, 1974, 88 Stat. 829, which is classified principally to chapter 18 (§1001 et seq.) of Title 29, Labor. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 29 and Tables.

Subtitle B of the Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010, referred to in subsec. (l)(1)(A), is subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1754, which enacted this section and subchapter II (§8341 et seq.) of chapter 109 and sections 78c–3 to 78c–5, 78j–2, and 78m–1 of this title, amended sections 77b, 77b–1, 77e, 77q, 78c, 78c–1, 78f, 78i, 78j, 78m, 78o, 78p, 78q–1, 78t, 78u–1, 78u–2, 78bb, 78dd, 78mm, 80a–2, and 80b–2 of this title, enacted provisions set out as a note under section 77b of this title, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 78c of this title. For complete classification of subtitle B to the Code, see Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

**2015**—Subsec. (e)(4). Pub. L. 114–1 added par. (4).

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note under section 77b of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be followed by "a".

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

<sup>3</sup> So in original. Probably should be "constitutes".

<sup>4</sup> So in original. Probably should be "subparagraph".

## §78o–11. Credit risk retention

### (a) Definitions

In this section—

(1) the term "Federal banking agencies" means the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(2) the term "insured depository institution" has the same meaning as in section 1813(c) of title 12;

(3) the term "securitizer" means—

(A) an issuer of an asset-backed security; or

(B) a person who organizes and initiates an asset-backed securities transaction by selling or transferring assets, either directly or indirectly, including through an affiliate, to the issuer; and

(4) the term "originator" means a person who—

(A) through the extension of credit or otherwise, creates a financial asset that collateralizes an asset-backed security; and

(B) sells an asset directly or indirectly to a securitizer.

### (b) Regulations required

#### (1) In general

Not later than 270 days after July 21, 2010, the Federal banking agencies and the Commission shall jointly prescribe regulations to require any securitizer to retain an economic interest in a portion of the credit risk for any

asset that the securitizer, through the issuance of an asset-backed security, transfers, sells, or conveys to a third party.

## (2) Residential mortgages

Not later than 270 days after July 21, 2010, the Federal banking agencies, the Commission, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Federal Housing Finance Agency, shall jointly prescribe regulations to require any securitizer to retain an economic interest in a portion of the credit risk for any residential mortgage asset that the securitizer, through the issuance of an asset-backed security, transfers, sells, or conveys to a third party.

## (c) Standards for regulations

### (1) Standards

The regulations prescribed under subsection (b) shall—

(A) prohibit a securitizer from directly or indirectly hedging or otherwise transferring the credit risk that the securitizer is required to retain with respect to an asset;

(B) require a securitizer to retain—

(i) not less than 5 percent of the credit risk for any asset—

(I) that is not a qualified residential mortgage that is transferred, sold, or conveyed through the issuance of an asset-backed security by the securitizer; or

(II) that is a qualified residential mortgage that is transferred, sold, or conveyed through the issuance of an asset-backed security by the securitizer, if 1 or more of the assets that collateralize the asset-backed security are not qualified residential mortgages; or

(ii) less than 5 percent of the credit risk for an asset that is not a qualified residential mortgage that is transferred, sold, or conveyed through the issuance of an asset-backed security by the securitizer, if the originator of the asset meets the underwriting standards prescribed under paragraph (2)(B);

(C) specify—

(i) the permissible forms of risk retention for purposes of this section;

(ii) the minimum duration of the risk retention required under this section; and

(iii) that a securitizer is not required to retain any part of the credit risk for an asset that is transferred, sold or conveyed through the issuance of an asset-backed security by the securitizer, if all of the assets that collateralize the asset-backed security are qualified residential mortgages;

(D) apply, regardless of whether the securitizer is an insured depository institution;

(E) with respect to a commercial mortgage, specify the permissible types, forms, and amounts of risk retention that would meet the requirements of subparagraph (B), which in the determination of the Federal banking agencies and the Commission may include—

(i) retention of a specified amount or percentage of the total credit risk of the asset;

(ii) retention of the first-loss position by a third-party purchaser that specifically negotiates for the purchase of such first loss position, holds adequate financial resources to back losses, provides due diligence on all individual assets in the pool before the issuance of the asset-backed securities, and meets the same standards for risk retention as the Federal banking agencies and the Commission require of the securitizer;

(iii) a determination by the Federal banking agencies and the Commission that the underwriting standards and controls for the asset are adequate; and

(iv) provision of adequate representations and warranties and related enforcement mechanisms; and <sup>1</sup>

(F) establish appropriate standards for retention of an economic interest with respect to collateralized debt obligations, securities collateralized by collateralized debt obligations, and similar instruments collateralized by other asset-backed securities; and

(G) provide for—

(i) a total or partial exemption of any securitization, as may be appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors;

(ii) a total or partial exemption for the securitization of an asset issued or guaranteed by the United States, or an agency of the United States, as the Federal banking agencies and the Commission jointly determine appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, except that, for purposes of this clause, the Federal National Mortgage Association and the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation are not agencies of the United States;

(iii) a total or partial exemption for any asset-backed security that is a security issued or guaranteed by any State of the United States, or by any political subdivision of a State or territory, or by any public instrumentality of a State or territory that is exempt from the registration requirements of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] by reason of section 3(a)(2) of that Act (15 U.S.C. 77c(a)(2)), or a security defined as a qualified scholarship funding bond in section 150(d)(2) of title 26, as may be appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors; and

(iv) the allocation of risk retention obligations between a securitizer and an originator in the case of a securitizer that purchases assets from an originator, as the Federal banking agencies and the Commission jointly determine appropriate.

## **(2) Asset classes**

### **(A) Asset classes**

The regulations prescribed under subsection (b) shall establish asset classes with separate rules for securitizers of different classes of assets, including residential mortgages, commercial mortgages, commercial loans, auto loans, and any other class of assets that the Federal banking agencies and the Commission deem appropriate.

### **(B) Contents**

For each asset class established under subparagraph (A), the regulations prescribed under subsection (b) shall include underwriting standards established by the Federal banking agencies that specify the terms, conditions, and characteristics of a loan within the asset class that indicate a low credit risk with respect to the loan.

## **(d) Originators**

In determining how to allocate risk retention obligations between a securitizer and an originator under subsection (c)(1)(E)(iv), the Federal banking agencies and the Commission shall—

(1) reduce the percentage of risk retention obligations required of the securitizer by the percentage of risk retention obligations required of the originator; and

(2) consider—

(A) whether the assets sold to the securitizer have terms, conditions, and characteristics that reflect low credit risk;

(B) whether the form or volume of transactions in securitization markets creates incentives for imprudent origination of the type of loan or asset to be sold to the securitizer; and

(C) the potential impact of the risk retention obligations on the access of consumers and businesses to credit on reasonable terms, which may not include the transfer of credit risk to a third party.

## **(e) Exemptions, exceptions, and adjustments**

### **(1) In general**

The Federal banking agencies and the Commission may jointly adopt or issue exemptions, exceptions, or adjustments to the rules issued under this section, including exemptions, exceptions, or adjustments for classes of institutions or assets relating to the risk retention requirement and the prohibition on hedging under subsection (c)(1).

### **(2) Applicable standards**

Any exemption, exception, or adjustment adopted or issued by the Federal banking agencies and the Commission under this paragraph shall—

(A) help ensure high quality underwriting standards for the securitizers and originators of assets that are securitized or available for securitization; and

(B) encourage appropriate risk management practices by the securitizers and originators of assets, improve the access of consumers and businesses to credit on reasonable terms, or otherwise be in the public interest and for the protection of investors.

### **(3) Certain institutions and programs exempt**

#### **(A) Farm credit system institutions**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, the requirements of this section shall not apply to any loan or other financial asset made, insured, guaranteed, or purchased by any institution that is subject to the supervision of the Farm Credit Administration, including the Federal Agricultural Mortgage Corporation.

#### **(B) Other Federal programs**

This section shall not apply to any residential, multifamily, or health care facility mortgage loan asset, or securitization based directly or indirectly on such an asset, which is insured or guaranteed by the United States or an agency of the United States. For purposes of this subsection, the Federal National Mortgage Association, the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, and the Federal home loan banks shall not be considered an agency of the United States.

### **(4) Exemption for qualified residential mortgages**

#### **(A) In general**

The Federal banking agencies, the Commission, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Director of the Federal Housing Finance Agency shall jointly issue regulations to exempt qualified residential mortgages from the risk retention requirements of this subsection.

#### **(B) Qualified residential mortgage**

The Federal banking agencies, the Commission, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Director of the Federal Housing Finance Agency shall jointly define the term "qualified residential mortgage" for

purposes of this subsection, taking into consideration underwriting and product features that historical loan performance data indicate result in a lower risk of default, such as—

- (i) documentation and verification of the financial resources relied upon to qualify the mortgagor;
- (ii) standards with respect to—
  - (I) the residual income of the mortgagor after all monthly obligations;
  - (II) the ratio of the housing payments of the mortgagor to the monthly income of the mortgagor;
  - (III) the ratio of total monthly installment payments of the mortgagor to the income of the mortgagor;

- (iii) mitigating the potential for payment shock on adjustable rate mortgages through product features and underwriting standards;

- (iv) mortgage guarantee insurance or other types of insurance or credit enhancement obtained at the time of origination, to the extent such insurance or credit enhancement reduces the risk of default; and

- (v) prohibiting or restricting the use of balloon payments, negative amortization, prepayment penalties, interest-only payments, and other features that have been demonstrated to exhibit a higher risk of borrower default.

### **(C) Limitation on definition**

The Federal banking agencies, the Commission, the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, and the Director of the Federal Housing Finance Agency in defining the term "qualified residential mortgage", as required by subparagraph (B), shall define that term to be no broader than the definition "qualified mortgage" as the term is defined under section 129C(c)(2) of the Truth in Lending Act, as amended by the Consumer Financial Protection Act of 2010,<sup>2</sup> and regulations adopted thereunder.

### **(5) Condition for qualified residential mortgage exemption**

The regulations issued under paragraph (4) shall provide that an asset-backed security that is collateralized by tranches of other asset-backed securities shall not be exempt from the risk retention requirements of this subsection.

### **(6) Certification**

The Commission shall require an issuer to certify, for each issuance of an asset-backed security collateralized exclusively by qualified residential mortgages, that the issuer has evaluated the effectiveness of the internal supervisory controls of the issuer with respect to the process for ensuring that all assets that collateralize the asset-backed security are qualified residential mortgages.

### **(f) Enforcement**

The regulations issued under this section shall be enforced by—

- (1) the appropriate Federal banking agency, with respect to any securitizer that is an insured depository institution; and
- (2) the Commission, with respect to any securitizer that is not an insured depository institution.

### **(g) Authority of Commission**

The authority of the Commission under this section shall be in addition to the authority of the Commission to otherwise enforce the securities laws.

### **(h) Authority to coordinate on rulemaking**

The Chairperson of the Financial Stability Oversight Council shall coordinate all joint rulemaking required under this section.

### **(i) Effective date of regulations**

The regulations issued under this section shall become effective—

- (1) with respect to securitizers and originators of asset-backed securities backed by residential mortgages, 1 year after the date on which final rules under this section are published in the Federal Register; and
- (2) with respect to securitizers and originators of all other classes of asset-backed securities, 2 years after the date on which final rules under this section are published in the Federal Register.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §15G, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §941(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1891.)

## **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (c)(1)(G)(iii), is title I of act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

Section 129C(c)(2) of the Truth in Lending Act, as amended by the Consumer Financial Protection Act of 2010, referred to in subsec. (e)(4)(C), probably means section 129C(b)(2) of Pub. L. 90–321, as amended by title X of Pub. L. 111–203, which defines "qualified mortgage" and is classified to section 1639c(b)(2) of this title.

## **EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. The word "and" probably should not appear.

<sup>2</sup> See References in Text note below.

## **§78p. Directors, officers, and principal stockholders**

### **(a) Disclosures required**

#### **(1) Directors, officers, and principal stockholders required to file**

Every person who is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 10 percent of any class of any equity security (other than an exempted security) which is registered pursuant to section 78l of this title, or who is a director or an officer of the issuer of such security, shall file the statements required by this subsection with the Commission.

#### **(2) Time of filing**

The statements required by this subsection shall be filed—

(A) at the time of the registration of such security on a national securities exchange or by the effective date of a registration statement filed pursuant to section 78l(g) of this title;

(B) within 10 days after he or she becomes such beneficial owner, director, or officer, or within such shorter time as the Commission may establish by rule;

(C) if there has been a change in such ownership, or if such person shall have purchased or sold a security-based swap agreement involving such equity security, before the end of the second business day following the day on which the subject transaction has been executed, or at such other time as the Commission shall establish, by rule, in any case in which the Commission determines that such 2-day period is not feasible.

#### **(3) Contents of statements**

A statement filed—

(A) under subparagraph (A) or (B) of paragraph (2) shall contain a statement of the amount of all equity securities of such issuer of which the filing person is the beneficial owner; and

(B) under subparagraph (C) of such paragraph shall indicate ownership by the filing person at the date of filing, any such changes in such ownership, and such purchases and sales of the security-based swap agreements or security-based swaps as have occurred since the most recent such filing under such subparagraph.

#### **(4) Electronic filing and availability**

Beginning not later than 1 year after July 30, 2002—

(A) a statement filed under subparagraph (C) of paragraph (2) shall be filed electronically;

(B) the Commission shall provide each such statement on a publicly accessible Internet site not later than the end of the business day following that filing; and

(C) the issuer (if the issuer maintains a corporate website) shall provide that statement on that corporate website, not later than the end of the business day following that filing.

### **(b) Profits from purchase and sale of security within six months**

For the purpose of preventing the unfair use of information which may have been obtained by such beneficial owner, director, or officer by reason of his relationship to the issuer, any profit realized by him from any purchase and sale, or any sale and purchase, of any equity security of such issuer (other than an exempted security) or a security-based swap agreement involving any such equity security within any period of less than six months, unless such security or security-based swap agreement was acquired in good faith in connection with a debt previously contracted, shall inure to and be recoverable by the issuer, irrespective of any intention on the part of such beneficial owner, director, or officer in entering into such transaction of holding the security or security-based swap agreement purchased or of not repurchasing the security or security-based swap agreement sold for a period exceeding six months. Suit to recover such profit may be instituted at law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction by the issuer, or by the owner of any security of the issuer in the name and in behalf of the issuer if the issuer shall fail or refuse to bring such suit within sixty days after request or shall fail diligently to prosecute the same thereafter; but no such suit shall be brought more than two years after the date such profit was realized. This subsection shall not be construed to cover any transaction where such beneficial owner was not such both at the time of the purchase and sale, or the sale and purchase, of the security or security-based swap agreement or a security-based swap involved, or any transaction or transactions which the Commission by rules and regulations may exempt as not comprehended within the purpose of this subsection.

### **(c) Conditions for sale of security by beneficial owner, director, or officer**

It shall be unlawful for any such beneficial owner, director, or officer, directly or indirectly, to sell any equity security of such issuer (other than an exempted security), if the person selling the security or his principal (1) does not own the security sold, or (2) if owning the security, does not deliver it against such sale within twenty days thereafter, or does not within five days after such sale deposit it in the mails or other usual channels of transportation; but no person shall

be deemed to have violated this subsection if he proves that notwithstanding the exercise of good faith he was unable to make such delivery or deposit within such time, or that to do so would cause undue inconvenience or expense.

**(d) Securities held in investment account, transactions in ordinary course of business, and establishment of primary or secondary market**

The provisions of subsection (b) of this section shall not apply to any purchase and sale, or sale and purchase, and the provisions of subsection (c) of this section shall not apply to any sale, of an equity security not then or theretofore held by him in an investment account, by a dealer in the ordinary course of his business and incident to the establishment or maintenance by him of a primary or secondary market (otherwise than on a national securities exchange or an exchange exempted from registration under section 78e of this title) for such security. The Commission may, by such rules and regulations as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, define and prescribe terms and conditions with respect to securities held in an investment account and transactions made in the ordinary course of business and incident to the establishment or maintenance of a primary or secondary market.

**(e) Application of section to foreign or domestic arbitrage transactions**

The provisions of this section shall not apply to foreign or domestic arbitrage transactions unless made in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may adopt in order to carry out the purposes of this section.

**(f) Treatment of transactions in security futures products**

The provisions of this section shall apply to ownership of and transactions in security futures products.

**(g) Limitation on Commission authority**

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c-1(b) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §16, 48 Stat. 896; Pub. L. 88-467, §8, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 579; Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §208(b)(3), title III, §303(g), (h)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-435, 2763A-455, 2763A-456; Pub. L. 107-204, title IV, §403(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 788; Pub. L. 111-203, title VII, §762(d)(5), title IX, §929R(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1761, 1867.)

**AMENDMENT OF SECTION**

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761-774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111-203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

**AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §929R(b)(1), struck out "(and, if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, also with the exchange)" after "Commission".

Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 111-203, §929R(b)(2), inserted ", or within such shorter time as the Commission may establish by rule" after "officer".

Subsec. (a)(2)(C). Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(5)(A), struck out "(as defined in section 206(b) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (15 U.S.C. 78c note))" after "security-based swap agreement".

Subsec. (a)(3)(B). Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(5)(B), which directed amendment of subpar. (B) by inserting "or security-based swaps" after "security-based swap agreement", was executed by making the insertion after "security-based swap agreements", to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(5)(D), which directed amendment of subsec. (b) by substituting "or a security-based swap" for "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach Bliley Act)" in third sentence, was executed by making the substitution for "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" in third sentence, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(5)(C), struck out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "security-based swap agreement" in first sentence.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111-203, §762(d)(5)(E), struck out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "security-based swap agreements".

**2002**—Pub. L. 107-204 reenacted section catchline without change, added heading and text of subsec. (a), and struck out former subsec. (a) which read as follows: "Every person who is directly or indirectly the beneficial owner of more than 10 per centum of any class of any equity security (other than an exempted security) which is registered pursuant to section 78l of this title, or who is a director or an officer of the issuer of such security, shall file, at the time of the registration of such security on a national securities exchange or by the effective date of a registration statement filed pursuant to section 78l(g) of this title, or within ten days after he becomes such beneficial owner, director, or officer, a statement with the Commission (and, if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, also with the exchange) of the amount of all equity securities of such issuer of which he is the beneficial owner, and within ten days after the close of each calendar month thereafter, if there has been a change in such ownership or if such person shall

have purchased or sold a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving such equity security during such month, shall file with the Commission (and if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, shall also file with the exchange), a statement indicating his ownership at the close of the calendar month and such changes in his ownership and such purchases and sales of such security-based swap agreements as have occurred during such calendar month."

**2000**—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(g)], amended subsecs. (a) and (b) generally, revising provisions to extend application to security-based swap agreements.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §208(b)(3)], added subsec. (f).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(h)], added subsec. (g).

**1964**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 88–467, §8(a), substituted "registered pursuant to section 78l of this title" for "registered on a national securities exchange", "Commission (and, if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, also with the exchange)" for "exchange (and a duplicate original thereof with the Commission)", "a change" for "any change", and "Commission (and if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, shall also file with the exchange) a statement" for "exchange a statement (and a duplicate original thereof with the Commission)", and inserted "on a national securities exchange or by the effective date of a registration statement filed pursuant to section 78l(g) of this title" after "registration of such security".

Subsecs. (d), (e). Pub. L. 88–467, §8(b), added subsec. (d) and redesignated former subsec. (d) as (e).

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 929R(b) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 762(d)(5) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–204, title IV, §403(b), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 789, provided that: "The amendment made by this section [amending this section] shall be effective 30 days after the date of the enactment of this Act [July 30, 2002]."

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## §78q. Records and reports

### (a) Rules and regulations

(1) Every national securities exchange, member thereof, broker or dealer who transacts a business in securities through the medium of any such member, registered securities association, registered broker or dealer, registered municipal securities dealer municipal advisor,<sup>1</sup> registered securities information processor, registered transfer agent, nationally recognized statistical rating organization, and registered clearing agency and the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board shall make and keep for prescribed periods such records, furnish such copies thereof, and make and disseminate such reports as the Commission, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. Any report that a nationally recognized statistical rating organization is required by Commission rules under this paragraph to make and disseminate to the Commission shall be deemed furnished to the Commission.

(2) Every registered clearing agency shall also make and keep for prescribed periods such records, furnish such copies thereof, and make and disseminate such reports, as the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate for the safeguarding of securities and funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible.

(3) Every registered transfer agent shall also make and keep for prescribed periods such records, furnish such copies thereof, and make such reports as the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of section 78q-1 of this title.

**(b) Records subject to examination**

**(1) Procedures for cooperation with other agencies**

All records of persons described in subsection (a) of this section are subject at any time, or from time to time, to such reasonable periodic, special, or other examinations by representatives of the Commission and the appropriate regulatory agency for such persons as the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency for such persons deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter: *Provided, however,* That the Commission shall, prior to conducting any such examination of a—

(A) registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or registered municipal securities dealer for which it is not the appropriate regulatory agency, give notice to the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer of such proposed examination and consult with such appropriate regulatory agency concerning the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such examination with examinations conducted by such appropriate regulatory agency with a view to avoiding unnecessary regulatory duplication or undue regulatory burdens for such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer; or

(B) broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o(b)(11) of this title, exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title, give notice to the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of such proposed examination and consults <sup>2</sup> with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission concerning the feasibility and desirability of coordinating such examination with examinations conducted by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission in order to avoid unnecessary regulatory duplication or undue regulatory burdens for such broker or dealer or exchange.

**(2) Furnishing data and reports to CFTC**

The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination conducted of any broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o(b)(11) of this title, exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title and, upon request, furnish to the Commodity Futures Trading Commission any examination report and data supplied to, or prepared by, the Commission in connection with such examination.

**(3) Use of CFTC reports**

Prior to conducting an examination under paragraph (1), the Commission shall use the reports of examinations, if the information available therein is sufficient for the purposes of the examination, of—

(A) any broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o(b)(11) of this title;

(B) exchange <sup>3</sup> registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title; or

(C) national <sup>4</sup> securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title;

that is made by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title, or an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title.

**(4) Rules of construction**

(A) Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, the records of a broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o(b)(11) of this title, an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title described in this subparagraph shall not be subject to routine periodic examinations by the Commission.

(B) Any recordkeeping rules adopted under this subsection for a broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o(b)(11) of this title, an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title shall be limited to records with respect to persons, accounts, agreements, contracts, and transactions involving security futures products.

(C) Nothing in the proviso in paragraph (1) shall be construed to impair or limit (other than by the requirement of prior consultation) the power of the Commission under this subsection to examine any clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer or to affect in any way the power of the Commission under any other provision of this chapter or otherwise to inspect, examine, or investigate any such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer.

**(c) Copies of reports filed with other regulatory agencies**

(1) Every clearing agency, transfer agent, and municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall (A) file with the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer a copy of any application, notice, proposal, report, or document filed with the Commission by reason of its being a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer and (B) file with the Commission a copy of any application, notice, proposal, report, or document filed with such appropriate regulatory agency by reason of its being a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer. The Municipal

Securities Rulemaking Board shall file with each agency enumerated in section 78c(a)(34)(A) of this title copies of every proposed rule change filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title.

(2) The appropriate regulatory agency for a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall file with the Commission notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by such appropriate regulatory agency against any clearing agency, transfer agent, municipal securities dealer, or person associated with a transfer agent or municipal securities dealer, and the Commission shall file with such appropriate regulatory agency, if any, notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the Commission against the clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, or against any person associated with a transfer agent or municipal securities dealer for which the agency is the appropriate regulatory agency.

(3) The Commission and the appropriate regulatory agency for a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall each notify the other and make a report of any examination conducted by it of such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, and, upon request, furnish to the other a copy of such report and any data supplied to it in connection with such examination.

(4) The Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may specify that documents required to be filed pursuant to this subsection with the Commission or such agency, respectively, may be retained by the originating clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, or filed with another appropriate regulatory agency. The Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency (as the case may be) making such a specification shall continue to have access to the document on request.

#### **(d) Self-regulatory organizations**

(1) The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, to foster cooperation and coordination among self-regulatory organizations, or to remove impediments to and foster the development of a national market system and national system for the clearance and settlement of securities transactions, may—

(A) with respect to any person who is a member of or participant in more than one self-regulatory organization, relieve any such self-regulatory organization of any responsibility under this chapter (i) to receive regulatory reports from such person, (ii) to examine such person for compliance, or to enforce compliance by such person, with specified provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules, or (iii) to carry out other specified regulatory functions with respect to such person, and

(B) allocate among self-regulatory organizations the authority to adopt rules with respect to matters as to which, in the absence of such allocation, such self-regulatory organizations share authority under this chapter.

In making any such rule or entering any such order, the Commission shall take into consideration the regulatory capabilities and procedures of the self-regulatory organizations, availability of staff, convenience of location, unnecessary regulatory duplication, and such other factors as the Commission may consider germane to the protection of investors, cooperation and coordination among self-regulatory organizations, and the development of a national market system and a national system for the clearance and settlement of securities transactions. The Commission, by rule or order, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors, may require any self-regulatory organization relieved of any responsibility pursuant to this paragraph, and any person with respect to whom such responsibility relates, to take such steps as are specified in any such rule or order to notify customers of, and persons doing business with, such person of the limited nature of such self-regulatory organization's responsibility for such person's acts, practices, and course of business.

(2) A self-regulatory organization shall furnish copies of any report of examination of any person who is a member of or a participant in such self-regulatory organization to any other self-regulatory organization of which such person is a member or in which such person is a participant upon the request of such person, such other self-regulatory organization, or the Commission.

#### **(e) Balance sheet and income statement; other financial statements and information**

(1)(A) Every registered broker or dealer shall annually file with the Commission a balance sheet and income statement certified by a <sup>5</sup> independent public accounting firm, or by a registered public accounting firm if the firm is required to be registered under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002,<sup>1</sup> prepared on a calendar or fiscal year basis, and such other financial statements (which shall, as the Commission specifies, be certified) and information concerning its financial condition as the Commission, by rule may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) Every registered broker and dealer shall annually send to its customers its certified balance sheet and such other financial statements and information concerning its financial condition as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe pursuant to subsection (a) of this section.

(C) The Commission, by rule or order, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any registered broker or dealer, or class of such brokers or dealers, from any provision of this paragraph if the Commission determines that such exemption is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors.

(2) The Commission, by rule, as it deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may prescribe the form and content of financial statements filed pursuant to this chapter and the accounting principles and accounting standards used in their preparation.

**(f) Missing, lost, counterfeit, and stolen securities**

(1) Every national securities exchange, member thereof, registered securities association, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, registered transfer agent, registered clearing agency, participant therein, member of the Federal Reserve System, and bank whose deposits are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation shall—

(A) report to the Commission or other person designated by the Commission and, in the case of securities issued pursuant to chapter 31 of title 31, to the Secretary of the Treasury such information about securities that are missing, lost, counterfeit, stolen, or cancelled, in such form and within such time as the Commission, by rule, determines is necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors; such information shall be available on request for a reasonable fee, to any such exchange, member, association, broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, transfer agent, clearing agency, participant, member of the Federal Reserve System, or insured bank, and such other persons as the Commission, by rule, designates; and

(B) make such inquiry with respect to information reported pursuant to this subsection as the Commission, by rule, prescribes as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, to determine whether securities in their custody or control, for which they are responsible, or in which they are effecting, clearing, or settling a transaction have been reported as missing, lost, counterfeit, stolen, cancelled, or reported in such other manner as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe.

(2) Every member of a national securities exchange, broker, dealer, registered transfer agent, registered clearing agency, registered securities information processor, national securities exchange, and national securities association shall require that each of its partners, directors, officers, and employees be fingerprinted and shall submit such fingerprints, or cause the same to be submitted, to the Attorney General of the United States for identification and appropriate processing. The Commission, by rule, may exempt from the provisions of this paragraph upon specified terms, conditions, and periods, any class of partners, directors, officers, or employees of any such member, broker, dealer, transfer agent, clearing agency, securities information processor, national securities exchange, or national securities association, if the Commission finds that such action is not inconsistent with the public interest or the protection of investors. Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in providing identification and processing functions, the Attorney General shall provide the Commission and self-regulatory organizations designated by the Commission with access to all criminal history record information.

(3)(A) In order to carry out the authority under paragraph (1) above, the Commission or its designee may enter into agreement with the Attorney General to use the facilities of the National Crime Information Center ("NCIC") to receive, store, and disseminate information in regard to missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities and to permit direct inquiry access to NCIC's file on such securities for the financial community.

(B) In order to carry out the authority under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Commission or its designee and the Secretary of the Treasury shall enter into an agreement whereby the Commission or its designee will receive, store, and disseminate information in the possession, and which comes into the possession, of the Department of the Treasury in regard to missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities.

(4) In regard to paragraphs (1), (2), and (3), above insofar as such paragraphs apply to any bank or member of the Federal Reserve System, the Commission may delegate its authority to:

(A) the Comptroller of the Currency as to national banks;

(B) the Federal Reserve Board in regard to any member of the Federal Reserve System which is not a national bank; and

(C) the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation for any State bank which is insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation but which is not a member of the Federal Reserve System.

(5) The Commission shall encourage the insurance industry to require their insured to report expeditiously instances of missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities to the Commission or to such other person as the Commission may, by rule, designate to receive such information.

**(g) Persons extending credit**

Any broker, dealer, or other person extending credit who is subject to the rules and regulations prescribed by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System pursuant to this chapter shall make such reports to the Board as it may require as necessary or appropriate to enable it to perform the functions conferred upon it by this chapter. If any such broker, dealer, or other person shall fail to make any such report or fail to furnish full information therein, or, if in the judgment of the Board it is otherwise necessary, such broker, dealer, or other person shall permit such inspections to be made by the Board with respect to the business operations of such broker, dealer, or other person as the Board may deem necessary to enable it to obtain the required information.

**(h) Risk assessment for holding company systems****(1) Obligations to obtain, maintain, and report information**

Every person who is (A) a registered broker or dealer, or (B) a registered municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, shall obtain such information and make and keep such records as the Commission by rule prescribes concerning the registered person's policies, procedures, or systems for

monitoring and controlling financial and operational risks to it resulting from the activities of any of its associated persons, other than a natural person. Such records shall describe, in the aggregate, each of the financial and securities activities conducted by, and the customary sources of capital and funding of, those of its associated persons whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person, including its net capital, its liquidity, or its ability to conduct or finance its operations. The Commission, by rule, may require summary reports of such information to be filed with the Commission no more frequently than quarterly.

**(2) Authority to require additional information**

If, as a result of adverse market conditions or based on reports provided to the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection or other available information, the Commission reasonably concludes that it has concerns regarding the financial or operational condition of (A) any registered broker or dealer, or (B) any registered municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission may require the registered person to make reports concerning the financial and securities activities of any of such person's associated persons, other than a natural person, whose business activities are reasonably likely to have a material impact on the financial or operational condition of such registered person. The Commission, in requiring reports pursuant to this paragraph, shall specify the information required, the period for which it is required, the time and date on which the information must be furnished, and whether the information is to be furnished directly to the Commission or to a self-regulatory organization with primary responsibility for examining the registered person's financial and operational condition.

**(3) Special provisions with respect to associated persons subject to Federal banking agency regulation**

**(A) Cooperation in implementation**

In developing and implementing reporting requirements pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection with respect to associated persons subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of each such Federal banking agency. If a Federal banking agency comments in writing on a proposed rule of the Commission under this subsection that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before adopting the proposed rule. The Commission shall, at the request of the Federal banking agency, publish such comment and response in the Federal Register at the time of publishing the adopted rule.

**(B) Use of banking agency reports**

A registered broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer shall be in compliance with any recordkeeping or reporting requirement adopted pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection concerning an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency if such broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer utilizes for such recordkeeping or reporting requirement copies of reports filed by the associated person with the Federal banking agency pursuant to section 161 of title 12, subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, section 1817(a) of title 12, section 1467a(b) of title 12, or section 1847 of title 12. The Commission may, however, by rule adopted pursuant to paragraph (1), require any broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer filing such reports with the Commission to obtain, maintain, or report supplemental information if the Commission makes an explicit finding that such supplemental information is necessary to inform the Commission regarding potential risks to such broker, dealer, or municipal securities dealer. Prior to requiring any such supplemental information, the Commission shall first request the Federal banking agency to expand its reporting requirements to include such information.

**(C) Procedure for requiring additional information**

Prior to making a request pursuant to paragraph (2) of this subsection for information with respect to an associated person that is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency, the Commission shall—

- (i) notify such agency of the information required with respect to such associated person; and
- (ii) consult with such agency to determine whether the information required is available from such agency and for other purposes, unless the Commission determines that any delay resulting from such consultation would be inconsistent with ensuring the financial and operational condition of the broker, dealer, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer or the stability or integrity of the securities markets.

**(D) Exclusion for examination reports**

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to permit the Commission to require any registered broker or dealer, or any registered municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, to obtain, maintain, or furnish any examination report of any Federal banking agency or any supervisory recommendations or analysis contained therein.

**(E) Confidentiality of information provided**

No information provided to or obtained by the Commission from any Federal banking agency pursuant to a request by the Commission under subparagraph (C) of this paragraph regarding any associated person which is

subject to examination by or reporting requirements of a Federal banking agency may be disclosed to any other person (other than a self-regulatory organization), without the prior written approval of the Federal banking agency. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission.

**(F) Notice to banking agencies concerning financial and operational condition concerns**

The Commission shall notify the Federal banking agency of any concerns of the Commission regarding significant financial or operational risks resulting from the activities of any registered broker or dealer, or any registered municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, or government securities dealer for which the Commission is the appropriate regulatory agency, to any associated person thereof which is subject to examination by or reporting requirements of the Federal banking agency.

**(G) "Federal banking agency" defined**

For purposes of this paragraph, the term "Federal banking agency" shall have the same meaning as the term "appropriate Federal bank agency" in section 1813(q) of title 12.

**(4) Exemptions**

The Commission by rule or order may exempt any person or class of persons, under such terms and conditions and for such periods as the Commission shall provide in such rule or order, from the provisions of this subsection, and the rules thereunder. In granting such exemptions, the Commission shall consider, among other factors—

(A) whether information of the type required under this subsection is available from a supervisory agency (as defined in section 3401(6) <sup>6</sup> of title 12), a State insurance commission or similar State agency, the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, or a similar foreign regulator;

(B) the primary business of any associated person;

(C) the nature and extent of domestic or foreign regulation of the associated person's activities;

(D) the nature and extent of the registered person's securities activities; and

(E) with respect to the registered person and its associated persons, on a consolidated basis, the amount and proportion of assets devoted to, and revenues derived from, activities in the United States securities markets.

**(5) Authority to limit disclosure of information**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be reported under this subsection, or any information supplied to the Commission by any domestic or foreign regulatory agency that relates to the financial or operational condition of any associated person of a registered broker, dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, or municipal securities dealer. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552. In prescribing regulations to carry out the requirements of this subsection, the Commission shall designate information described in or obtained pursuant to subparagraph (B) or (C) of paragraph (3) of this subsection as confidential information for purposes of section 78x(b)(2) of this title.

**(i) Authority to limit disclosure of information**

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose any information required to be reported under subsection (h) or (i) <sup>6</sup> or any information supplied to the Commission by any domestic or foreign regulatory agency that relates to the financial or operational condition of any associated person of a broker or dealer, investment bank holding company, or any affiliate of an investment bank holding company. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress, or prevent the Commission from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency or any self-regulatory organization requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552. In prescribing regulations to carry out the requirements of this subsection, the Commission shall designate information described in or obtained pursuant to subparagraphs (A), (B), and (C) of subsection (i)(5) <sup>6</sup> as confidential information for purposes of section 78x(b)(2) of this title.

**(j) Coordination of examining authorities**

**(1) Elimination of duplication**

The Commission and the examining authorities, through cooperation and coordination of examination and oversight activities, shall eliminate any unnecessary and burdensome duplication in the examination process.

**(2) Coordination of examinations**

The Commission and the examining authorities shall share such information, including reports of examinations, customer complaint information, and other nonpublic regulatory information, as appropriate to foster a coordinated approach to regulatory oversight of brokers and dealers that are subject to examination by more than one examining authority.

### **(3) Examinations for cause**

At any time, any examining authority may conduct an examination for cause of any broker or dealer subject to its jurisdiction.

### **(4) Confidentiality**

#### **(A) In general**

Section 78x of this title shall apply to the sharing of information in accordance with this subsection. The Commission shall take appropriate action under section 78x(c) of this title to ensure that such information is not inappropriately disclosed.

#### **(B) Appropriate disclosure not prohibited**

Nothing in this paragraph authorizes the Commission or any examining authority to withhold information from the Congress, or prevent the Commission or any examining authority from complying with a request for information from any other Federal department or agency requesting the information for purposes within the scope of its jurisdiction, or complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action brought by the United States or the Commission.

### **(5) "Examining authority" defined**

For purposes of this subsection, the term "examining authority" means a self-regulatory organization registered with the Commission under this chapter (other than a registered clearing agency) with the authority to examine, inspect, and otherwise oversee the activities of a registered broker or dealer.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §17, 48 Stat. 897; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §4, 49 Stat. 1379; June 25, 1938, ch. 677, §5, 52 Stat. 1076; Pub. L. 94–29, §14, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 137; Pub. L. 99–571, title I, §102(h), (i), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3219; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §321, title VIII, §801(b), Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1257, 1265; Pub. L. 101–432, §4(a), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 966; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, §108, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3425; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(5), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–102, title II, §231(a), Nov. 12, 1999, 113 Stat. 1402; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §204], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-424; Pub. L. 107–204, title II, §205(c)(2), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 774; Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(5), (6), Oct. 30, 2004, 118 Stat. 2232; Pub. L. 109–291, §5, Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1338; Pub. L. 111–203, title VI, §617(a), title IX, §§929D, 929S, 975(h), 982(e)(2), 985(b)(7), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1616, 1853, 1867, 1923, 1929, 1934.)

## **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (b), (d)(1)(A), (B), (e)(2), (g), and (j)(5), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (e)(1)(A), is Pub. L. 107–204, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 745. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7201 of this title and Tables.

Subchapter VIII of chapter 3 of title 12, referred to in subsec. (h)(3)(B), was in the original "section 9 of the Federal Reserve Act", meaning section 9 of act Dec. 23, 1913, ch. 6, 38 Stat. 251, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter VIII (§321 et seq.) of chapter 3 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Section 3401(6) of title 12, referred to in subsec. (h)(4)(A), was redesignated section 3401(7) of title 12 by Pub. L. 101–73, title IX, §941(1), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 496.

Subsection (i) of this section, referred to in subsec. (i), was repealed, and subsec. (j) was redesignated (i), by Pub. L. 111–203, §617(a). See 2010 Amendment note below.

## **AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §975(h), inserted "municipal advisor," after "municipal securities dealer".

Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–203, §985(b)(7), substituted "give notice to" for "gives notice to".

Subsec. (e)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–203, §982(e)(2), substituted "independent public accounting firm, or by a registered public accounting firm if the firm is required to be registered under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002," for "registered public accounting firm".

Subsec. (f)(1)(A). Pub. L. 111–203, §929D(1), substituted "securities that are missing, lost, counterfeit, stolen, or cancelled" for "missing, lost, counterfeit, or stolen securities".

Subsec. (f)(1)(B). Pub. L. 111–203, §929D(2), substituted "stolen, cancelled, or reported in such other manner as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe" for "or stolen".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 111–203, §929S, in first sentence, substituted "registered clearing agency, registered securities information processor, national securities exchange, and national securities

association" for "and registered clearing agency," and, in second sentence, substituted "clearing agency, securities information processor, national securities exchange, or national securities association," for "or clearing agency,".

Subsecs. (i) to (k). Pub. L. 111–203, §617(a), redesignated subsecs. (j) and (k) as (i) and (j), respectively, and struck out former subsec. (i) which related to supervision of investment bank holding companies and recordkeeping and reporting requirements.

**2006**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 109–291 inserted "nationally recognized statistical rating organization," after "registered transfer agent," and inserted at end "Any report that a nationally recognized statistical rating organization is required by Commission rules under this paragraph to make and disseminate to the Commission shall be deemed furnished to the Commission."

**2004**—Subsec. (f)(4)(A). Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(5), struck out "and banks operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia" before semicolon.

Subsec. (f)(4)(B). Pub. L. 108–386, §8(f)(6), struck out "or a bank operating under the Code of Law for the District of Columbia" before semicolon.

**2002**—Subsecs. (e)(1)(A), (i)(3)(A)(ii). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted "a registered public accounting firm" for "an independent public accountant".

**2000**—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §204(5)], which directed amendment of subsec. (b) by adding at the end pars. (2) to (4)(B), was executed by making the addition after par. (1), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §204(1) to (4), (6)], inserted subsec. heading, inserted par. (1) designation and heading before "All", substituted "prior to conducting any such examination of a—" for "prior to conducting any such examination of a", inserted subpar. (A) designation before "registered clearing", added subpar. (B), designated last sentence as par. (4)(C) and substituted "Nothing in the proviso in paragraph (1)" for "Nothing in the proviso to the preceding sentence".

**1999**—Subsecs. (i) to (k). Pub. L. 106–102 added subsecs. (i) and (j) and redesignated former subsec. (i) as (k).

**1998**—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board" in first sentence.

**1996**—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 104–290 added subsec. (i).

**1990**—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 101–432 added subsec. (h).

**1987**—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, §321(1), substituted new par. (2) for former par. (2) which read as follows: "The appropriate regulatory agency for a clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency shall file with the Commission notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by such appropriate regulatory agency against such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer, and the Commission shall file with such appropriate regulatory agency notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the Commission against such clearing agency, transfer agent, or municipal securities dealer."

Subsec. (f)(1)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, §801(b), substituted "securities issued pursuant to chapter 31 of title 31" for "government securities".

Subsec. (f)(2). Pub. L. 100–181, §321(2), inserted at end "Notwithstanding any other provision of law, in providing identification and processing functions, the Attorney General shall provide the Commission and self-regulatory organizations designated by the Commission with access to all criminal history record information."

Subsec. (f)(3)(A). Pub. L. 100–181, §321(3), substituted "paragraph (1)" for "paragraphs (1) and (2)".

**1986**—Subsec. (c)(4). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(h), added par. (4).

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(i)(1), inserted "government securities broker, government securities dealer," in introductory provisions and in subpar. (A).

Subsec. (f)(1)(A). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(i)(2), inserted "and, in the case of government securities, to the Secretary of the Treasury".

Subsec. (f)(3). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(i)(3), designated existing provisions as subpar. (A) and added subpar. (B).

**1975**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 designated existing provisions as par. (1), expanded the coverage to require registered municipal securities dealers, the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, registered securities information processors, and registered clearing agencies to make and keep such records, to furnish copies thereof, and to make such reports as the Commission may prescribe and clarified the Commission's authority to require the dissemination of reports submitted pursuant to the rules of the Commission, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsecs. (b) to (g). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsecs. (b) to (f) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (g).

**1938**—Subsec. (a). Act June 25, 1938, inserted "every registered securities association".

**1936**—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, substituted "every broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o of this title" for "every broker or dealer making or creating a market for both the purchase and sale of securities through the use of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce".

#### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by sections 929D, 929S, 982(e)(2), and 985(b)(7) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Pub. L. 111–203, title VI, §617(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1616, provided that: "The amendments made by this section [amending this section] shall take effect on the transfer date."

[For definition of "transfer date" as used in section 617(b) of Pub. L. 111–203, set out above, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.]

Amendment by section 975(h) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective Oct. 1, 2010, see section 975(i) of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 78o of this title.

#### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2004 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 108–386 effective Oct. 30, 2004, and, except as otherwise provided, applicable with respect to fiscal year 2005 and each succeeding fiscal year, see sections 8(i) and 9 of Pub. L. 108–386, set out as notes under section 321 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78o–5 of this title.

#### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

#### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original.

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "consult".

<sup>3</sup> So in original. Probably should be preceded by "an".

<sup>4</sup> So in original. Probably should be preceded by "a".

<sup>5</sup> So in original. Probably should be "an".

<sup>6</sup> See References in Text note below.

### **§78q–1. National system for clearance and settlement of securities transactions**

#### **(a) Congressional findings; facilitating establishment of system**

(1) The Congress finds that—

(A) The prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, including the transfer of record ownership and the safeguarding of securities and funds related thereto, are necessary for the protection of investors and persons facilitating transactions by and acting on behalf of investors.

(B) Inefficient procedures for clearance and settlement impose unnecessary costs on investors and persons facilitating transactions by and acting on behalf of investors.

(C) New data processing and communications techniques create the opportunity for more efficient, effective, and safe procedures for clearance and settlement.

(D) The linking of all clearance and settlement facilities and the development of uniform standards and procedures for clearance and settlement will reduce unnecessary costs and increase the protection of investors and persons facilitating transactions by and acting on behalf of investors.

(2)(A) The Commission is directed, therefore, having due regard for the public interest, the protection of investors, the safeguarding of securities and funds, and maintenance of fair competition among brokers and dealers, clearing agencies, and transfer agents, to use its authority under this chapter—

(i) to facilitate the establishment of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of transactions in securities (other than exempt securities); and

(ii) to facilitate the establishment of linked or coordinated facilities for clearance and settlement of transactions in securities, securities options, contracts of sale for future delivery and options thereon, and commodity options;

in accordance with the findings and to carry out the objectives set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(B) The Commission shall use its authority under this chapter to assure equal regulation under this chapter of registered clearing agencies and registered transfer agents. In carrying out its responsibilities set forth in subparagraph (A)(ii) of this paragraph, the Commission shall coordinate with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission and consult with the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

**(b) Registration of clearing agencies; application; determinations by Commission requisite to registration of applicant as clearing agency; denial of participation; discipline; summary proceedings; exemption; facilities for handling derivatives**

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, it shall be unlawful for any clearing agency, unless registered in accordance with this subsection, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the functions of a clearing agency with respect to any security (other than an exempted security). The Commission, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any clearing agency or security or any class of clearing agencies or securities from any provisions of this section or the rules or regulations thereunder, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the purposes of this section, including the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and the safeguarding of securities and funds. A clearing agency or transfer agent shall not perform the functions of both a clearing agency and a transfer agent unless such clearing agency or transfer agent is registered in accordance with this subsection and subsection (c) of this section.

(2) A clearing agency may be registered under the terms and conditions hereinafter provided in this subsection and in accordance with the provisions of section 78s(a) of this title, by filing with the Commission an application for registration in such form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe containing the rules of the clearing agency and such other information and documents as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions.

(3) A clearing agency shall not be registered unless the Commission determines that—

(A) Such clearing agency is so organized and has the capacity to be able to facilitate the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions for which it is responsible, to safeguard securities and funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible, to comply with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder, to enforce (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) compliance by its participants with the rules of the clearing agency, and to carry out the purposes of this section.

(B) Subject to the provisions of paragraph (4) of this subsection, the rules of the clearing agency provide that any (i) registered broker or dealer, (ii) other registered clearing agency, (iii) registered investment company, (iv) bank, (v) insurance company, or (vi) other person or class of persons as the Commission, by rule, may from time to time designate as appropriate to the development of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions may become a participant in such clearing agency.

(C) The rules of the clearing agency assure a fair representation of its shareholders (or members) and participants in the selection of its directors and administration of its affairs. (The Commission may determine that the representation of participants is fair if they are afforded a reasonable opportunity to acquire voting stock of the clearing agency, directly or indirectly, in reasonable proportion to their use of such clearing agency.)

(D) The rules of the clearing agency provide for the equitable allocation of reasonable dues, fees, and other charges among its participants.

(E) The rules of the clearing agency do not impose any schedule of prices, or fix rates or other fees, for services rendered by its participants.

(F) The rules of the clearing agency are designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and, to the extent applicable, derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions, to assure the safeguarding of securities and funds which are in the custody or control of the clearing agency or for which it is responsible, to foster cooperation and coordination with persons engaged in the clearance and settlement of securities transactions, to remove impediments to and perfect the mechanism of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, and, in general, to protect investors and the public interest; and are not designed to permit unfair discrimination in the admission of participants or among participants in the use of the clearing agency, or to regulate by virtue of any authority conferred by this chapter matters not related to the purposes of this section or the administration of the clearing agency.

(G) The rules of the clearing agency provide that (subject to any rule or order of the Commission pursuant to section 78q(d) or 78s(g)(2) of this title) its participants shall be appropriately disciplined for violation of any provision

of the rules of the clearing agency by expulsion, suspension, limitation of activities, functions, and operations, fine, censure, or any other fitting sanction.

(H) The rules of the clearing agency are in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (5) of this subsection, and, in general, provide a fair procedure with respect to the disciplining of participants, the denial of participation to any person seeking participation therein, and the prohibition or limitation by the clearing agency of any person with respect to access to services offered by the clearing agency.

(I) The rules of the clearing agency do not impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(4)(A) A registered clearing agency may, and in cases in which the Commission, by order, directs as appropriate in the public interest shall, deny participation to any person subject to a statutory disqualification. A registered clearing agency shall file notice with the Commission not less than thirty days prior to admitting any person to participation, if the clearing agency knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, that such person was subject to a statutory disqualification. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) A registered clearing agency may deny participation to, or condition the participation of, any person if such person does not meet such standards of financial responsibility, operational capability, experience, and competence as are prescribed by the rules of the clearing agency. A registered clearing agency may examine and verify the qualifications of an applicant to be a participant in accordance with procedures established by the rules of the clearing agency.

(5)(A) In any proceeding by a registered clearing agency to determine whether a participant should be disciplined (other than a summary proceeding pursuant to subparagraph (C) of this paragraph), the clearing agency shall bring specific charges, notify such participant of, and give him an opportunity to defend against such charges, and keep a record. A determination by the clearing agency to impose a disciplinary sanction shall be supported by a statement setting forth—

(i) any act or practice in which such participant has been found to have engaged, or which such participant has been found to have omitted;

(ii) the specific provisions of the rules of the clearing agency which any such act or practice, or omission to act, is deemed to violate; and

(iii) the sanction imposed and the reasons therefor.

(B) In any proceeding by a registered clearing agency to determine whether a person shall be denied participation or prohibited or limited with respect to access to services offered by the clearing agency, the clearing agency shall notify such person of, and give him an opportunity to be heard upon, the specific grounds for denial or prohibition or limitation under consideration and keep a record. A determination by the clearing agency to deny participation or prohibit or limit a person with respect to access to services offered by the clearing agency shall be supported by a statement setting forth the specific grounds on which the denial or prohibition or limitation is based.

(C) A registered clearing agency may summarily suspend and close the accounts of a participant who (i) has been and is expelled or suspended from any self-regulatory organization, (ii) is in default of any delivery of funds or securities to the clearing agency, or (iii) is in such financial or operating difficulty that the clearing agency determines and so notifies the appropriate regulatory agency for such participant that such suspension and closing of accounts are necessary for the protection of the clearing agency, its participants, creditors, or investors. A participant so summarily suspended shall be promptly afforded an opportunity for a hearing by the clearing agency in accordance with the provisions of subparagraph (A) of this paragraph. The appropriate regulatory agency for such participant, by order, may stay any such summary suspension on its own motion or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby, if such appropriate regulatory agency determines summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments) that such stay is consistent with the public interest and protection of investors.

(6) No registered clearing agency shall prohibit or limit access by any person to services offered by any participant therein.

(7)(A) A clearing agency that is regulated directly or indirectly by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission through its association with a designated contract market for security futures products that is a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, and that would be required to register pursuant to paragraph (1) of this subsection only because it performs the functions of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products effected pursuant to the rules of the designated contract market with which such agency is associated, is exempted from the provisions of this section and the rules and regulations thereunder, except that if such a clearing agency performs the functions of a clearing agency with respect to a security futures product that is not cash settled, it must have arrangements in place with a registered clearing agency to effect the payment and delivery of the securities underlying the security futures product.

(B) Any clearing agency that performs the functions of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products must coordinate with and develop fair and reasonable links with any and all other clearing agencies that perform the functions of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products, in order to permit, as of the compliance date (as defined in section 78f(h)(6)(C)<sup>1</sup> of this title), security futures products to be purchased on one market and offset on another market that trades such products.

(8) A registered clearing agency shall be permitted to provide facilities for the clearance and settlement of any derivative agreements, contracts, or transactions that are excluded from the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.], subject to the requirements of this section and to such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(c) Registration of transfer agents**

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, it shall be unlawful for any transfer agent, unless registered in accordance with this section, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the function of a transfer agent with respect to any security registered under section 78l of this title or which would be required to be registered except for the exemption from registration provided by subsection (g)(2)(B) or (g)(2)(G) of that section. The appropriate regulatory agency, by rule or order, upon its own motion or upon application, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any person or security or class of persons or securities from any provision of this section or any rule or regulation prescribed under this section, if the appropriate regulatory agency finds (A) that such exemption is in the public interest and consistent with the protection of investors and the purposes of this section, including the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions and the safeguarding of securities and funds, and (B) the Commission does not object to such exemption.

(2) A transfer agent may be registered by filing with the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent an application for registration in such form and containing such information and documents concerning such transfer agent and any persons associated with the transfer agent as such appropriate regulatory agency may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section. Except as hereinafter provided, such registration shall become effective 45 days after receipt of such application by such appropriate regulatory agency or within such shorter period of time as such appropriate regulatory agency may determine.

(3) The appropriate regulatory agency for a transfer agent, by order, shall deny registration to, censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months, or revoke the registration of such transfer agent, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such denial, censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such transfer agent, whether prior or subsequent to becoming such, or any person associated with such transfer agent, whether prior or subsequent to becoming so associated—

(A) has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) of paragraph (4) of section 78o(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4); or

(B) is subject to an order entered pursuant to subparagraph (C) of paragraph (4) of this subsection barring or suspending the right of such person to be associated with a transfer agent.

(4)(A) Pending final determination whether any registration by a transfer agent under this subsection shall be denied, the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent, by order, may postpone the effective date of such registration for a period not to exceed fifteen days, but if, after notice and opportunity for hearing (which may consist solely of affidavits and oral arguments), it shall appear to such appropriate regulatory agency to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors to postpone the effective date of such registration until final determination, such appropriate regulatory agency shall so order. Pending final determination whether any registration under this subsection shall be revoked, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, may suspend such registration, if such suspension appears to such appropriate regulatory agency, after notice and opportunity for hearing, to be necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(B) A registered transfer agent may, upon such terms and conditions as the appropriate regulatory agency for such transfer agent deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or in furtherance of the purposes of this section, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with such appropriate regulatory agency. If such appropriate regulatory agency finds that any transfer agent for which it is the appropriate regulatory agency, is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business as a transfer agent, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall cancel or deny the registration.

(C) The appropriate regulatory agency for a transfer agent, by order, shall censure or place limitations on the activities or functions of any person associated, seeking to become associated, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct, associated or seeking to become associated with the transfer agent, or suspend for a period not exceeding 12 months or bar any such person from being associated with any transfer agent, broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, or nationally recognized statistical rating organization, if the appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or bar is in the public interest and that such person has committed or omitted any act, or is subject to an order or finding, enumerated in subparagraph (A), (D), (E), (H), or (G) or <sup>2</sup> paragraph (4) of section 78o(b) of this title, has been convicted of any offense specified in subparagraph (B) of such paragraph (4) within ten years of the commencement of the proceedings under this paragraph, or is enjoined from any action, conduct, or practice specified in subparagraph (C) of such paragraph (4). It shall be unlawful for any person as to whom such an order suspending or barring him from being associated with a transfer agent is in effect willfully to become, or to be, associated with a transfer agent without the consent of the appropriate regulatory agency that entered the order and

the appropriate regulatory agency for that transfer agent. It shall be unlawful for any transfer agent to permit such a person to become, or remain, a person associated with it without the consent of such appropriate regulatory agencies, if the transfer agent knew, or in the exercise of reasonable care should have known, of such order. The Commission may establish, by rule, procedures by which a transfer agent reasonably can determine whether a person associated or seeking to become associated with it is subject to any such order, and may require, by rule, that any transfer agent comply with such procedures.

**(d) Activities of clearing agencies and transfer agents; enforcement by appropriate regulatory agencies**

(1) No registered clearing agency or registered transfer agent shall, directly or indirectly, engage in any activity as clearing agency or transfer agent in contravention of such rules and regulations (A) as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, or (B) as the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or transfer agent may prescribe as necessary or appropriate for the safeguarding of securities and funds.

(2) With respect to any clearing agency or transfer agent for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or transfer agent may, in accordance with section 1818 of title 12, enforce compliance by such clearing agency or transfer agent with the provisions of this section, sections 78q and 78s of this title, and the rules and regulations thereunder. For purposes of the preceding sentence, any violation of any such provision shall constitute adequate basis for the issuance of an order under section 1818(b) or 1818(c) of title 12, and the participants in any such clearing agency and the persons doing business with any such transfer agent shall be deemed to be "depositors" as that term is used in section 1818(c) of title 12.

(3)(A) With respect to any clearing agency or transfer agent for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency, the Commission and the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or transfer agent shall consult and cooperate with each other, and, as may be appropriate, with State banking authorities having supervision over such clearing agency or transfer agent toward the end that, to the maximum extent practicable, their respective regulatory responsibilities may be fulfilled and the rules and regulations applicable to such clearing agency or transfer agent may be in accord with both sound banking practices and a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions. In accordance with this objective—

(i) the Commission and such appropriate regulatory agency shall, at least fifteen days prior to the issuance for public comment of any proposed rule or regulation or adoption of any rule or regulation concerning such clearing agency or transfer agent, consult and request the views of the other; and

(ii) such appropriate regulatory agency shall assume primary responsibility to examine and enforce compliance by such clearing agency or transfer agent with the provisions of this section and sections 78q and 78s of this title.

(B) Nothing in the preceding subparagraph or elsewhere in this chapter shall be construed to impair or limit (other than by the requirement of notification) the Commission's authority to make rules under any provision of this chapter or to enforce compliance pursuant to any provision of this chapter by any clearing agency, transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent with the provisions of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(4) Nothing in this section shall be construed to impair the authority of any State banking authority or other State or Federal regulatory authority having jurisdiction over a person registered as a clearing agency, transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent, to make and enforce rules governing such person which are not inconsistent with this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder.

(5) A registered transfer agent may not, directly or indirectly, engage in any activity in connection with the guarantee of a signature of an endorser of a security, including the acceptance or rejection of such guarantee, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, to facilitate the equitable treatment of financial institutions which issue such guarantees, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

**(e) Physical movement of securities certificates**

The Commission shall use its authority under this chapter to end the physical movement of securities certificates in connection with the settlement among brokers and dealers of transactions in securities consummated by means of the mails or any means or instrumentalities of interstate commerce.

**(f) Rules concerning transfer of securities and rights and obligations of involved or affected parties**

(1) Notwithstanding any provision of State law, except as provided in paragraph (3), if the Commission makes each of the findings described in paragraph (2)(A), the Commission may adopt rules concerning—

(A) the transfer of certificated or uncertificated securities (other than government securities issued pursuant to chapter 31 of title 31 or securities otherwise processed within a book-entry system operated by the Federal Reserve banks pursuant to a Federal book-entry regulation) or limited interests (including security interests) therein; and

(B) rights and obligations of purchasers, sellers, owners, lenders, borrowers, and financial intermediaries (including brokers, dealers, banks, and clearing agencies) involved in or affected by such transfers, and the rights of third parties whose interests in such securities devolve from such transfers.

(2)(A) The findings described in this paragraph are findings by the Commission that—

(i) such rule is necessary or appropriate for the protection of investors or in the public interest and is reasonably designed to promote the prompt, accurate, and safe clearance and settlement of securities transactions;

(ii) in the absence of a uniform rule, the safe and efficient operation of the national system for clearance and settlement of securities transactions will be, or is, substantially impeded; and

(iii) to the extent such rule will impair or diminish, directly or indirectly, rights of persons specified in paragraph (1) (B) under State law concerning transfers of securities (or limited interests therein), the benefits of such rule outweigh such impairment or diminution of rights.

(B) In making the findings described in subparagraph (A), the Commission shall give consideration to the recommendations of the Advisory Committee established under paragraph (4), and it shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System. If the Secretary of the Treasury objects, in writing, to any proposed rule of the Commission on the basis of the Secretary's view on the issues described in clauses (i), (ii), and (iii) of subparagraph (A), the Commission shall consider all feasible alternatives to the proposed rule, and it shall not adopt any such rule unless the Commission makes an explicit finding that the rule is the most practicable method for achieving safe and efficient operation of the national clearance and settlement system.

(3) Any State may, prior to the expiration of 2 years after the Commission adopts a rule under this subsection, enact a statute that specifically refers to this subsection and the specific rule thereunder and establishes, prospectively from the date of enactment of the State statute, a provision that differs from that applicable under the Commission's rule.

(4)(A) Within 90 days after October 16, 1990, the Commission shall (and at such times thereafter as the Commission may determine, the Commission may), after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, establish an advisory committee under the Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.). The Advisory Committee shall be directed to consider and report to the Commission on such matters as the Commission, after consultation with the Secretary of the Treasury and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, determines, including the areas, if any, in which State commercial laws and related Federal laws concerning the transfer of certificated or uncertificated securities, limited interests (including security interests) in such securities, or the creation or perfection of security interests in such securities do not provide the necessary certainty, uniformity, and clarity for purchasers, sellers, owners, lenders, borrowers, and financial intermediaries concerning their respective rights and obligations.

(B) The Advisory Committee shall consist of 15 members, of which—

(i) 11 shall be designated by the Commission in accordance with the Federal Advisory Committee Act; and

(ii) 2 each shall be designated by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System and the Secretary of the Treasury.

(C) The Advisory Committee shall conduct its activities in accordance with the Federal Advisory Committee Act. Within 6 months of its designation, or such longer time as the Commission may designate, the Advisory Committee shall issue a report to the Commission, and shall cause copies of that report to be delivered to the Secretary of the Treasury and the Chairman of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

### **(g) <sup>3</sup> Due diligence for the delivery of dividends, interest, and other valuable property rights**

#### **(1) Revision of rules required**

The Commission shall revise its regulations in section 240.17Ad-17 of title 17, Code of Federal Regulations, as in effect on December 8, 1997, to extend the application of such section to brokers and dealers and to provide for the following:

(A) A requirement that the paying agent provide a single written notification to each missing security holder that the missing security holder has been sent a check that has not yet been negotiated. The written notification may be sent along with a check or other mailing subsequently sent to the missing security holder but must be provided no later than 7 months after the sending of the not yet negotiated check.

(B) An exclusion for paying agents from the notification requirements when the value of the not yet negotiated check is less than \$25.

(C) A provision clarifying that the requirements described in subparagraph (A) shall have no effect on State escheatment laws.

(D) For purposes of such revised regulations—

(i) a security holder shall be considered a "missing security holder" if a check is sent to the security holder and the check is not negotiated before the earlier of the paying agent sending the next regularly scheduled check or the elapsing of 6 months after the sending of the not yet negotiated check; and

(ii) the term "paying agent" includes any issuer, transfer agent, broker, dealer, investment adviser, indenture trustee, custodian, or any other person that accepts payments from the issuer of a security and distributes the payments to the holders of the security.

#### **(2) Rulemaking**

The Commission shall adopt such rules, regulations, and orders necessary to implement this subsection no later than 1 year after July 21, 2010. In proposing such rules, the Commission shall seek to minimize disruptions to current systems used by or on behalf of paying agents to process payment to account holders and avoid requiring multiple paying agents to send written notification to a missing security holder regarding the same not yet negotiated check.

**(g) <sup>3</sup> Registration requirement**

It shall be unlawful for a clearing agency, unless registered with the Commission, directly or indirectly to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce to perform the functions of a clearing agency with respect to a security-based swap.

**(h) Voluntary registration**

A person that clears agreements, contracts, or transactions that are not required to be cleared under this chapter may register with the Commission as a clearing agency.

**(i) Standards for clearing agencies clearing security-based swap transactions**

To be registered and to maintain registration as a clearing agency that clears security-based swap transactions, a clearing agency shall comply with such standards as the Commission may establish by rule. In establishing any such standards, and in the exercise of its oversight of such a clearing agency pursuant to this chapter, the Commission may conform such standards or oversight to reflect evolving United States and international standards. Except where the Commission determines otherwise by rule or regulation, a clearing agency shall have reasonable discretion in establishing the manner in which it complies with any such standards.

**(j) Rules**

The Commission shall adopt rules governing persons that are registered as clearing agencies for security-based swaps under this chapter.

**(k) Exemptions**

The Commission may exempt, conditionally or unconditionally, a clearing agency from registration under this section for the clearing of security-based swaps if the Commission determines that the clearing agency is subject to comparable, comprehensive supervision and regulation by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission or the appropriate government authorities in the home country of the agency. Such conditions may include, but are not limited to, requiring that the clearing agency be available for inspection by the Commission and make available all information requested by the Commission.

**(l) Existing depository institutions and derivative clearing organizations****(1) In general**

A depository institution or derivative clearing organization registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission under the Commodity Exchange Act [7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.] that is required to be registered as a clearing agency under this section is deemed to be registered under this section solely for the purpose of clearing security-based swaps to the extent that, before July 21, 2010—

- (A) the depository institution cleared swaps as a multilateral clearing organization; or
- (B) the derivative clearing organization cleared swaps pursuant to an exemption from registration as a clearing agency.

**(2) Conversion of depository institutions**

A depository institution to which this subsection applies may, by the vote of the shareholders owning not less than 51 percent of the voting interests of the depository institution, be converted into a State corporation, partnership, limited liability company, or similar legal form pursuant to a plan of conversion, if the conversion is not in contravention of applicable State law.

**(3) Sharing of information**

The Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall make available to the Commission, upon request, all information determined to be relevant by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission regarding a derivatives clearing organization deemed to be registered with the Commission under paragraph (1).

**(m) Modification of core principles**

The Commission may conform the core principles established in this section to reflect evolving United States and international standards.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §17A, as added Pub. L. 94–29, §15, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 141; amended Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §322, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1257; Pub. L. 101–429, title II, §206, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 941; Pub. L. 101–432, §5, Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 973; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §203(c)(1), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2718; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §§206(d), 207], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–431, 2763A–434; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, §604(c)(1)(C), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 796; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §763(b), title IX, §§925(a)(3), 929W, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1768, 1851, 1869.)

**AMENDMENT OF SECTION**

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(2), (b)(3)(A), (F), (I), (8), (d)(1), (3)(B), (4), (5), (e), and (h) to (j), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Commodity Exchange Act, referred to in subsecs. (b)(8) and (I)(1), is act Sept. 21, 1922, ch. 369, 42 Stat. 998, which is classified generally to chapter 1 (§1 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (f)(4), is Pub. L. 92-463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Subsec. (c)(4)(C). Pub. L. 111-203, §925(a)(3), substituted "12 months or bar any such person from being associated with any transfer agent, broker, dealer, investment adviser, municipal securities dealer, municipal advisor, or nationally recognized statistical rating organization," for "twelve months or bar any such person from being associated with the transfer agent,".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111-203, §929W, added subsec. (g) relating to due diligence for the delivery of dividends, interest, and other valuable property rights.

Pub. L. 111-203, §763(b), added subsec. (g) relating to registration requirement.

Subsecs. (h) to (m). Pub. L. 111-203, §763(b), added subsecs. (h) to (m).

**2002**—Subsec. (c)(3)(A), (4)(C). Pub. L. 107-204 inserted ", or is subject to an order or finding," before "enumerated" and substituted "(H), or (G)" for "or (G)".

**2000**—Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §207(1)], inserted "and derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions" after "prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions".

Subsec. (b)(3)(F). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §207(2)], inserted "and, to the extent applicable, derivative agreements, contracts, and transactions" after "designed to promote the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions".

Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(d)], added par. (7).

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §207(3)], added par. (8).

**1990**—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101-432, §5(a), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "The Commission is directed, therefore, having due regard for the public interest, the protection of investors, the safeguarding of securities and funds, and maintenance of fair competition among brokers and dealers, clearing agencies, and transfer agents, to use its authority under this chapter to facilitate the establishment of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of transactions in securities (other than exempted securities) in accordance with the findings and to carry out the objectives set forth in paragraph (1) of this subsection. The Commission shall use its authority under this chapter to assure equal regulation under this chapter of registered clearing agencies and registered transfer agents."

Subsec. (c)(3)(A), (4)(C). Pub. L. 101-550 substituted "(A), (D), (E), or (G)" for "(A), (D), or (E)".

Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 101-429 added par. (5).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 101-432, §5(b), added subsec. (f).

**1987**—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 100-181, §322(1), (2), inserted "and any persons associated with the transfer agent" in first sentence and substituted "45" for "thirty" in second sentence.

Subsec. (c)(3), (4). Pub. L. 100-181, §322(3)-(5), added par. (3), struck out former par. (3)(A) which read as follows: "The appropriate regulatory agency for a transfer agent, by order, shall deny registration to, censure, place limitations on the activities, functions, or operations of, suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months, or revoke the registration of such transfer agent, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such denial, censure, placing of limitations, suspension, or revocation is in the public interest and that such transfer agent has willfully violated or is unable to comply with any provision of this section or section 78q of this title or the rules or regulations thereunder.", redesignated subpars. (B) and (C) of former par. (3) as subpars. (A) and (B), respectively, of new par. (4), and added subpar. (C) to such par. (4).

Subsec. (d)(3)(B). Pub. L. 100-181, §322(6), substituted "clearing agency, transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent" for "clearing agency or transfer agent".

Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 100-181, §322(7), substituted ", transfer agent, or person associated with a transfer agent," for "or transfer agent".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 925(a)(3) and 929W of Pub. L. 111-203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 763(b) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, except for subsecs. (b) and (c) which are effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### CLEARANCE AND SETTLEMENT OF TRANSACTIONS; REPORT TO CONGRESS

Section 8(b) of Pub. L. 101–432 directed Securities and Exchange Commission, in consultation with Commodity Futures Trading Commission, Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and other relevant regulatory authorities, to examine progress toward establishing linked or coordinated facilities for clearance and settlement of transactions in securities, securities options, contracts of sale for future delivery and options thereon, and commodity options, and to submit to Congress, not later than 2 years from Oct. 16, 1990, a report detailing and evaluating such progress.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "section 78f(h)(7)(C)".

<sup>2</sup> So in original. Probably should be "of".

<sup>3</sup> So in original. Two subsecs. (g) have been enacted.

## §78q–2. Automated quotation systems for penny stocks

### (a) Findings

The Congress finds that—

(1) the market for penny stocks suffers from a lack of reliable and accurate quotation and last sale information available to investors and regulators;

(2) it is in the public interest and appropriate for the protection of investors and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets to improve significantly the information available to brokers, dealers, investors, and regulators with respect to quotations for and transactions in penny stocks; and

(3) a fully implemented automated quotation system for penny stocks would meet the information needs of investors and market participants and would add visibility and regulatory and surveillance data to that market.

### (b) Mandate to facilitate establishment of automated quotation systems

#### (1) In general

The Commission shall facilitate the widespread dissemination of reliable and accurate last sale and quotation information with respect to penny stocks in accordance with the findings set forth in subsection (a), with a view toward establishing, at the earliest feasible time, one or more automated quotation systems that will collect and disseminate information regarding all penny stocks.

#### (2) Characteristics of systems

Each such automated quotation system shall—

(A) be operated by a registered securities association or a national securities exchange in accordance with such rules as the Commission and these entities shall prescribe;

(B) collect and disseminate quotation and transaction information;

(C) except as provided in subsection (c), provide bid and ask quotations of participating brokers or dealers, or comparably accurate and reliable pricing information, which shall constitute firm bids or offers for at least such minimum numbers of shares or minimum dollar amounts as the Commission and the registered securities association or national securities exchange shall require; and

(D) provide for the reporting of the volume of penny stock transactions, including last sale reporting, when the volume reaches appropriate levels that the Commission shall specify by rule or order.

### (c) Exemptive authority

The Commission may, by rule or order, grant such exemptions, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, to any penny stock or class of penny stocks from the requirements of subsection (b) as the Commission determines to be consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets.

**(d) Commission reporting requirements**

The Commission shall, in each of the first 5 annual reports (under section 78w(b)(1) of this title) submitted more than 12 months after October 15, 1990, include a description of the status of the penny stock automated quotation system or systems required by subsection (b). Such description shall include—

(1) a review of the development, implementation, and progress of the project, including achievement of significant milestones and current project schedule; and

(2) a review of the activities of registered securities associations and national securities exchanges in the development of the system.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §17B, as added Pub. L. 101–429, title V, §506, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 955.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

Section 78w(b)(1) of this title, referred to in subsec. (d), was omitted from the Code. For further details related to reports referred to in subsec. (d), see Codification note set out under section 78w of this title.

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 77g of this title.

**§78r. Liability for misleading statements**

**(a) Persons liable; persons entitled to recover; defense of good faith; suit at law or in equity; costs, etc.**

Any person who shall make or cause to be made any statement in any application, report, or document filed pursuant to this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title, which statement was at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made false or misleading with respect to any material fact, shall be liable to any person (not knowing that such statement was false or misleading) who, in reliance upon such statement, shall have purchased or sold a security at a price which was affected by such statement, for damages caused by such reliance, unless the person sued shall prove that he acted in good faith and had no knowledge that such statement was false or misleading. A person seeking to enforce such liability may sue at law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction. In any such suit the court may, in its discretion, require an undertaking for the payment of the costs of such suit, and assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against either party litigant.

**(b) Contribution**

Every person who becomes liable to make payment under this section may recover contribution as in cases of contract from any person who, if joined in the original suit, would have been liable to make the same payment.

**(c) Period of limitations**

No action shall be maintained to enforce any liability created under this section unless brought within one year after the discovery of the facts constituting the cause of action and within three years after such cause of action accrued.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §18, 48 Stat. 897; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §5, 49 Stat. 1379.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

**AMENDMENTS**

**1936**—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, inserted "or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title".

**§78s. Registration, responsibilities, and oversight of self-regulatory organizations**

**(a) Registration procedures; notice of filing; other regulatory agencies**

(1) The Commission shall, upon the filing of an application for registration as a national securities exchange, registered securities association, or registered clearing agency, pursuant to section 78f, 78o–3, or 78q–1 of this title, respectively, publish notice of such filing and afford interested persons an opportunity to submit written data, views,

and arguments concerning such application. Within ninety days of the date of publication of such notice (or within such longer period as to which the applicant consents), the Commission shall—

(A) by order grant such registration, or

(B) institute proceedings to determine whether registration should be denied. Such proceedings shall include notice of the grounds for denial under consideration and opportunity for hearing and shall be concluded within one hundred eighty days of the date of a publication of notice of the filing of the application for registration. At the conclusion of such proceedings the Commission, by order, shall grant or deny such registration. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to ninety days if it finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the applicant consents.

The Commission shall grant such registration if it finds that the requirements of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder with respect to the applicant are satisfied. The Commission shall deny such registration if it does not make such finding.

(2) With respect to an application for registration filed by a clearing agency for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency—

(A) The Commission shall not grant registration prior to the sixtieth day after the date of publication of notice of the filing of such application unless the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency has notified the Commission of such appropriate regulatory agency's determination that such clearing agency is so organized and has the capacity to be able to safeguard securities and funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible and that the rules of such clearing agency are designed to assure the safeguarding of such securities and funds.

(B) The Commission shall institute proceedings in accordance with paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection to determine whether registration should be denied if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission within sixty days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of such application of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that such clearing agency may not be so organized or have the capacity to be able to safeguard securities or funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible or that the rules of such clearing agency may not be designed to assure the safeguarding of such securities and funds and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(C) The Commission shall deny registration if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission prior to the conclusion of proceedings instituted in accordance with paragraph (1)(B) of this subsection of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that such clearing agency is not so organized or does not have the capacity to be able to safeguard securities or funds in its custody or control or for which it is responsible or that the rules of such clearing agency are not designed to assure the safeguarding of such securities or funds and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(3) A self-regulatory organization may, upon such terms and conditions as the Commission, by rule, deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, withdraw from registration by filing a written notice of withdrawal with the Commission. If the Commission finds that any self-regulatory organization is no longer in existence or has ceased to do business in the capacity specified in its application for registration, the Commission, by order, shall cancel its registration. Upon the withdrawal of a national securities association from registration or the cancellation, suspension, or revocation of the registration of a national securities association, the registration of any association affiliated therewith shall automatically terminate.

#### **(b) Proposed rule changes; notice; proceedings**

(1) Each self-regulatory organization shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules as the Commission may prescribe, copies of any proposed rule or any proposed change in, addition to, or deletion from the rules of such self-regulatory organization (hereinafter in this subsection collectively referred to as a "proposed rule change") accompanied by a concise general statement of the basis and purpose of such proposed rule change. The Commission shall, as soon as practicable after the date of the filing of any proposed rule change, publish notice thereof together with the terms of substance of the proposed rule change or a description of the subjects and issues involved. The Commission shall give interested persons an opportunity to submit written data, views, and arguments concerning such proposed rule change. No proposed rule change shall take effect unless approved by the Commission or otherwise permitted in accordance with the provisions of this subsection.

(2) APPROVAL PROCESS.—

(A) APPROVAL PROCESS ESTABLISHED.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in clause (ii), not later than 45 days after the date of publication of a proposed rule change under paragraph (1), the Commission shall—

(I) by order, approve or disapprove the proposed rule change; or

(II) institute proceedings under subparagraph (B) to determine whether the proposed rule change should be disapproved.

(ii) EXTENSION OF TIME PERIOD.—The Commission may extend the period established under clause (i) by not more than an additional 45 days, if—

(I) the Commission determines that a longer period is appropriate and publishes the reasons for such determination; or

(II) the self-regulatory organization that filed the proposed rule change consents to the longer period.

## (B) PROCEEDINGS.—

(i) NOTICE AND HEARING.—If the Commission does not approve or disapprove a proposed rule change under subparagraph (A), the Commission shall provide to the self-regulatory organization that filed the proposed rule change—

(I) notice of the grounds for disapproval under consideration; and

(II) opportunity for hearing, to be concluded not later than 180 days after the date of publication of notice of the filing of the proposed rule change.

## (ii) ORDER OF APPROVAL OR DISAPPROVAL.—

(I) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subclause (II), not later than 180 days after the date of publication under paragraph (1), the Commission shall issue an order approving or disapproving the proposed rule change.

(II) EXTENSION OF TIME PERIOD.—The Commission may extend the period for issuance under clause (I) by not more than 60 days, if—

(aa) the Commission determines that a longer period is appropriate and publishes the reasons for such determination; or

(bb) the self-regulatory organization that filed the proposed rule change consents to the longer period.

## (C) STANDARDS FOR APPROVAL AND DISAPPROVAL.—

(i) APPROVAL.—The Commission shall approve a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization if it finds that such proposed rule change is consistent with the requirements of this chapter and the rules and regulations issued under this chapter that are applicable to such organization.

(ii) DISAPPROVAL.—The Commission shall disapprove a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization if it does not make a finding described in clause (i).

(iii) TIME FOR APPROVAL.—The Commission may not approve a proposed rule change earlier than 30 days after the date of publication under paragraph (1), unless the Commission finds good cause for so doing and publishes the reason for the finding.

(D) RESULT OF FAILURE TO INSTITUTE OR CONCLUDE PROCEEDINGS.—A proposed rule change shall be deemed to have been approved by the Commission, if—

(i) the Commission does not approve or disapprove the proposed rule change or begin proceedings under subparagraph (B) within the period described in subparagraph (A); or

(ii) the Commission does not issue an order approving or disapproving the proposed rule change under subparagraph (B) within the period described in subparagraph (B)(ii).

(E) PUBLICATION DATE BASED ON FEDERAL REGISTER PUBLISHING.—For purposes of this paragraph, if, after filing a proposed rule change with the Commission pursuant to paragraph (1), a self-regulatory organization publishes a notice of the filing of such proposed rule change, together with the substantive terms of such proposed rule change, on a publicly accessible website, the Commission shall thereafter send the notice to the Federal Register for publication thereof under paragraph (1) within 15 days of the date on which such website publication is made. If the Commission fails to send the notice for publication thereof within such 15 day period, then the date of publication shall be deemed to be the date on which such website publication was made.

## (F) RULEMAKING.—

(i) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 180 days after July 21, 2010, after consultation with other regulatory agencies, the Commission shall promulgate rules setting forth the procedural requirements of the proceedings required under this paragraph.

(ii) NOTICE AND COMMENT NOT REQUIRED.—The rules promulgated by the Commission under clause (i) are not required to include republication of proposed rule changes or solicitation of public comment.

(3)(A) Notwithstanding the provisions of paragraph (2) of this subsection, a proposed rule change shall take effect upon filing with the Commission if designated by the self-regulatory organization as (i) constituting a stated policy, practice, or interpretation with respect to the meaning, administration, or enforcement of an existing rule of the self-regulatory organization, (ii) establishing or changing a due, fee, or other charge imposed by the self-regulatory organization on any person, whether or not the person is a member of the self-regulatory organization, or (iii) concerned solely with the administration of the self-regulatory organization or other matters which the Commission, by rule, consistent with the public interest and the purposes of this subsection, may specify as without the provisions of such paragraph (2).

(B) Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, a proposed rule change may be put into effect summarily if it appears to the Commission that such action is necessary for the protection of investors, the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, or the safeguarding of securities or funds. Any proposed rule change so put into effect shall be filed promptly thereafter in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection.

(C) Any proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization which has taken effect pursuant to subparagraph (A) or (B) of this paragraph may be enforced by such organization to the extent it is not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and applicable Federal and State law. At any time within the 60-day

period beginning on the date of filing of such a proposed rule change in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1), the Commission summarily may temporarily suspend the change in the rules of the self-regulatory organization made thereby, if it appears to the Commission that such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. If the Commission takes such action, the Commission shall institute proceedings under paragraph (2)(B) to determine whether the proposed rule should be approved or disapproved. Commission action pursuant to this subparagraph shall not affect the validity or force of the rule change during the period it was in effect and shall not be reviewable under section 78y of this title nor deemed to be "final agency action" for purposes of section 704 of title 5.

(4) With respect to a proposed rule change filed by a registered clearing agency for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency—

(A) The Commission shall not approve any such proposed rule change prior to the thirtieth day after the date of publication of notice of the filing whereof unless the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency has notified the Commission of such appropriate regulatory agency's determination that the proposed rule change is consistent with the safeguarding of securities and funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible.

(B) The Commission shall institute proceedings in accordance with paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection to determine whether any such proposed rule change should be disapproved, if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission within thirty days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of the proposed rule change of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that the proposed rule change may be inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(C) The Commission shall disapprove any such proposed rule change if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission prior to the conclusion of proceedings instituted in accordance with paragraph (2)(B) of this subsection of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that the proposed rule change is inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible and (ii) reasons for such determination.

(D)(i) The Commission shall order the temporary suspension of any change in the rules of a clearing agency made by a proposed rule change that has taken effect under paragraph (3), if the appropriate regulatory agency for the clearing agency notifies the Commission not later than 30 days after the date on which the proposed rule change was filed of—

(I) the determination by the appropriate regulatory agency that the rules of such clearing agency, as so changed, may be inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible; and

(II) the reasons for the determination described in subclause (I).

(ii) If the Commission takes action under clause (i), the Commission shall institute proceedings under paragraph (2)(B) to determine if the proposed rule change should be approved or disapproved.

(5) The Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury prior to approving a proposed rule filed by a registered securities association that primarily concerns conduct related to transactions in government securities, except where the Commission determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons therefor. If the Secretary of the Treasury comments in writing to the Commission on a proposed rule that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving the proposed rule. If the Secretary of the Treasury determines, and notifies the Commission, that such rule, if implemented, would, or as applied does (i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for government securities; or (ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section, the Commission shall, prior to adopting the proposed rule, find that such rule is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Secretary's determination.

(6) In approving rules described in paragraph (5), the Commission shall consider the sufficiency and appropriateness of then existing laws and rules applicable to government securities brokers, government securities dealers, and persons associated with government securities brokers and government securities dealers.

(7) SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCT RULE CHANGES.—

(A) FILING REQUIRED.—A self-regulatory organization that is an exchange registered with the Commission pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title or that is a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules as the Commission may prescribe, copies of any proposed rule change or any proposed change in, addition to, or deletion from the rules of such self-regulatory organization (hereinafter in this paragraph collectively referred to as a "proposed rule change") that relates to higher margin levels, fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, reporting, listing standards, or decimal pricing for security futures products, sales practices for security futures products for persons who effect transactions in security futures products, or rules effectuating such self-regulatory organization's obligation to enforce the securities laws. Such proposed rule change shall be accompanied by a concise general statement of the basis and purpose of such proposed rule change. The Commission shall, upon the filing of any proposed rule change, promptly publish notice thereof together with the terms of substance of the proposed rule change or a description of the subjects and issues

involved. The Commission shall give interested persons an opportunity to submit data, views, and arguments concerning such proposed rule change.

(B) FILING WITH CFTC.—A proposed rule change filed with the Commission pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall be filed concurrently with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission. Such proposed rule change may take effect upon filing of a written certification with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission under section 7a–2(c) of title 7, upon a determination by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission that review of the proposed rule change is not necessary, or upon approval of the proposed rule change by the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

(C) ABROGATION OF RULE CHANGES.—Any proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization that has taken effect pursuant to subparagraph (B) may be enforced by such self-regulatory organization to the extent such rule is not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and applicable Federal law. At any time within 60 days of the date of the filing of a written certification with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission under section 7a–2(c) of title 7, the date the Commodity Futures Trading Commission determines that review of such proposed rule change is not necessary, or the date the Commodity Futures Trading Commission approves such proposed rule change, the Commission, after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, may summarily abrogate the proposed rule change and require that the proposed rule change be refiled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1), if it appears to the Commission that such proposed rule change unduly burdens competition or efficiency, conflicts with the securities laws, or is inconsistent with the public interest and the protection of investors. Commission action pursuant to the preceding sentence shall not affect the validity or force of the rule change during the period it was in effect and shall not be reviewable under section 78y of this title nor deemed to be a final agency action for purposes of section 704 of title 5.

(D) REVIEW OF RESUBMITTED ABROGATED RULES.—

(i) PROCEEDINGS.—Within 35 days of the date of publication of notice of the filing of a proposed rule change that is abrogated in accordance with subparagraph (C) and refiled in accordance with paragraph (1), or within such longer period as the Commission may designate up to 90 days after such date if the Commission finds such longer period to be appropriate and publishes its reasons for so finding or as to which the self-regulatory organization consents, the Commission shall—

(I) by order approve such proposed rule change; or

(II) after consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, institute proceedings to determine whether the proposed rule change should be disapproved. Proceedings under subclause (II) shall include notice of the grounds for disapproval under consideration and opportunity for hearing and be concluded within 180 days after the date of publication of notice of the filing of the proposed rule change. At the conclusion of such proceedings, the Commission, by order, shall approve or disapprove such proposed rule change. The Commission may extend the time for conclusion of such proceedings for up to 60 days if the Commission finds good cause for such extension and publishes its reasons for so finding or for such longer period as to which the self-regulatory organization consents.

(ii) GROUNDS FOR APPROVAL.—The Commission shall approve a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization under this subparagraph if the Commission finds that such proposed rule change does not unduly burden competition or efficiency, does not conflict with the securities laws, and is not inconsistent with the public interest or the protection of investors. The Commission shall disapprove such a proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization if it does not make such finding. The Commission shall not approve any proposed rule change prior to the 30th day after the date of publication of notice of the filing thereof, unless the Commission finds good cause for so doing and publishes its reasons for so finding.

(8) DECIMAL PRICING.—Not later than 9 months after the date on which trading in any security futures product commences under this chapter, all self-regulatory organizations listing or trading security futures products shall file proposed rule changes necessary to implement decimal pricing of security futures products. The Commission may not require such rules to contain equal minimum increments in such decimal pricing.

(9) CONSULTATION WITH CFTC.—

(A) CONSULTATION REQUIRED.—The Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission prior to approving or disapproving a proposed rule change filed by a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o–3(a) of this title or a national securities exchange subject to the provisions of subsection (a) that primarily concerns conduct related to transactions in security futures products, except where the Commission determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons therefor.

(B) RESPONSES TO CFTC COMMENTS AND FINDINGS.—If the Commodity Futures Trading Commission comments in writing to the Commission on a proposed rule that has been published for comment, the Commission shall respond in writing to such written comment before approving or disapproving the proposed rule. If the Commodity Futures Trading Commission determines, and notifies the Commission, that such rule, if implemented or as applied, would—

(i) adversely affect the liquidity or efficiency of the market for security futures products; or

(ii) impose any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section,

the Commission shall, prior to approving or disapproving the proposed rule, find that such rule is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this section notwithstanding the Commodity Futures Trading Commission's determination.

(10) <sup>1</sup> RULE OF CONSTRUCTION RELATING TO FILING DATE OF PROPOSED RULE CHANGES.—

(A) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of this subsection, the date of filing of a proposed rule change shall be deemed to be the date on which the Commission receives the proposed rule change.

(B) EXCEPTION.—A proposed rule change has not been received by the Commission for purposes of subparagraph (A) if, not later than 7 business days after the date of receipt by the Commission, the Commission notifies the self-regulatory organization that such proposed rule change does not comply with the rules of the Commission relating to the required form of a proposed rule change, except that if the Commission determines that the proposed rule change is unusually lengthy and is complex or raises novel regulatory issues, the Commission shall inform the self-regulatory organization of such determination not later than 7 business days after the date of receipt by the Commission and, for the purposes of subparagraph (A), a proposed rule change has not been received by the Commission, if, not later than 21 days after the date of receipt by the Commission, the Commission notifies the self-regulatory organization that such proposed rule change does not comply with the rules of the Commission relating to the required form of a proposed rule change.

(10) <sup>1</sup> Notwithstanding paragraph (2), the time period within which the Commission is required by order to approve a proposed rule change or institute proceedings to determine whether the proposed rule change should be disapproved is stayed pending a determination by the Commission upon the request of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission or its Chairman that the Commission issue a determination as to whether a product that is the subject of such proposed rule change is a security pursuant to section 8306 of this title.

**(c) Amendment by Commission of rules of self-regulatory organizations**

The Commission, by rule, may abrogate, add to, and delete from (hereinafter in this subsection collectively referred to as "amend") the rules of a self-regulatory organization (other than a registered clearing agency) as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate to insure the fair administration of the self-regulatory organization, to conform its rules to requirements of this chapter and the rules and regulations thereunder applicable to such organization, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, in the following manner:

(1) The Commission shall notify the self-regulatory organization and publish notice of the proposed rulemaking in the Federal Register. The notice shall include the text of the proposed amendment to the rules of the self-regulatory organization and a statement of the Commission's reasons, including any pertinent facts, for commencing such proposed rulemaking.

(2) The Commission shall give interested persons an opportunity for the oral presentation of data, views, and arguments, in addition to an opportunity to make written submissions. A transcript shall be kept of any oral presentation.

(3) A rule adopted pursuant to this subsection shall incorporate the text of the amendment to the rules of the self-regulatory organization and a statement of the Commission's basis for and purpose in so amending such rules. This statement shall include an identification of any facts on which the Commission considers its determination so to amend the rules of the self-regulatory agency to be based, including the reasons for the Commission's conclusions as to any of such facts which were disputed in the rulemaking.

(4)(A) Except as provided in paragraphs (1) through (3) of this subsection, rulemaking under this subsection shall be in accordance with the procedures specified in section 553 of title 5 for rulemaking not on the record.

(B) Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the Commission's power to make, or to modify or alter the procedures the Commission may follow in making, rules and regulations pursuant to any other authority under this chapter.

(C) Any amendment to the rules of a self-regulatory organization made by the Commission pursuant to this subsection shall be considered for all purposes of this chapter to be part of the rules of such self-regulatory organization and shall not be considered to be a rule of the Commission.

(5) With respect to rules described in subsection (b)(5), the Commission shall consult with and consider the views of the Secretary of the Treasury before abrogating, adding to, and deleting from such rules, except where the Commission determines that an emergency exists requiring expeditious or summary action and publishes its reasons therefor.

**(d) Notice of disciplinary action taken by self-regulatory organization against a member or participant; review of action by appropriate regulatory agency; procedure**

(1) If any self-regulatory organization imposes any final disciplinary sanction on any member thereof or participant therein, denies membership or participation to any applicant, or prohibits or limits any person in respect to access to services offered by such organization or member thereof or if any self-regulatory organization (other than a registered clearing agency) imposes any final disciplinary sanction on any person associated with a member or bars any person from becoming associated with a member, the self-regulatory organization shall promptly file notice thereof with the appropriate regulatory agency for the self-regulatory organization and (if other than the appropriate regulatory agency for the self-regulatory organization) the appropriate regulatory agency for such member, participant, applicant, or other person. The notice shall be in such form and contain such information as the appropriate regulatory agency for the

self-regulatory organization, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(2) Any action with respect to which a self-regulatory organization is required by paragraph (1) of this subsection to file notice shall be subject to review by the appropriate regulatory agency for such member, participant, applicant, or other person, on its own motion, or upon application by any person aggrieved thereby filed within thirty days after the date such notice was filed with such appropriate regulatory agency and received by such aggrieved person, or within such longer period as such appropriate regulatory agency may determine. Application to such appropriate regulatory agency for review, or the institution of review by such appropriate regulatory agency on its own motion, shall not operate as a stay of such action unless such appropriate regulatory agency otherwise orders, summarily or after notice and opportunity for hearing on the question of a stay (which hearing may consist solely of the submission of affidavits or presentation of oral arguments). Each appropriate regulatory agency shall establish for appropriate cases an expedited procedure for consideration and determination of the question of a stay.

(3) The provisions of this subsection shall apply to an exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title or a national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title only to the extent that such exchange or association imposes any final disciplinary sanction for—

(A) a violation of the Federal securities laws or the rules and regulations thereunder; or

(B) a violation of a rule of such exchange or association, as to which a proposed change would be required to be filed under this section, except that, to the extent that the exchange or association rule violation relates to any account, agreement, contract, or transaction, this subsection shall apply only to the extent such violation involves a security futures product.

**(e) Disposition of review; cancellation, reduction, or remission of sanction**

(1) In any proceeding to review a final disciplinary sanction imposed by a self-regulatory organization on a member thereof or participant therein or a person associated with such a member, after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of consideration of the record before the self-regulatory organization and opportunity for the presentation of supporting reasons to affirm, modify, or set aside the sanction)—

(A) if the appropriate regulatory agency for such member, participant, or person associated with a member finds that such member, participant, or person associated with a member has engaged in such acts or practices, or has omitted such acts, as the self-regulatory organization has found him to have engaged in or omitted, that such acts or practices, or omissions to act, are in violation of such provisions of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of the self-regulatory organization, or, in the case of a registered securities association, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board as have been specified in the determination of the self-regulatory organization, and that such provisions are, and were applied in a manner, consistent with the purposes of this chapter, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall so declare and, as appropriate, affirm the sanction imposed by the self-regulatory organization, modify the sanction in accordance with paragraph (2) of this subsection, or remand to the self-regulatory organization for further proceedings; or

(B) if such appropriate regulatory agency does not make any such finding it shall, by order, set aside the sanction imposed by the self-regulatory organization and, if appropriate, remand to the self-regulatory organization for further proceedings.

(2) If the appropriate regulatory agency for a member, participant, or person associated with a member, having due regard for the public interest and the protection of investors, finds after a proceeding in accordance with paragraph (1) of this subsection that a sanction imposed by a self-regulatory organization upon such member, participant, or person associated with a member imposes any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter or is excessive or oppressive, the appropriate regulatory agency may cancel, reduce, or require the remission of such sanction.

**(f) Dismissal of review proceeding**

In any proceeding to review the denial of membership or participation in a self-regulatory organization to any applicant, the barring of any person from becoming associated with a member of a self-regulatory organization, or the prohibition or limitation by a self-regulatory organization of any person with respect to access to services offered by the self-regulatory organization or any member thereof, if the appropriate regulatory agency for such applicant or person, after notice and opportunity for hearing (which hearing may consist solely of consideration of the record before the self-regulatory organization and opportunity for the presentation of supporting reasons to dismiss the proceeding or set aside the action of the self-regulatory organization) finds that the specific grounds on which such denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is based exist in fact, that such denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation is in accordance with the rules of the self-regulatory organization, and that such rules are, and were applied in a manner, consistent with the purposes of this chapter, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall dismiss the proceeding. If such appropriate regulatory agency does not make any such finding or if it finds that such denial, bar, or prohibition or limitation imposes any burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, such appropriate regulatory agency, by order, shall set aside the action of the self-regulatory organization and require it to admit such applicant to membership or participation, permit such person to become associated with a member, or grant such person access to services offered by the self-regulatory organization or member thereof.

**(g) Compliance with rules and regulations**

(1) Every self-regulatory organization shall comply with the provisions of this chapter, the rules and regulations thereunder, and its own rules, and (subject to the provisions of section 78q(d) of this title, paragraph (2) of this subsection, and the rules thereunder) absent reasonable justification or excuse enforce compliance—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, with such provisions by its members and persons associated with its members;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, with such provisions and the provisions of the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board by its members and persons associated with its members; and

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, with its own rules by its participants.

(2) The Commission, by rule, consistent with the public interest, the protection of investors, and the other purposes of this chapter, may relieve any self-regulatory organization of any responsibility under this chapter to enforce compliance with any specified provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by any member of such organization or person associated with such a member, or any class of such members or persons associated with a member.

**(h) Suspension or revocation of self-regulatory organization's registration; censure; other sanctions**

(1) The appropriate regulatory agency for a self-regulatory organization is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or revoke the registration of such self-regulatory organization, or to censure or impose limitations upon the activities, functions, and operations of such self-regulatory organization, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such self-regulatory organization has violated or is unable to comply with any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or its own rules or without reasonable justification or excuse has failed to enforce compliance—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, with any such provision by a member thereof or a person associated with a member thereof;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, with any such provision or any provision of the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board by a member thereof or a person associated with a member thereof; or

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, with any provision of its own rules by a participant therein.

(2) The appropriate regulatory agency for a self-regulatory organization is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or expel from such self-regulatory organization any member thereof or participant therein, if such member or participant is subject to an order of the Commission pursuant to section 78o(b)(4) of this title or if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such member or participant has willfully violated or has effected any transaction for any other person who, such member or participant had reason to believe, was violating with respect to such transaction—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b-1 et seq.], the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-1 et seq.], this chapter, or the rules or regulations under any of such statutes;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this chapter, the rules or regulations under any of such statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board; or

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, any provision of the rules of the clearing agency.

(3) The appropriate regulatory agency for a national securities exchange or registered securities association is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to suspend for a period not exceeding twelve months or to bar any person from being associated with a member of such national securities exchange or registered securities association, if such person is subject to an order of the Commission pursuant to section 78o(b)(6) of this title or if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such person has willfully violated or has effected any transaction for any other person who, such person associated with a member had reason to believe, was violating with respect to such transaction—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this chapter, or the rules or regulations under any of such statutes; or

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, any provision of the Securities Act of 1933, the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, the Investment Company Act of 1940, this chapter, the rules or regulations under any of the statutes, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

(4) The appropriate regulatory agency for a self-regulatory organization is authorized, by order, if in its opinion such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, to remove from office or censure any person who is, or at the time of the alleged

misconduct was, an officer or director of such self-regulatory organization, if such appropriate regulatory agency finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such person has willfully violated any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of such self-regulatory organization, willfully abused his authority, or without reasonable justification or excuse has failed to enforce compliance—

(A) in the case of a national securities exchange, with any such provision by any member or person associated with a member;

(B) in the case of a registered securities association, with any such provision or any provision of the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board by any member or person associated with a member; or

(C) in the case of a registered clearing agency, with any provision of the rules of the clearing agency by any participant.

#### (i) Appointment of trustee

If a proceeding under subsection (h)(1) of this section results in the suspension or revocation of the registration of a clearing agency, the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency may, upon notice to such clearing agency, apply to any court of competent jurisdiction specified in section 78u(d) or 78aa of this title for the appointment of a trustee. In the event of such an application, the court may, to the extent it deems necessary or appropriate, take exclusive jurisdiction of such clearing agency and the records and assets thereof, wherever located; and the court shall appoint the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency or a person designated by such appropriate regulatory agency as trustee with power to take possession and continue to operate or terminate the operations of such clearing agency in an orderly manner for the protection of participants and investors, subject to such terms and conditions as the court may prescribe.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §19, 48 Stat. 898; Pub. L. 87–196, Sept. 5, 1961, 75 Stat. 465; Pub. L. 87–561, July 27, 1962, 76 Stat. 247; Pub. L. 90–438, July 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 453; Pub. L. 91–94, Oct. 20, 1969, 83 Stat. 141; Pub. L. 91–410, Sept. 25, 1970, 84 Stat. 862; Pub. L. 94–29, §16, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 146; Pub. L. 103–202, title I, §106(c), Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2350; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(11), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §202(b), (c)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–418, 2763A–421; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §717(c), title IX, §§916, 929F(e), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1652, 1833, 1854.)

#### AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle A (§§711–754) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle A requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle A, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (b)(2)(C)(i), (3)(C), (7)(C), (8), (c), (d)(1), (e)(1)(A), (2), (f), (g), and (h), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (h), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (h), is title II of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§80b–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b–20 of this title and Tables.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (h), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§80a–1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a–51 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §916(b)(2), substituted "as soon as practicable after the date of the filing" for "upon the filing".

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–203, §916(a), added par. (2) and struck out former par. (2) which related to approval of rule change or institution of proceedings regarding disapproval of such change within thirty-five days of publication of notice or within such longer period as the Commission may designate up to ninety days of such date.

Subsec. (b)(3)(A). Pub. L. 111–203, §916(c)(1), substituted "shall take effect" for "may take effect" and inserted "on any person, whether or not the person is a member of the self-regulatory organization" after "charge imposed by the self-regulatory organization".

Subsec. (b)(3)(C). Pub. L. 111–203, §916(c)(2), substituted second sentence for former second sentence which read as follows: "At any time within sixty days of the date of filing of such a proposed rule change in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection, the Commission summarily may abrogate the change in the rules of the self-regulatory organization made thereby and require that the proposed rule change be refiled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection and reviewed in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (2) of this subsection, if it appears to the

Commission that such action is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.", added third sentence, and substituted "this subparagraph" for "the preceding sentence" in last sentence.

Subsec. (b)(4)(D). Pub. L. 111–203, §916(d), amended subpar. (D) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (D) read as follows: "The Commission shall abrogate any change in the rules of such a clearing agency made by a proposed rule change which has taken effect pursuant to paragraph (3) of this subsection, require that the proposed rule change be refiled in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (1) of this subsection, and reviewed in accordance with the provisions of paragraph (2) of this subsection, if the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency notifies the Commission within thirty days of the date of filing of such proposed rule change of such appropriate regulatory agency's (i) determination that the rules of such clearing agency as so changed may be inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds in the custody or control of such clearing agency or for which it is responsible and (ii) reasons for such determination."

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 111–203, §916(b)(1), added par. (10) relating to rule of construction relating to filing date of proposed rule changes.

Pub. L. 111–203, §717(c), added par. (10) relating to stay pending determination whether product is a security pursuant to section 8306 of this title.

Subsec. (h)(4). Pub. L. 111–203, §929F(e), in introductory provisions, substituted "any person who is, or at the time of the alleged misconduct was, an officer or director" for "any officer or director" and "such person" for "such officer or director".

**2000**—Subsec. (b)(7). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §202(b)(1)], added par. (7).

Subsec. (b)(8). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §202(b)(2)], added par. (8).

Subsec. (b)(9). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §202(b)(3)], added par. (9).

Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §202(c)], added par. (3).

**1998**—Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 105–353 realigned margins.

**1993**—Subsec. (b)(5), (6). Pub. L. 103–202, §106(c)(1), added pars. (5) and (6).

Subsec. (c)(5). Pub. L. 103–202, §106(c)(2), added par. (5).

**1975**—Pub. L. 94–29 amended section generally, substituting provisions covering the registration, responsibilities, and oversight of self-regulatory organizations by the Commission for provisions covering only the Commission's powers with respect to exchanges and securities, with a view to consolidating and expanding the Commission's oversight powers with respect to self-regulatory organizations, their members, participants, and officers, and with a view to giving the Commission identical powers over all self-regulatory organizations, including registered clearing agencies, and substantially strengthening the Commission's ability to assure that these organizations carry out their statutory responsibilities.

**1970**—Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 91–410 substituted "December 31, 1970" for "September 1, 1970".

**1969**—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 91–94 substituted "September 1, 1970" for "September 1, 1969" in par. (1), and "\$945,000" for "\$875,000" in par. (4).

**1968**—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 90–438 added subsec. (e).

**1962**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87–561 substituted "April 3, 1963" for "January 3, 1963" and "\$950,000" for "\$750,000".

**1961**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 87–196 added subsec. (d).

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 916 and 929F(e) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 717(c) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle A (§§711–754) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle A, see section 754 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 1a of Title 7, Agriculture.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, except for amendment of subsec. (g) by Pub. L. 94–29 which is effective 180 days after June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any

procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78o–5 of this title.

### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### **REVIEW OF REGULATORY STRUCTURES AND PROCEDURES WITH RESPECT TO PENNY STOCKS; REPORT**

Pub. L. 101–429, title V, §510, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 957, directed Comptroller General, in consultation with Securities and Exchange Commission, to conduct a review of rules, procedures, facilities, and oversight and enforcement activities of self-regulatory organizations under Securities Exchange Act of 1934, with respect to penny stocks (within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(51)), and, within one year after Oct. 15, 1990, to submit a report on the review including a statement of findings and such recommendations as the Comptroller General considered appropriate with respect to legislative or administrative changes.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Two pars. (10) have been enacted.

## **§78t. Liability of controlling persons and persons who aid and abet violations**

### **(a) Joint and several liability; good faith defense**

Every person who, directly or indirectly, controls any person liable under any provision of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder shall also be liable jointly and severally with and to the same extent as such controlled person to any person to whom such controlled person is liable (including to the Commission in any action brought under paragraph (1) or (3) of section 78u(d) of this title), unless the controlling person acted in good faith and did not directly or indirectly induce the act or acts constituting the violation or cause of action.

### **(b) Unlawful activity through or by means of any other person**

It shall be unlawful for any person, directly or indirectly, to do any act or thing which it would be unlawful for such person to do under the provisions of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder through or by means of any other person.

### **(c) Hindering, delaying, or obstructing the making or filing of any document, report, or information**

It shall be unlawful for any director or officer of, or any owner of any securities issued by, any issuer required to file any document, report, or information under this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder without just cause to hinder, delay, or obstruct the making or filing of any such document, report, or information.

### **(d) Liability for trading in securities while in possession of material nonpublic information**

Wherever communicating, or purchasing or selling a security while in possession of, material nonpublic information would violate, or result in liability to any purchaser or seller of the security under any provisions of this chapter, or any rule or regulation thereunder, such conduct in connection with a purchase or sale of a put, call, straddle, option, privilege or security-based swap agreement with respect to such security or with respect to a group or index of securities including such security, shall also violate and result in comparable liability to any purchaser or seller of that security under such provision, rule, or regulation.

### **(e) Prosecution of persons who aid and abet violations**

For purposes of any action brought by the Commission under paragraph (1) or (3) of section 78u(d) of this title, any person that knowingly or recklessly provides substantial assistance to another person in violation of a provision of this chapter, or of any rule or regulation issued under this chapter, shall be deemed to be in violation of such provision to the same extent as the person to whom such assistance is provided.

### **(f) Limitation on Commission authority**

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c–1(b) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §20, 48 Stat. 899; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §6, 49 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 88–467, §9, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 579; Pub. L. 98–376, §5, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 104–67, title I, §104, Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 757; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(12), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(3), title III, §303(i), (j)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–426, 2763A–456; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §762(d)(6), title IX, §§929O, 929P(c), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1761, 1862, 1865.)

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–203, §929P(c), inserted "(including to the Commission in any action brought under paragraph (1) or (3) of section 78u(d) of this title)" after "controlled person is liable".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–203, §762(d)(6)(A), struck out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "security-based swap agreement".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–203, §929O, inserted "or recklessly" after "knowingly".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–203, §762(d)(6)(B), struck out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "security-based swap agreements".

**2000**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(i)], amended subsec. (d) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (d) read as follows: "Wherever communicating, or purchasing or selling a security while in possession of, material nonpublic information would violate, or result in liability to any purchaser or seller of the security under any provision of this chapter, or any rule or regulation thereunder, such conduct in connection with a purchase or sale of a put, call, straddle, option, privilege, or security futures product with respect to such security or with respect to a group or index of securities including such security, shall also violate and result in comparable liability to any purchaser or seller of that security under such provision, rule, or regulation."

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(3)], substituted ", privilege, or security futures product" for "or privilege".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(j)], added subsec. (f).

**1998**—Subsecs. (e), (f). Pub. L. 105–353 redesignated subsec. (f) as (e).

**1995**—Pub. L. 104–67, §104(1), substituted "liability of controlling persons and persons who aid and abet violations" for "Liabilities of controlling persons" in section catchline.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–67, §104(2), added subsec. (f).

**1984**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–376 added subsec. (d).

**1964**—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 88–467 extended application of provisions of subsec. (c) by substituting the prohibition against any officer or director of, or an owner of securities issued by, a company from hindering, delaying, or obstructing the preparation or filing of any report, document, or information required to be filed under this chapter for existing provisions applicable only to filings by companies with securities registered on a national securities exchange or subject to the provisions of section 78o(d) of this title.

**1936**—Subsec. (c). Act May 27, 1936, inserted "or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title".

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by sections 929O and 929P(c) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 762(d)(6) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 771 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–376 effective Aug. 10, 1984, see section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

## CONSTRUCTION OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Nothing in amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a Construction note under section 78j–1 of this title.

## §78t–1. Liability to contemporaneous traders for insider trading

### (a) Private rights of action based on contemporaneous trading

Any person who violates any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by purchasing or selling a security while in possession of material, nonpublic information shall be liable in an action in any court of competent jurisdiction to any person who, contemporaneously with the purchase or sale of securities that is the subject of such violation, has purchased (where such violation is based on a sale of securities) or sold (where such violation is based on a purchase of securities) securities of the same class.

### (b) Limitations on liability

#### (1) Contemporaneous trading actions limited to profit gained or loss avoided

The total amount of damages imposed under subsection (a) shall not exceed the profit gained or loss avoided in the transaction or transactions that are the subject of the violation.

#### (2) Offsetting disgorgements against liability

The total amount of damages imposed against any person under subsection (a) shall be diminished by the amounts, if any, that such person may be required to disgorge, pursuant to a court order obtained at the instance of the Commission, in a proceeding brought under section 78u(d) of this title relating to the same transaction or transactions.

#### (3) Controlling person liability

No person shall be liable under this section solely by reason of employing another person who is liable under this section, but the liability of a controlling person under this section shall be subject to section 78t(a) of this title.

#### (4) Statute of limitations

No action may be brought under this section more than 5 years after the date of the last transaction that is the subject of the violation.

### (c) Joint and several liability for communicating

Any person who violates any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by communicating material, nonpublic information shall be jointly and severally liable under subsection (a) with, and to the same extent as, any person or persons liable under subsection (a) to whom the communication was directed.

### (d) Authority not to restrict other express or implied rights of action

Nothing in this section shall be construed to limit or condition the right of any person to bring an action to enforce a requirement of this chapter or the availability of any cause of action implied from a provision of this chapter.

### (e) Provisions not to affect public prosecutions

This section shall not be construed to bar or limit in any manner any action by the Commission or the Attorney General under any other provision of this chapter, nor shall it bar or limit in any manner any action to recover penalties, or to seek any other order regarding penalties.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §20A, as added Pub. L. 100–704, §5, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4680.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a), (c), (d), and (e), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 78o of this title.

## **§78u. Investigations and actions**

### **(a) Authority and discretion of Commission to investigate violations**

(1) The Commission may, in its discretion, make such investigations as it deems necessary to determine whether any person has violated, is violating, or is about to violate any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or a person associated, or, as to any act or practice, or omission to act, while associated with a member, formerly associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, or, as to any act or practice, or omission to act, while a participant, was a participant, the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm, a person associated with such a firm, or, as to any act, practice, or omission to act, while associated with such firm, a person formerly associated with such a firm, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and may require or permit any person to file with it a statement in writing, under oath or otherwise as the Commission shall determine, as to all the facts and circumstances concerning the matter to be investigated. The Commission is authorized in its discretion, to publish information concerning any such violations, and to investigate any facts, conditions, practices, or matters which it may deem necessary or proper to aid in the enforcement of such provisions, in the prescribing of rules and regulations under this chapter, or in securing information to serve as a basis for recommending further legislation concerning the matters to which this chapter relates.

(2) On request from a foreign securities authority, the Commission may provide assistance in accordance with this paragraph if the requesting authority states that the requesting authority is conducting an investigation which it deems necessary to determine whether any person has violated, is violating, or is about to violate any laws or rules relating to securities matters that the requesting authority administers or enforces. The Commission may, in its discretion, conduct such investigation as the Commission deems necessary to collect information and evidence pertinent to the request for assistance. Such assistance may be provided without regard to whether the facts stated in the request would also constitute a violation of the laws of the United States. In deciding whether to provide such assistance, the Commission shall consider whether (A) the requesting authority has agreed to provide reciprocal assistance in securities matters to the Commission; and (B) compliance with the request would prejudice the public interest of the United States.

### **(b) Attendance of witnesses; production of records**

For the purpose of any such investigation, or any other proceeding under this chapter, any member of the Commission or any officer designated by it is empowered to administer oaths and affirmations, subpoena witnesses, compel their attendance, take evidence, and require the production of any books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, or other records which the Commission deems relevant or material to the inquiry. Such attendance of witnesses and the production of any such records may be required from any place in the United States or any State at any designated place of hearing.

### **(c) Judicial enforcement of investigative power of Commission; refusal to obey subpoena; criminal sanctions**

In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpoena issued to, any person, the Commission may invoke the aid of any court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which such investigation or proceeding is carried on, or where such person resides or carries on business, in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, and other records. And such court may issue an order requiring such person to appear before the Commission or member or officer designated by the Commission, there to produce records, if so ordered, or to give testimony touching the matter under investigation or in question; and any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof. All process in any such case may be served in the judicial district whereof such person is an inhabitant or wherever he may be found. Any person who shall, without just cause, fail or refuse to attend and testify or to answer any lawful inquiry or to produce books, papers, correspondence, memoranda, and other records, if in his power so to do, in obedience to the subpoena of the Commission, shall be guilty of a misdemeanor and, upon conviction, shall be subject to a fine of not more than \$1,000 or to imprisonment for a term of not more than one year, or both.

### **(d) Injunction proceedings; authority of court to prohibit persons from serving as officers and directors; money penalties in civil actions**

(1) Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person is engaged or is about to engage in acts or practices constituting a violation of any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or a person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, it may in its discretion bring an action in the proper district court of the United States, the United States District Court for the District of Columbia, or the United States courts of any territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, to enjoin such acts or practices, and upon a proper showing a permanent or temporary injunction or restraining order shall be granted without bond. The Commission may transmit such evidence as may be available concerning such acts or practices as may constitute a violation of any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder to the Attorney General, who may, in his discretion, institute the necessary criminal proceedings under this chapter.

(2) **AUTHORITY OF COURT TO PROHIBIT PERSONS FROM SERVING AS OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS.**—In any proceeding under paragraph (1) of this subsection, the court may prohibit, conditionally or unconditionally, and permanently or for such period of time as it shall determine, any person who violated section 78j(b) of this title or the rules or regulations thereunder from acting as an officer or director of any issuer that has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78l of this title or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78o(d) of this title if the person's conduct demonstrates unfitness to serve as an officer or director of any such issuer.

(3) **MONEY PENALTIES IN CIVIL ACTIONS.**—

(A) **AUTHORITY OF COMMISSION.**—Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person has violated any provision of this chapter, the rules or regulations thereunder, or a cease-and-desist order entered by the Commission pursuant to section 78u-3 of this title, other than by committing a violation subject to a penalty pursuant to section 78u-1 of this title, the Commission may bring an action in a United States district court to seek, and the court shall have jurisdiction to impose, upon a proper showing, a civil penalty to be paid by the person who committed such violation.

(B) **AMOUNT OF PENALTY.**—

(i) **FIRST TIER.**—The amount of the penalty shall be determined by the court in light of the facts and circumstances. For each violation, the amount of the penalty shall not exceed the greater of (I) \$5,000 for a natural person or \$50,000 for any other person, or (II) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation.

(ii) **SECOND TIER.**—Notwithstanding clause (i), the amount of penalty for each such violation shall not exceed the greater of (I) \$50,000 for a natural person or \$250,000 for any other person, or (II) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation, if the violation described in subparagraph (A) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement.

(iii) **THIRD TIER.**—Notwithstanding clauses (i) and (ii), the amount of penalty for each such violation shall not exceed the greater of (I) \$100,000 for a natural person or \$500,000 for any other person, or (II) the gross amount of pecuniary gain to such defendant as a result of the violation, if—

(aa) the violation described in subparagraph (A) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement; and

(bb) such violation directly or indirectly resulted in substantial losses or created a significant risk of substantial losses to other persons.

(C) **PROCEDURES FOR COLLECTION.**—

(i) **PAYMENT OF PENALTY TO TREASURY.**—A penalty imposed under this section shall be payable into the Treasury of the United States, except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title and section 78u-6 of this title.

(ii) **COLLECTION OF PENALTIES.**—If a person upon whom such a penalty is imposed shall fail to pay such penalty within the time prescribed in the court's order, the Commission may refer the matter to the Attorney General who shall recover such penalty by action in the appropriate United States district court.

(iii) **REMEDY NOT EXCLUSIVE.**—The actions authorized by this paragraph may be brought in addition to any other action that the Commission or the Attorney General is entitled to bring.

(iv) **JURISDICTION AND VENUE.**—For purposes of section 78aa of this title, actions under this paragraph shall be actions to enforce a liability or a duty created by this chapter.

(D) **SPECIAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO A VIOLATION OF A CEASE-AND-DESIST ORDER.**—In an action to enforce a cease-and-desist order entered by the Commission pursuant to section 78u-3 of this title, each separate violation of such order shall be a separate offense, except that in the case of a violation through a continuing failure to comply with the order, each day of the failure to comply shall be deemed a separate offense.

(4) **PROHIBITION OF ATTORNEYS' FEES PAID FROM COMMISSION DISGORGEMENT FUNDS.**—Except as otherwise ordered by the court upon motion by the Commission, or, in the case of an administrative action, as otherwise ordered by the Commission, funds disgorged as the result of an action brought by the Commission in Federal court, or as a result of any Commission administrative action, shall not be distributed as payment for attorneys' fees or expenses incurred by private parties seeking distribution of the disgorged funds.

(5) **EQUITABLE RELIEF.**—In any action or proceeding brought or instituted by the Commission under any provision of the securities laws, the Commission may seek, and any Federal court may grant, any equitable relief that may be appropriate or necessary for the benefit of investors.

(6) **AUTHORITY OF A COURT TO PROHIBIT PERSONS FROM PARTICIPATING IN AN OFFERING OF PENNY STOCK.**—

(A) **IN GENERAL.**—In any proceeding under paragraph (1) against any person participating in, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct who was participating in, an offering of penny stock, the court may prohibit that person from participating in an offering of penny stock, conditionally or unconditionally, and permanently or for such period of time as the court shall determine.

(B) **DEFINITION.**—For purposes of this paragraph, the term "person participating in an offering of penny stock" includes any person engaging in activities with a broker, dealer, or issuer for purposes of issuing, trading, or inducing or attempting to induce the purchase or sale of, any penny stock. The Commission may, by rule or regulation, define such term to include other activities, and may, by rule, regulation, or order, exempt any person or class of persons, in whole or in part, conditionally or unconditionally, from inclusion in such term.

**(e) Mandamus**

Upon application of the Commission the district courts of the United States and the United States courts of any territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States shall have jurisdiction to issue writs of mandamus, injunctions, and orders commanding (1) any person to comply with the provisions of this chapter, the rules, regulations, and orders thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title, (2) any national securities exchange or registered securities association to enforce compliance by its members and persons associated with its members with the provisions of this chapter, the rules, regulations, and orders thereunder, and the rules of such exchange or association, or (3) any registered clearing agency to enforce compliance by its participants with the provisions of the rules of such clearing agency.

**(f) Rules of self-regulatory organizations or Board**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Commission shall not bring any action pursuant to subsection (d) or (e) of this section against any person for violation of, or to command compliance with, the rules of a self-regulatory organization or the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board unless it appears to the Commission that (1) such self-regulatory organization or the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board is unable or unwilling to take appropriate action against such person in the public interest and for the protection of investors, or (2) such action is otherwise necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

**(g) Consolidation of actions; consent of Commission**

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1407(a) of title 28, or any other provision of law, no action for equitable relief instituted by the Commission pursuant to the securities laws shall be consolidated or coordinated with other actions not brought by the Commission, even though such other actions may involve common questions of fact, unless such consolidation is consented to by the Commission.

**(h) Access to records**

(1) The Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] shall apply with respect to the Commission, except as otherwise provided in this subsection.

(2) Notwithstanding section 1105 or 1107 of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3405 or 3407], the Commission may have access to and obtain copies of, or the information contained in financial records of a customer from a financial institution without prior notice to the customer upon an ex parte showing to an appropriate United States district court that the Commission seeks such financial records pursuant to a subpoena issued in conformity with the requirements of section 19(b) <sup>1</sup> of the Securities Act of 1933, section 21(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78u(b)], section 42(b) of the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a-41(b)], or section 209(b) of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b-9(b)], and that the Commission has reason to believe that—

(A) delay in obtaining access to such financial records, or the required notice, will result in—

- (i) flight from prosecution;
- (ii) destruction of or tampering with evidence;
- (iii) transfer of assets or records outside the territorial limits of the United States;
- (iv) improper conversion of investor assets; or
- (v) impeding the ability of the Commission to identify or trace the source or disposition of funds involved in any securities transaction;

(B) such financial records are necessary to identify or trace the record or beneficial ownership interest in any security;

(C) the acts, practices or course of conduct under investigation involve—

- (i) the dissemination of materially false or misleading information concerning any security, issuer, or market, or the failure to make disclosures required under the securities laws, which remain uncorrected; or
- (ii) a financial loss to investors or other persons protected under the securities laws which remains substantially uncompensated; or

(D) the acts, practices or course of conduct under investigation—

- (i) involve significant financial speculation in securities; or
- (ii) endanger the stability of any financial or investment intermediary.

(3) Any application under paragraph (2) for a delay in notice shall be made with reasonable specificity.

(4)(A) Upon a showing described in paragraph (2), the presiding judge or magistrate judge shall enter an ex parte order granting the requested delay for a period not to exceed ninety days and an order prohibiting the financial institution involved from disclosing that records have been obtained or that a request for records has been made.

(B) Extensions of the period of delay of notice provided in subparagraph (A) of up to ninety days each may be granted by the court upon application, but only in accordance with this subsection or section 1109(a), (b)(1), or (b)(2) of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3409(a), (b)(1), or (b)(2)].

(C) Upon expiration of the period of delay of notification ordered under subparagraph (A) or (B), the customer shall be served with or mailed a copy of the subpoena insofar as it applies to the customer together with the following notice which shall describe with reasonable specificity the nature of the investigation for which the Commission sought the financial records:

"Records or information concerning your transactions which are held by the financial institution named in the attached subpoena were supplied to the Securities and Exchange Commission on (date). Notification was withheld pursuant to a determination by the (title of court so ordering) under section 21(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that (state reason). The purpose of the investigation or official proceeding was (state purpose)."

(5) Upon application by the Commission, all proceedings pursuant to paragraphs (2) and (4) shall be held in camera and the records thereof sealed until expiration of the period of delay or such other date as the presiding judge or magistrate judge may permit.

(6) Repealed. Pub. L. 114–113, div. O, title VII, §708, Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 3030.

(7)(A) Following the expiration of the period of delay of notification ordered by the court pursuant to paragraph (4) of this subsection, the customer may, upon motion, reopen the proceeding in the district court which issued the order. If the presiding judge or magistrate judge finds that the movant is the customer to whom the records obtained by the Commission pertain, and that the Commission has obtained financial records or information contained therein in violation of this subsection, other than paragraph (1), it may order that the customer be granted civil penalties against the Commission in an amount equal to the sum of—

- (i) \$100 without regard to the volume of records involved;
- (ii) any out-of-pocket damages sustained by the customer as a direct result of the disclosure; and
- (iii) if the violation is found to have been willful, intentional, and without good faith, such punitive damages as the court may allow, together with the costs of the action and reasonable attorney's fees as determined by the court.

(B) Upon a finding that the Commission has obtained financial records or information contained therein in violation of this subsection, other than paragraph (1), the court, in its discretion, may also or in the alternative issue injunctive relief to require the Commission to comply with this subsection with respect to any subpoena which the Commission issues in the future for financial records of such customer for purposes of the same investigation.

(C) Whenever the court determines that the Commission has failed to comply with this subsection, other than paragraph (1), and the court finds that the circumstances raise questions of whether an officer or employee of the Commission acted in a willful and intentional manner and without good faith with respect to the violation, the Office of Personnel Management shall promptly initiate a proceeding to determine whether disciplinary action is warranted against the agent or employee who was primarily responsible for the violation. After investigating and considering the evidence submitted, the Office of Personnel Management shall submit its findings and recommendations to the Commission and shall send copies of the findings and recommendations to the officer or employee or his representative. The Commission shall take the corrective action that the Office of Personnel Management recommends.

(8) The relief described in paragraphs (7) and (10) shall be the only remedies or sanctions available to a customer for a violation of this subsection, other than paragraph (1), and nothing herein or in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] shall be deemed to prohibit the use in any investigation or proceeding of financial records, or the information contained therein, obtained by a subpoena issued by the Commission. In the case of an unsuccessful action under paragraph (7), the court shall award the costs of the action and attorney's fees to the Commission if the presiding judge or magistrate judge finds that the customer's claims were made in bad faith.

(9)(A) The Commission may transfer financial records or the information contained therein to any government authority if the Commission proceeds as a transferring agency in accordance with section 1112 of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3412], except that the customer notice required under section 1112(b) or (c) of such Act [12 U.S.C. 3412(b) or (c)] may be delayed upon a showing by the Commission, in accordance with the procedure set forth in paragraphs (4) and (5), that one or more of subparagraphs (A) through (D) of paragraph (2) apply.

(B) The Commission may, without notice to the customer pursuant to section 1112 or the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3412], transfer financial records or the information contained therein to a State securities agency or to the Department of Justice. Financial records or information transferred by the Commission to the Department of Justice or to a State securities agency pursuant to the provisions of this subparagraph may be disclosed or used only in an administrative, civil, or criminal action or investigation by the Department of Justice or the State securities agency which arises out of or relates to the acts, practices, or courses of conduct investigated by the Commission, except that if the Department of Justice or the State securities agency determines that the information should be disclosed or used for any other purpose, it may do so if it notifies the customer, except as otherwise provided in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.], within 30 days of its determination, or complies with the requirements of section 1109 of such Act [12 U.S.C. 3409] regarding delay of notice.

(10) Any government authority violating paragraph (9) shall be subject to the procedures and penalties applicable to the Commission under paragraph (7)(A) with respect to a violation by the Commission in obtaining financial records.

(11) Notwithstanding the provisions of this subsection, the Commission may obtain financial records from a financial institution or transfer such records in accordance with provisions of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.].

(12) Nothing in this subsection shall enlarge or restrict any rights of a financial institution to challenge requests for records made by the Commission under existing law. Nothing in this subsection shall entitle a customer to assert any rights of a financial institution.

(13) Unless the context otherwise requires, all terms defined in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] which are common to this subsection shall have the same meaning as in such Act.

### (i) Information to CFTC

The Commission shall provide the Commodity Futures Trading Commission with notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the Commission against any broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 78o(b)(11) of this title, any exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(g) of this title, or any national securities association registered pursuant to section 78o-3(k) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §21, 48 Stat. 899; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §7, 49 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 91-452, title II, §212, Oct. 15, 1970, 84 Stat. 929; Pub. L. 94-29, §17, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 154; Pub. L. 96-433, §§3, 4, Oct. 10, 1980, 94 Stat. 1855, 1858; Pub. L. 98-376, §2, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1264; Pub. L. 100-181, title III, §323, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259; Pub. L. 100-704, §§3(a)(1), 6(b), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4677, 4681; Pub. L. 101-429, title II, §201, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 935; Pub. L. 101-650, title III, §321, Dec. 1, 1990, 104 Stat. 5117; Pub. L. 104-67, title I, §103(b)(2), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 756; Pub. L. 106-554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(5)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-426; Pub. L. 107-204, §3(b)(2), title III, §§305(a)(1), (b), 308(d)(1), title VI, §603(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 778, 779, 785, 794; Pub. L. 111-203, title IX, §§923(b)(1), 929F(c), (d), (g)(2), 986(a)(3), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1849, 1854, 1855, 1935; Pub. L. 114-113, div. O, title VII, §708, Dec. 18, 2015, 129 Stat. 3030.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (b), (d), (e), and (f), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (h)(1), (8), (9)(B), (11), and (13), is title XI of Pub. L. 95-630, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3697, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§3401 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3401 of Title 12 and Tables.

Section 19(b) of the Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (h)(2), was redesignated section 19(c) by Pub. L. 107-204, title I, §108(a)(1), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 768, and is classified to section 77s(c) of this title.

Section 21(h) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in the paragraph within quotation marks following subsec. (h)(4)(C), is classified to subsection (h) of this section.

## AMENDMENTS

**2015**—Subsec. (h)(6). Pub. L. 114-113 struck out par. (6) which read as follows: "The Commission shall compile an annual tabulation of the occasions on which the Commission used each separate subparagraph or clause of paragraph (2) of this subsection or the provisions of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 to obtain access to financial records of a customer and include it in its annual report to the Congress. Section 1121(b) of the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 shall not apply with respect to the Commission."

**2010**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111-203, §929F(g)(2), in first sentence, substituted ", a person associated with such a firm, or, as to any act, practice, or omission to act, while associated with such firm, a person formerly associated with such a firm" for "or a person associated with such a firm".

Pub. L. 111-203, §929F(c), (d), in first sentence, inserted ", or, as to any act or practice, or omission to act, while associated with a member, formerly associated" after "member or a person associated" and "or, as to any act or practice, or omission to act, while a participant, was a participant," after "in which such person is a participant,".

Subsec. (d)(3)(C)(i). Pub. L. 111-203, §923(b)(1), inserted "and section 78u-6 of this title" after "section 7246 of this title".

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 111-203, §986(a)(3), struck out "section 18(c) of the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935," after "section 21(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934,".

**2002**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 107-204, §3(b)(2)(A), inserted "the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm," after "is a participant,".

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 107-204, §3(b)(2)(B), inserted "the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with such a firm," after "is a participant,".

Subsec. (d)(2). Pub. L. 107-204, §305(a)(1), substituted "unfitness" for "substantial unfitness".

Subsec. (d)(3)(C)(i). Pub. L. 107-204, §308(d)(1), inserted ", except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title" before period at end.

Subsec. (d)(5). Pub. L. 107-204, §305(b), added par. (5).

Subsec. (d)(6). Pub. L. 107-204, §603(a), added par. (6).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 107-204, §3(b)(2)(C), inserted "the rules of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board, of which such person is a registered public accounting firm or a person associated with

such a firm," after "is a participant,".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–204, §3(b)(2)(D), inserted "or the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board" after "self-regulatory organization" in two places.

**2000**—Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 106–554 added subsec. (i).

**1995**—Subsec. (d)(4). Pub. L. 104–67 added par. (4).

**1990**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101–429 designated existing provision as par. (1) and added pars. (2) and (3).

**1988**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–704, §6(b), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–704, §3(a)(1), redesignated par. (1) as entire subsec. (d) and struck out par. (2) which provided civil penalties for purchasing or selling securities while in possession of material nonpublic information.

**1987**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–181, §323(1), substituted "Whenever" for "Wherever".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100–181, §323(2), struck out ", the United States District Court for the District of Columbia," after "the district courts of the United States".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100–181, §323(3), struck out "The term 'securities laws' as used herein and in subsection (h) of this section includes the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.), the Public Utility Holding Company Act of 1935 (15 U.S.C. 79 et seq.), the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (15 U.S.C. 77aaa et seq.), the Investment Company Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.), the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.), and the Securities Investor Protection Act of 1970 (15 U.S.C. 78aaa et seq.)." See 15 U.S.C. 78c(a)(47).

**1984**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 98–376 designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2).

**1980**—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96–433, §4, inserted "and in subsection (h) of this section."

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 96–433, §3, added subsec. (h).

**1975**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29, §17(1), expanded the Commission's power to conduct investigations to include violations of the rules of a national securities exchange, registered securities association, registered clearing agency, or the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94–29, §17(2), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and amended it generally, substituting "has engaged, is engaged, or is about to engage" for "is engaged or about to engage", "any provision" for "the provisions", "the rules or regulations" for "or of any rule or regulation", and "such a showing" for "a proper showing", and inserting "the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such persons is a member or a person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board," in first sentence and inserting "as may constitute a violation of any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder" in second sentence. Former subsec. (d) was repealed by Pub. L. 91–452. See 1970 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94–29, §17(2), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e) and amended it generally, substituting "mandamus, injunctions, and orders commanding (1) any person to comply with the provisions of this chapter, the rules, regulations, and orders thereunder, the rules of a national securities exchange or registered securities association of which such person is a member or person associated with a member, the rules of a registered clearing agency in which such person is a participant, the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title" for "mandamus commanding any person to comply with the provisions of this chapter or any order of the Commission made in pursuance thereof or with any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title" and adding cls. (2) and (3). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d).

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 94–29, §17(3), added subsecs. (f) and (g). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (e).

**1970**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 91–452 struck out subsec. (d) which related to immunity from prosecution of any individual compelled to testify or produce evidence, documentary or otherwise, after claiming his privilege against self-incrimination.

**1936**—Subsec. (f). Act May 27, 1936, inserted "or with any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title".

## CHANGE OF NAME

Words "magistrate judge" substituted for "magistrate" wherever appearing in subsec. (h)(4)(A), (5), (7)(A), (8) pursuant to section 321 of Pub. L. 101–650, set out as a note under section 631 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 77i of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by section 3(a)(1) of Pub. L. 100–704 not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as a note under section 78o of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–376 effective Aug. 10, 1984, see section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT**

Pub. L. 96–433, §5, Oct. 10, 1980, 94 Stat. 1858, provided that:

"(a) The amendments made by section 1 of this Act [amending section 78fff–3 of this title] shall take effect on the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 10, 1980].

"(b) The amendments made by sections 2, 3, and 4 of this Act [amending this section and section 3422 of Title 12, Banks and Banking] shall take effect on November 10, 1980. Nothing in this Act [amending this section and section 78fff–3 of this title and section 3422 of Title 12] or in the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978 [12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.] shall apply to any Securities and Exchange Commission subpoena issued prior to such date."

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1970 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–452 effective on sixtieth day following Oct. 15, 1970, see section 260 of Pub. L. 91–452, set out as an Effective Date; Savings Provision note under section 6001 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

### **SAVINGS PROVISION**

Amendment by Pub. L. 91–452 not to affect any immunity to which any individual is entitled under this section by reason of any testimony given before the sixtieth day following Oct. 15, 1970, see section 260 of Pub. L. 91–452, set out as an Effective Date; Savings Provision note under section 6001 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

### **CONSTRUCTION OF 1995 AMENDMENT**

Nothing in amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a Construction note under section 78j–1 of this title.

### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### **PROMOTION OF RECIPROCAL SUBPOENA ENFORCEMENT**

Pub. L. 105–353, title I, §102, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3233, provided that:

"(a) COMMISSION ACTION.—The Securities and Exchange Commission, in consultation with State securities commissions (or any agencies or offices performing like functions), shall seek to encourage the adoption of State laws providing for reciprocal enforcement by State securities commissions of subpoenas issued

by another State securities commission seeking to compel persons to attend, testify in, or produce documents or records in connection with an action or investigation by a State securities commission of an alleged violation of State securities laws.

"(b) REPORT.—Not later than 24 months after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 3, 1998], the Securities and Exchange Commission (hereafter in this section referred to as the 'Commission') shall submit a report to the Congress—

"(1) identifying the States that have adopted laws described in subsection (a);

"(2) describing the actions undertaken by the Commission and State securities commissions to promote the adoption of such laws; and

"(3) identifying any further actions that the Commission recommends for such purposes."

<sup>1</sup> *See References in Text note below.*

## **§78u–1. Civil penalties for insider trading**

### **(a) Authority to impose civil penalties**

#### **(1) Judicial actions by Commission authorized**

Whenever it shall appear to the Commission that any person has violated any provision of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder by purchasing or selling a security or security-based swap agreement while in possession of material, nonpublic information in, or has violated any such provision by communicating such information in connection with, a transaction on or through the facilities of a national securities exchange or from or through a broker or dealer, and which is not part of a public offering by an issuer of securities other than standardized options or security futures products, the Commission—

(A) may bring an action in a United States district court to seek, and the court shall have jurisdiction to impose, a civil penalty to be paid by the person who committed such violation; and

(B) may, subject to subsection (b)(1), bring an action in a United States district court to seek, and the court shall have jurisdiction to impose, a civil penalty to be paid by a person who, at the time of the violation, directly or indirectly controlled the person who committed such violation.

#### **(2) Amount of penalty for person who committed violation**

The amount of the penalty which may be imposed on the person who committed such violation shall be determined by the court in light of the facts and circumstances, but shall not exceed three times the profit gained or loss avoided as a result of such unlawful purchase, sale, or communication.

#### **(3) Amount of penalty for controlling person**

The amount of the penalty which may be imposed on any person who, at the time of the violation, directly or indirectly controlled the person who committed such violation, shall be determined by the court in light of the facts and circumstances, but shall not exceed the greater of \$1,000,000, or three times the amount of the profit gained or loss avoided as a result of such controlled person's violation. If such controlled person's violation was a violation by communication, the profit gained or loss avoided as a result of the violation shall, for purposes of this paragraph only, be deemed to be limited to the profit gained or loss avoided by the person or persons to whom the controlled person directed such communication.

### **(b) Limitations on liability**

#### **(1) Liability of controlling persons**

No controlling person shall be subject to a penalty under subsection (a)(1)(B) unless the Commission establishes that—

(A) such controlling person knew or recklessly disregarded the fact that such controlled person was likely to engage in the act or acts constituting the violation and failed to take appropriate steps to prevent such act or acts before they occurred; or

(B) such controlling person knowingly or recklessly failed to establish, maintain, or enforce any policy or procedure required under section 78o(f) <sup>1</sup> of this title or section 80b–4a of this title and such failure substantially contributed to or permitted the occurrence of the act or acts constituting the violation.

#### **(2) Additional restrictions on liability**

No person shall be subject to a penalty under subsection (a) solely by reason of employing another person who is subject to a penalty under such subsection, unless such employing person is liable as a controlling person under paragraph (1) of this subsection. Section 78t(a) of this title shall not apply to actions under subsection (a) of this section.

### **(c) Authority of Commission**

The Commission, by such rules, regulations, and orders as it considers necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors, may exempt, in whole or in part, either unconditionally or upon specific terms

and conditions, any person or transaction or class of persons or transactions from this section.

**(d) Procedures for collection**

**(1) Payment of penalty to Treasury**

A penalty imposed under this section shall be payable into the Treasury of the United States, except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title and section 78u-6 of this title.

**(2) Collection of penalties**

If a person upon whom such a penalty is imposed shall fail to pay such penalty within the time prescribed in the court's order, the Commission may refer the matter to the Attorney General who shall recover such penalty by action in the appropriate United States district court.

**(3) Remedy not exclusive**

The actions authorized by this section may be brought in addition to any other actions that the Commission or the Attorney General are entitled to bring.

**(4) Jurisdiction and venue**

For purposes of section 78aa of this title, actions under this section shall be actions to enforce a liability or a duty created by this chapter.

**(5) Statute of limitations**

No action may be brought under this section more than 5 years after the date of the purchase or sale. This section shall not be construed to bar or limit in any manner any action by the Commission or the Attorney General under any other provision of this chapter, nor shall it bar or limit in any manner any action to recover penalties, or to seek any other order regarding penalties, imposed in an action commenced within 5 years of such transaction.

**(e) Definition**

For purposes of this section, "profit gained" or "loss avoided" is the difference between the purchase or sale price of the security and the value of that security as measured by the trading price of the security a reasonable period after public dissemination of the nonpublic information.

**(f) Limitation on Commission authority**

The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 78c-1(b) of this title.

**(g) Duty of Members and employees of Congress**

**(1) In general**

Subject to the rule of construction under section 10 of the STOCK Act and solely for purposes of the insider trading prohibitions arising under this chapter, including section 78j(b) of this title and Rule 10b-5 thereunder, each Member of Congress or employee of Congress owes a duty arising from a relationship of trust and confidence to the Congress, the United States Government, and the citizens of the United States with respect to material, nonpublic information derived from such person's position as a Member of Congress or employee of Congress or gained from the performance of such person's official responsibilities.

**(2) Definitions**

In this subsection—

(A) the term "Member of Congress" means a member of the Senate or House of Representatives, a Delegate to the House of Representatives, and the Resident Commissioner from Puerto Rico; and

(B) the term "employee of Congress" means—

(i) any individual (other than a Member of Congress), whose compensation is disbursed by the Secretary of the Senate or the Chief Administrative Officer of the House of Representatives; and

(ii) any other officer or employee of the legislative branch (as defined in section 109(11) of the Ethics in Government Act of 1978 (5 U.S.C. App. 109(11))).

**(3) Rule of construction**

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the construction of the existing antifraud provisions of the securities laws or the authority of the Commission under those provisions.

**(h) Duty of other Federal officials**

**(1) In general**

Subject to the rule of construction under section 10 of the STOCK Act and solely for purposes of the insider trading prohibitions arising under this chapter, including section 78j(b) of this title, and Rule 10b-5 thereunder, each executive branch employee, each judicial officer, and each judicial employee owes a duty arising from a relationship of trust and confidence to the United States Government and the citizens of the United States with respect to material, nonpublic information derived from such person's position as an executive branch employee, judicial officer, or judicial employee or gained from the performance of such person's official responsibilities.

**(2) Definitions**

In this subsection—

(A) the term "executive branch employee"—

(i) has the meaning given the term "employee" under section 2105 of title 5;

(ii) includes—

(I) the President;

(II) the Vice President; and

(III) an employee of the United States Postal Service or the Postal Regulatory Commission;

(B) the term "judicial employee" has the meaning given that term in section 109(8) of the Ethics in Government Act of 1978 (5 U.S.C. App. 109(8)); and

(C) the term "judicial officer" has the meaning given that term under section 109(10) of the Ethics in Government Act of 1978 (5 U.S.C. App. 109(10)).

### (3) Rule of construction

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the construction of the existing antifraud provisions of the securities laws or the authority of the Commission under those provisions.

#### (i) Participation in initial public offerings

An individual described in section 101(f) of the Ethics in Government Act of 1978 may not purchase securities that are the subject of an initial public offering (within the meaning given such term in section 78l(f)(1)(G)(i) of this title) in any manner other than is available to members of the public generally.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §21A, as added Pub. L. 100–704, §3(a)(2), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4677; amended Pub. L. 101–429, title II, §202(b), Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 938; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(4), title III, §303(k), (l)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-426, 2763A-456, 2763A-457; Pub. L. 107–204, title III, §308(d)(2), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 785; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §762(d)(7), title IX, §923(b)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1761, 1850; Pub. L. 112–105, §§4(b)(2), 9(b)(2)(B), 12, Apr. 4, 2012, 126 Stat. 292, 297, 300.)

#### AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (d)(4), (5), was in the original "this title", and this chapter, referred to in subsecs. (g)(1) and (h)(1), was in the original "this Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Subsec. (f) of section 78o of this title, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B), was redesignated (g) by Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §929X(c)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1870.

Section 10 of the STOCK Act, referred to in subsecs. (g)(1) and (h)(1), is section 10 of Pub. L. 112–105, which is set out as a note under section 101 of the Ethics in Government Act of 1978, Pub. L. 95–521, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 109 of the Ethics in Government Act of 1978, referred to in subsecs. (g)(2)(B)(ii) and (h)(2)(B), (C), is section 109 of Pub. L. 95–521, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 101(f) of the Ethics in Government Act of 1978, referred to in subsec. (i), is section 101(f) of Pub. L. 95–521, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### AMENDMENTS

**2012**—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 112–105, §4(b)(2), added subsec. (g).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 112–105, §9(b)(2)(B), added subsec. (h).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 112–105, §12, added subsec. (i).

**2010**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §762(d)(7)(A), struck out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "security-based swap agreement" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 111–203, §923(b)(2)(A), struck out "(subject to subsection (e) of this section)" after "shall" and inserted "and section 78u–6 of this title" after "section 7246 of this title".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–203, §923(b)(2)(B), (C), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e) and struck out former subsec. (e). Prior to amendment, text of subsec. (e) read as follows: "Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (d)(1) of this section, there shall be paid from amounts imposed as a penalty under this section and recovered by the Commission or the Attorney General, such sums, not to exceed 10 percent of such amounts, as the Commission deems appropriate, to the person or persons who provide information leading to the imposition of such penalty. Any determinations under this subsection, including whether, to whom, or in what amount to make payments, shall be in the sole discretion of the

Commission, except that no such payment shall be made to any member, officer, or employee of any appropriate regulatory agency, the Department of Justice, or a self-regulatory organization. Any such determination shall be final and not subject to judicial review."

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–203, §923(b)(2)(C), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (e).

Pub. L. 111–203, §762(d)(7)(B), which directed amendment of subsec. (g) by striking out "(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)", was executed by making the strike out after "security-based swap agreements" in subsec. (f), to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the redesignation of subsec. (g) as (f) by Pub. L. 111–203, §923(b)(2)(C). See above and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–203, §923(b)(2)(C), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f).

**2002**—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 107–204 inserted ", except as otherwise provided in section 7246 of this title" before period at end.

**2000**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(k)], inserted "or security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)" after "purchasing or selling a security" in introductory provisions.

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §205(a)(4)], substituted "standardized options or security futures products, the Commission—" for "standardized options, the Commission—" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title III, §303(l)], added subsec. (g).

**1990**—Pub. L. 101–429 inserted "for insider trading" in section catchline.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by section 923(b)(2) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 762(d)(7) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as an Effective Date of 1988 Amendment note under section 78o of this title.

### **AFFIRMATION OF DUTY OF GOVERNMENT OFFICERS AND EMPLOYEES**

Pub. L. 112–105, §4(b)(1), Apr. 4, 2012, 126 Stat. 292, provided that: "The purpose of the amendment made by this subsection [amending this section] is to affirm a duty arising from a relationship of trust and confidence owed by each Member of Congress and each employee of Congress."

Pub. L. 112–105, §9(b)(2)(A), Apr. 4, 2012, 126 Stat. 297, provided that: "The purpose of the amendment made by this paragraph [amending this section] is to affirm a duty arising from a relationship of trust and confidence owed by each executive branch employee, judicial officer, and judicial employee."

### **CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS**

Pub. L. 100–704, §2, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4677, provided that: "The Congress finds that—

"(1) the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.] governing trading while in possession of material, nonpublic information are, as required by such Act, necessary and appropriate in the public interest and for the protection of investors;

"(2) the Commission has, within the limits of accepted administrative and judicial construction of such rules and regulations, enforced such rules and regulations vigorously, effectively, and fairly; and

"(3) nonetheless, additional methods are appropriate to deter and prosecute violations of such rules and regulations."

### **COMMISSION RECOMMENDATIONS FOR ADDITIONAL CIVIL PENALTY AUTHORITY REQUIRED**

Pub. L. 100–704, §3(c), Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4680, provided that: "The Securities and Exchange Commission shall, within 60 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 19, 1988], submit to each House of the Congress any recommendations the Commission considers appropriate with respect to the extension of the Commission's authority to seek civil penalties or impose administrative fines for violations other than those described in section 21A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78u–1] (as added by this section)."

<sup>1</sup> *See References in Text note below.*

## §78u–2. Civil remedies in administrative proceedings

### (a) Commission authority to assess money penalties

#### (1) In general

In any proceeding instituted pursuant to sections 78o(b)(4), 78o(b)(6), 78o–6, 78o–4, 78o–5, 78o–7, or 78q–1 of this title against any person, the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may impose a civil penalty if it finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such penalty is in the public interest and that such person—

(A) has willfully violated any provision of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.], the Investment Company Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et seq.], the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 [15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.], or this chapter, or the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board;

(B) has willfully aided, abetted, counseled, commanded, induced, or procured such a violation by any other person;

(C) has willfully made or caused to be made in any application for registration or report required to be filed with the Commission or with any other appropriate regulatory agency under this chapter, or in any proceeding before the Commission with respect to registration, any statement which was, at the time and in the light of the circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, or has omitted to state in any such application or report any material fact which is required to be stated therein; or

(D) has failed reasonably to supervise, within the meaning of section 78o(b)(4)(E) of this title, with a view to preventing violations of the provisions of such statutes, rules and regulations, another person who commits such a violation, if such other person is subject to his supervision; <sup>1</sup>

#### (2) Cease-and-desist proceedings

In any proceeding instituted under section 78u–3 of this title against any person, the Commission may impose a civil penalty, if the Commission finds, on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing, that such person—

(A) is violating or has violated any provision of this chapter, or any rule or regulation issued under this chapter;

or

(B) is or was a cause of the violation of any provision of this chapter, or any rule or regulation issued under this chapter.

### (b) Maximum amount of penalty

#### (1) First tier

The maximum amount of penalty for each act or omission described in subsection (a) shall be \$5,000 for a natural person or \$50,000 for any other person.

#### (2) Second tier

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be \$50,000 for a natural person or \$250,000 for any other person if the act or omission described in subsection (a) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement.

#### (3) Third tier

Notwithstanding paragraphs (1) and (2), the maximum amount of penalty for each such act or omission shall be \$100,000 for a natural person or \$500,000 for any other person if—

(A) the act or omission described in subsection (a) involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement; and

(B) such act or omission directly or indirectly resulted in substantial losses or created a significant risk of substantial losses to other persons or resulted in substantial pecuniary gain to the person who committed the act or omission.

### (c) Determination of public interest

In considering under this section whether a penalty is in the public interest, the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may consider—

(1) whether the act or omission for which such penalty is assessed involved fraud, deceit, manipulation, or deliberate or reckless disregard of a regulatory requirement;

- (2) the harm to other persons resulting either directly or indirectly from such act or omission;
- (3) the extent to which any person was unjustly enriched, taking into account any restitution made to persons injured by such behavior;
- (4) whether such person previously has been found by the Commission, another appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to have violated the Federal securities laws, State securities laws, or the rules of a self-regulatory organization, has been enjoined by a court of competent jurisdiction from violations of such laws or rules, or has been convicted by a court of competent jurisdiction of violations of such laws or of any felony or misdemeanor described in section 78o(b)(4)(B) of this title;
- (5) the need to deter such person and other persons from committing such acts or omissions; and
- (6) such other matters as justice may require.

**(d) Evidence concerning ability to pay**

In any proceeding in which the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may impose a penalty under this section, a respondent may present evidence of the respondent's ability to pay such penalty. The Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may, in its discretion, consider such evidence in determining whether such penalty is in the public interest. Such evidence may relate to the extent of such person's ability to continue in business and the collectability of a penalty, taking into account any other claims of the United States or third parties upon such person's assets and the amount of such person's assets.

**(e) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement**

In any proceeding in which the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may impose a penalty under this section, the Commission or the appropriate regulatory agency may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

**(f) Security-based swaps**

**(1) Clearing agency**

Any clearing agency that knowingly or recklessly evades or participates in or facilitates an evasion of the requirements of section 78c-3 of this title shall be liable for a civil money penalty in twice the amount otherwise available for a violation of section 78c-3 of this title.

**(2) Security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant**

Any security-based swap dealer or major security-based swap participant that knowingly or recklessly evades or participates in or facilitates an evasion of the requirements of section 78c-3 of this title shall be liable for a civil money penalty in twice the amount otherwise available for a violation of section 78c-3 of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §21B, as added Pub. L. 101-429, title II, §202(a), Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 937; amended Pub. L. 107-204, title V, §501(b), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 793; Pub. L. 109-291, §4(b)(1)(B), Sept. 29, 2006, 120 Stat. 1337; Pub. L. 111-203, title VII, §773, title IX, §929P(a)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1802, 1863.)

**AMENDMENT OF SECTION**

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761-774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111-203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(A), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

The Investment Company Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(A), is title I of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 789, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§80a-1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80a-51 of this title and Tables.

The Investment Advisers Act of 1940, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(A), is title II of act Aug. 22, 1940, ch. 686, 54 Stat. 847, which is classified generally to subchapter II (§80b-1 et seq.) of chapter 2D of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 80b-20 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(A), (C), (2), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

**AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111-203, §929P(a)(2), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and inserted heading, inserted "that such penalty is in the public interest and" before "that such person—" in introductory provisions, redesignated former pars. (1) to (4) as subpars. (A) to (D), respectively, of par. (1)

and realigned margins, struck out concluding provisions which read "and that such penalty is in the public interest.", and added par. (2).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–203, §773, added subsec. (f).

**2006**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 109–291 inserted "78o–7," after "78o–5," in introductory provisions.

**2002**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–204 inserted "78o–6," before "78o–4," in introductory provisions.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 929P(a)(2) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Amendment by section 773 of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 77g of this title.

<sup>1</sup> *So in original. The semicolon probably should be a period.*

## §78u–3. Cease-and-desist proceedings

### (a) Authority of Commission

If the Commission finds, after notice and opportunity for hearing, that any person is violating, has violated, or is about to violate any provision of this chapter, or any rule or regulation thereunder, the Commission may publish its findings and enter an order requiring such person, and any other person that is, was, or would be a cause of the violation, due to an act or omission the person knew or should have known would contribute to such violation, to cease and desist from committing or causing such violation and any future violation of the same provision, rule, or regulation. Such order may, in addition to requiring a person to cease and desist from committing or causing a violation, require such person to comply, or to take steps to effect compliance, with such provision, rule, or regulation, upon such terms and conditions and within such time as the Commission may specify in such order. Any such order may, as the Commission deems appropriate, require future compliance or steps to effect future compliance, either permanently or for such period of time as the Commission may specify, with such provision, rule, or regulation with respect to any security, any issuer, or any other person.

### (b) Hearing

The notice instituting proceedings pursuant to subsection (a) shall fix a hearing date not earlier than 30 days nor later than 60 days after service of the notice unless an earlier or a later date is set by the Commission with the consent of any respondent so served.

### (c) Temporary order

#### (1) In general

Whenever the Commission determines that the alleged violation or threatened violation specified in the notice instituting proceedings pursuant to subsection (a), or the continuation thereof, is likely to result in significant dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest, including, but not limited to, losses to the Securities Investor Protection Corporation, prior to the completion of the proceedings, the Commission may enter a temporary order requiring the respondent to cease and desist from the violation or threatened violation and to take such action to prevent the violation or threatened violation and to prevent dissipation or conversion of assets, significant harm to investors, or substantial harm to the public interest as the Commission deems appropriate pending completion of such proceedings. Such an order shall be entered only after notice and opportunity for a hearing, unless the Commission determines that notice and hearing prior to entry would be impracticable or contrary to the public interest. A temporary order shall become effective upon service upon the respondent and, unless set aside, limited, or suspended by the Commission or a court of competent jurisdiction, shall remain effective and enforceable pending the completion of the proceedings.

#### (2) Applicability

Paragraph (1) shall apply only to a respondent that acts, or, at the time of the alleged misconduct acted, as a broker, dealer, investment adviser, investment company, municipal securities dealer, government securities broker, government securities dealer, registered public accounting firm (as defined in section 7201 of this title), or transfer

agent, or is, or was at the time of the alleged misconduct, an associated person of, or a person seeking to become associated with, any of the foregoing.

### **(3) Temporary freeze**

#### **(A) In general**

##### **(i) Issuance of temporary order**

Whenever, during the course of a lawful investigation involving possible violations of the Federal securities laws by an issuer of publicly traded securities or any of its directors, officers, partners, controlling persons, agents, or employees, it shall appear to the Commission that it is likely that the issuer will make extraordinary payments (whether compensation or otherwise) to any of the foregoing persons, the Commission may petition a Federal district court for a temporary order requiring the issuer to escrow, subject to court supervision, those payments in an interest-bearing account for 45 days.

##### **(ii) Standard**

A temporary order shall be entered under clause (i), only after notice and opportunity for a hearing, unless the court determines that notice and hearing prior to entry of the order would be impracticable or contrary to the public interest.

##### **(iii) Effective period**

A temporary order issued under clause (i) shall—

(I) become effective immediately;

(II) be served upon the parties subject to it; and

(III) unless set aside, limited or suspended by a court of competent jurisdiction, shall remain effective and enforceable for 45 days.

##### **(iv) Extensions authorized**

The effective period of an order under this subparagraph may be extended by the court upon good cause shown for not longer than 45 additional days, provided that the combined period of the order shall not exceed 90 days.

#### **(B) Process on determination of violations**

##### **(i) Violations charged**

If the issuer or other person described in subparagraph (A) is charged with any violation of the Federal securities laws before the expiration of the effective period of a temporary order under subparagraph (A) (including any applicable extension period), the order shall remain in effect, subject to court approval, until the conclusion of any legal proceedings related thereto, and the affected issuer or other person, shall have the right to petition the court for review of the order.

##### **(ii) Violations not charged**

If the issuer or other person described in subparagraph (A) is not charged with any violation of the Federal securities laws before the expiration of the effective period of a temporary order under subparagraph (A) (including any applicable extension period), the escrow shall terminate at the expiration of the 45-day effective period (or the expiration of any extension period, as applicable), and the disputed payments (with accrued interest) shall be returned to the issuer or other affected person.

#### **(d) Review of temporary orders**

##### **(1) Commission review**

At any time after the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order pursuant to subsection (c), the respondent may apply to the Commission to have the order set aside, limited, or suspended. If the respondent has been served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing, the respondent may, within 10 days after the date on which the order was served, request a hearing on such application and the Commission shall hold a hearing and render a decision on such application at the earliest possible time.

##### **(2) Judicial review**

Within—

(A) 10 days after the date the respondent was served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered with a prior Commission hearing, or

(B) 10 days after the Commission renders a decision on an application and hearing under paragraph (1), with respect to any temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing,

the respondent may apply to the United States district court for the district in which the respondent resides or has its principal place of business, or for the District of Columbia, for an order setting aside, limiting, or suspending the effectiveness or enforcement of the order, and the court shall have jurisdiction to enter such an order. A respondent served with a temporary cease-and-desist order entered without a prior Commission hearing may not apply to the

court except after hearing and decision by the Commission on the respondent's application under paragraph (1) of this subsection.

**(3) No automatic stay of temporary order**

The commencement of proceedings under paragraph (2) of this subsection shall not, unless specifically ordered by the court, operate as a stay of the Commission's order.

**(4) Exclusive review**

Section 78y of this title shall not apply to a temporary order entered pursuant to this section.

**(e) Authority to enter order requiring accounting and disgorgement**

In any cease-and-desist proceeding under subsection (a), the Commission may enter an order requiring accounting and disgorgement, including reasonable interest. The Commission is authorized to adopt rules, regulations, and orders concerning payments to investors, rates of interest, periods of accrual, and such other matters as it deems appropriate to implement this subsection.

**(f) Authority of the Commission to prohibit persons from serving as officers or directors**

In any cease-and-desist proceeding under subsection (a), the Commission may issue an order to prohibit, conditionally or unconditionally, and permanently or for such period of time as it shall determine, any person who has violated section 78j(b) of this title or the rules or regulations thereunder, from acting as an officer or director of any issuer that has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78l of this title, or that is required to file reports pursuant to section 78o(d) of this title, if the conduct of that person demonstrates unfitness to serve as an officer or director of any such issuer.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §21C, as added Pub. L. 101-429, title II, §203, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 939; amended Pub. L. 107-204, §3(b)(3), title XI, §§1103, 1105(a), July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 749, 807, 809; Pub. L. 111-203, title IX, §985(b)(8), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1934.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

Section 7201 of this title, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), was in the original "section 2 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002", Pub. L. 107-204, which enacted section 7201 of this title and amended section 78c of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 111-203 substituted "Paragraph (1)" for "paragraph (1) subsection".

**2002**—Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 107-204, §1103(b), substituted "paragraph (1)" for "This".

Pub. L. 107-204, §3(b)(3), inserted "registered public accounting firm (as defined in section 7201 of this title)," after "government securities dealer,".

Subsec. (c)(3). Pub. L. 107-204, §1103(a), added par. (3).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107-204, §1105(a), added subsec. (f).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111-203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101-429, set out in an Effective Date of 1990 Amendment note under section 77g of this title.

## §78u-4. Private securities litigation

### (a) Private class actions

#### (1) In general

The provisions of this subsection shall apply in each private action arising under this chapter that is brought as a plaintiff class action pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

#### (2) Certification filed with complaint

##### (A) In general

Each plaintiff seeking to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class shall provide a sworn certification, which shall be personally signed by such plaintiff and filed with the complaint, that—

- (i) states that the plaintiff has reviewed the complaint and authorized its filing;
- (ii) states that the plaintiff did not purchase the security that is the subject of the complaint at the direction of plaintiff's counsel or in order to participate in any private action arising under this chapter;
- (iii) states that the plaintiff is willing to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class, including providing testimony at deposition and trial, if necessary;
- (iv) sets forth all of the transactions of the plaintiff in the security that is the subject of the complaint during the class period specified in the complaint;
- (v) identifies any other action under this chapter, filed during the 3-year period preceding the date on which the certification is signed by the plaintiff, in which the plaintiff has sought to serve as a representative party on behalf of a class; and
- (vi) states that the plaintiff will not accept any payment for serving as a representative party on behalf of a class beyond the plaintiff's pro rata share of any recovery, except as ordered or approved by the court in accordance with paragraph (4).

**(B) Nonwaiver of attorney-client privilege**

The certification filed pursuant to subparagraph (A) shall not be construed to be a waiver of the attorney-client privilege.

**(3) Appointment of lead plaintiff**

**(A) Early notice to class members**

**(i) In general**

Not later than 20 days after the date on which the complaint is filed, the plaintiff or plaintiffs shall cause to be published, in a widely circulated national business-oriented publication or wire service, a notice advising members of the purported plaintiff class—

- (I) of the pendency of the action, the claims asserted therein, and the purported class period; and
- (II) that, not later than 60 days after the date on which the notice is published, any member of the purported class may move the court to serve as lead plaintiff of the purported class.

**(ii) Multiple actions**

If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this chapter is filed, only the plaintiff or plaintiffs in the first filed action shall be required to cause notice to be published in accordance with clause (i).

**(iii) Additional notices may be required under Federal rules**

Notice required under clause (i) shall be in addition to any notice required pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(B) Appointment of lead plaintiff**

**(i) In general**

Not later than 90 days after the date on which a notice is published under subparagraph (A)(i), the court shall consider any motion made by a purported class member in response to the notice, including any motion by a class member who is not individually named as a plaintiff in the complaint or complaints, and shall appoint as lead plaintiff the member or members of the purported plaintiff class that the court determines to be most capable of adequately representing the interests of class members (hereafter in this paragraph referred to as the "most adequate plaintiff") in accordance with this subparagraph.

**(ii) Consolidated actions**

If more than one action on behalf of a class asserting substantially the same claim or claims arising under this chapter has been filed, and any party has sought to consolidate those actions for pretrial purposes or for trial, the court shall not make the determination required by clause (i) until after the decision on the motion to consolidate is rendered. As soon as practicable after such decision is rendered, the court shall appoint the most adequate plaintiff as lead plaintiff for the consolidated actions in accordance with this paragraph.

**(iii) Rebuttable presumption**

**(I) In general**

Subject to subclause (II), for purposes of clause (i), the court shall adopt a presumption that the most adequate plaintiff in any private action arising under this chapter is the person or group of persons that—

- (aa) has either filed the complaint or made a motion in response to a notice under subparagraph (A)(i);
- (bb) in the determination of the court, has the largest financial interest in the relief sought by the class; and
- (cc) otherwise satisfies the requirements of Rule 23 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(II) Rebuttal evidence**

The presumption described in subclause (I) may be rebutted only upon proof by a member of the purported plaintiff class that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff—

- (aa) will not fairly and adequately protect the interests of the class; or

(bb) is subject to unique defenses that render such plaintiff incapable of adequately representing the class.

**(iv) Discovery**

For purposes of this subparagraph, discovery relating to whether a member or members of the purported plaintiff class is the most adequate plaintiff may be conducted by a plaintiff only if the plaintiff first demonstrates a reasonable basis for a finding that the presumptively most adequate plaintiff is incapable of adequately representing the class.

**(v) Selection of lead counsel**

The most adequate plaintiff shall, subject to the approval of the court, select and retain counsel to represent the class.

**(vi) Restrictions on professional plaintiffs**

Except as the court may otherwise permit, consistent with the purposes of this section, a person may be a lead plaintiff, or an officer, director, or fiduciary of a lead plaintiff, in no more than 5 securities class actions brought as plaintiff class actions pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure during any 3-year period.

**(4) Recovery by plaintiffs**

The share of any final judgment or of any settlement that is awarded to a representative party serving on behalf of a class shall be equal, on a per share basis, to the portion of the final judgment or settlement awarded to all other members of the class. Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to limit the award of reasonable costs and expenses (including lost wages) directly relating to the representation of the class to any representative party serving on behalf of a class.

**(5) Restrictions on settlements under seal**

The terms and provisions of any settlement agreement of a class action shall not be filed under seal, except that on motion of any party to the settlement, the court may order filing under seal for those portions of a settlement agreement as to which good cause is shown for such filing under seal. For purposes of this paragraph, good cause shall exist only if publication of a term or provision of a settlement agreement would cause direct and substantial harm to any party.

**(6) Restrictions on payment of attorneys' fees and expenses**

Total attorneys' fees and expenses awarded by the court to counsel for the plaintiff class shall not exceed a reasonable percentage of the amount of any damages and prejudgment interest actually paid to the class.

**(7) Disclosure of settlement terms to class members**

Any proposed or final settlement agreement that is published or otherwise disseminated to the class shall include each of the following statements, along with a cover page summarizing the information contained in such statements:

**(A) Statement of plaintiff recovery**

The amount of the settlement proposed to be distributed to the parties to the action, determined in the aggregate and on an average per share basis.

**(B) Statement of potential outcome of case**

**(i) Agreement on amount of damages**

If the settling parties agree on the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this chapter, a statement concerning the average amount of such potential damages per share.

**(ii) Disagreement on amount of damages**

If the parties do not agree on the average amount of damages per share that would be recoverable if the plaintiff prevailed on each claim alleged under this chapter, a statement from each settling party concerning the issue or issues on which the parties disagree.

**(iii) Inadmissibility for certain purposes**

A statement made in accordance with clause (i) or (ii) concerning the amount of damages shall not be admissible in any Federal or State judicial action or administrative proceeding, other than an action or proceeding arising out of such statement.

**(C) Statement of attorneys' fees or costs sought**

If any of the settling parties or their counsel intend to apply to the court for an award of attorneys' fees or costs from any fund established as part of the settlement, a statement indicating which parties or counsel intend to make such an application, the amount of fees and costs that will be sought (including the amount of such fees and costs determined on an average per share basis), and a brief explanation supporting the fees and costs sought. Such information shall be clearly summarized on the cover page of any notice to a party of any proposed or final settlement agreement.

**(D) Identification of lawyers' representatives**

The name, telephone number, and address of one or more representatives of counsel for the plaintiff class who will be reasonably available to answer questions from class members concerning any matter contained in any notice of settlement published or otherwise disseminated to the class.

**(E) Reasons for settlement**

A brief statement explaining the reasons why the parties are proposing the settlement.

**(F) Other information**

Such other information as may be required by the court.

**(8) Security for payment of costs in class actions**

In any private action arising under this chapter that is certified as a class action pursuant to the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the court may require an undertaking from the attorneys for the plaintiff class, the plaintiff class, or both, or from the attorneys for the defendant, the defendant, or both, in such proportions and at such times as the court determines are just and equitable, for the payment of fees and expenses that may be awarded under this subsection.

**(9) Attorney conflict of interest**

If a plaintiff class is represented by an attorney who directly owns or otherwise has a beneficial interest in the securities that are the subject of the litigation, the court shall make a determination of whether such ownership or other interest constitutes a conflict of interest sufficient to disqualify the attorney from representing the plaintiff class.

**(b) Requirements for securities fraud actions****(1) Misleading statements and omissions**

In any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff alleges that the defendant—

- (A) made an untrue statement of a material fact; or
- (B) omitted to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements made, in the light of the circumstances in which they were made, not misleading;

the complaint shall specify each statement alleged to have been misleading, the reason or reasons why the statement is misleading, and, if an allegation regarding the statement or omission is made on information and belief, the complaint shall state with particularity all facts on which that belief is formed.

**(2) Required state of mind****(A) In general**

Except as provided in subparagraph (B), in any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff may recover money damages only on proof that the defendant acted with a particular state of mind, the complaint shall, with respect to each act or omission alleged to violate this chapter, state with particularity facts giving rise to a strong inference that the defendant acted with the required state of mind.

**(B) Exception**

In the case of an action for money damages brought against a credit rating agency or a controlling person under this chapter, it shall be sufficient, for purposes of pleading any required state of mind in relation to such action, that the complaint state with particularity facts giving rise to a strong inference that the credit rating agency knowingly or recklessly failed—

- (i) to conduct a reasonable investigation of the rated security with respect to the factual elements relied upon by its own methodology for evaluating credit risk; or
- (ii) to obtain reasonable verification of such factual elements (which verification may be based on a sampling technique that does not amount to an audit) from other sources that the credit rating agency considered to be competent and that were independent of the issuer and underwriter.

**(3) Motion to dismiss; stay of discovery****(A) Dismissal for failure to meet pleading requirements**

In any private action arising under this chapter, the court shall, on the motion of any defendant, dismiss the complaint if the requirements of paragraphs (1) and (2) are not met.

**(B) Stay of discovery**

In any private action arising under this chapter, all discovery and other proceedings shall be stayed during the pendency of any motion to dismiss, unless the court finds upon the motion of any party that particularized discovery is necessary to preserve evidence or to prevent undue prejudice to that party.

**(C) Preservation of evidence****(i) In general**

During the pendency of any stay of discovery pursuant to this paragraph, unless otherwise ordered by the court, any party to the action with actual notice of the allegations contained in the complaint shall treat all

documents, data compilations (including electronically recorded or stored data), and tangible objects that are in the custody or control of such person and that are relevant to the allegations, as if they were the subject of a continuing request for production of documents from an opposing party under the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(ii) Sanction for willful violation**

A party aggrieved by the willful failure of an opposing party to comply with clause (i) may apply to the court for an order awarding appropriate sanctions.

**(D) Circumvention of stay of discovery**

Upon a proper showing, a court may stay discovery proceedings in any private action in a State court, as necessary in aid of its jurisdiction, or to protect or effectuate its judgments, in an action subject to a stay of discovery pursuant to this paragraph.

**(4) Loss causation**

In any private action arising under this chapter, the plaintiff shall have the burden of proving that the act or omission of the defendant alleged to violate this chapter caused the loss for which the plaintiff seeks to recover damages.

**(c) Sanctions for abusive litigation**

**(1) Mandatory review by court**

In any private action arising under this chapter, upon final adjudication of the action, the court shall include in the record specific findings regarding compliance by each party and each attorney representing any party with each requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion.

**(2) Mandatory sanctions**

If the court makes a finding under paragraph (1) that a party or attorney violated any requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure as to any complaint, responsive pleading, or dispositive motion, the court shall impose sanctions on such party or attorney in accordance with Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure. Prior to making a finding that any party or attorney has violated Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, the court shall give such party or attorney notice and an opportunity to respond.

**(3) Presumption in favor of attorneys' fees and costs**

**(A) In general**

Subject to subparagraphs (B) and (C), for purposes of paragraph (2), the court shall adopt a presumption that the appropriate sanction—

(i) for failure of any responsive pleading or dispositive motion to comply with any requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred as a direct result of the violation; and

(ii) for substantial failure of any complaint to comply with any requirement of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure is an award to the opposing party of the reasonable attorneys' fees and other expenses incurred in the action.

**(B) Rebuttal evidence**

The presumption described in subparagraph (A) may be rebutted only upon proof by the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed that—

(i) the award of attorneys' fees and other expenses will impose an unreasonable burden on that party or attorney and would be unjust, and the failure to make such an award would not impose a greater burden on the party in whose favor sanctions are to be imposed; or

(ii) the violation of Rule 11(b) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure was de minimis.

**(C) Sanctions**

If the party or attorney against whom sanctions are to be imposed meets its burden under subparagraph (B), the court shall award the sanctions that the court deems appropriate pursuant to Rule 11 of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure.

**(d) Defendant's right to written interrogatories**

In any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff may recover money damages, the court shall, when requested by a defendant, submit to the jury a written interrogatory on the issue of each such defendant's state of mind at the time the alleged violation occurred.

**(e) Limitation on damages**

**(1) In general**

Except as provided in paragraph (2), in any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff seeks to establish damages by reference to the market price of a security, the award of damages to the plaintiff shall not exceed the difference between the purchase or sale price paid or received, as appropriate, by the plaintiff for the

subject security and the mean trading price of that security during the 90-day period beginning on the date on which the information correcting the misstatement or omission that is the basis for the action is disseminated to the market.

**(2) Exception**

In any private action arising under this chapter in which the plaintiff seeks to establish damages by reference to the market price of a security, if the plaintiff sells or repurchases the subject security prior to the expiration of the 90-day period described in paragraph (1), the plaintiff's damages shall not exceed the difference between the purchase or sale price paid or received, as appropriate, by the plaintiff for the security and the mean trading price of the security during the period beginning immediately after dissemination of information correcting the misstatement or omission and ending on the date on which the plaintiff sells or repurchases the security.

**(3) "Mean trading price" defined**

For purposes of this subsection, the "mean trading price" of a security shall be an average of the daily trading price of that security, determined as of the close of the market each day during the 90-day period referred to in paragraph (1).

**(f) Proportionate liability**

**(1) Applicability**

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to create, affect, or in any manner modify, the standard for liability associated with any action arising under the securities laws.

**(2) Liability for damages**

**(A) Joint and several liability**

Any covered person against whom a final judgment is entered in a private action shall be liable for damages jointly and severally only if the trier of fact specifically determines that such covered person knowingly committed a violation of the securities laws.

**(B) Proportionate liability**

**(i) In general**

Except as provided in subparagraph (A), a covered person against whom a final judgment is entered in a private action shall be liable solely for the portion of the judgment that corresponds to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person, as determined under paragraph (3).

**(ii) Recovery by and costs of covered person**

In any case in which a contractual relationship permits, a covered person that prevails in any private action may recover the attorney's fees and costs of that covered person in connection with the action.

**(3) Determination of responsibility**

**(A) In general**

In any private action, the court shall instruct the jury to answer special interrogatories, or if there is no jury, shall make findings, with respect to each covered person and each of the other persons claimed by any of the parties to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff, including persons who have entered into settlements with the plaintiff or plaintiffs, concerning—

- (i) whether such person violated the securities laws;
- (ii) the percentage of responsibility of such person, measured as a percentage of the total fault of all persons who caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff; and
- (iii) whether such person knowingly committed a violation of the securities laws.

**(B) Contents of special interrogatories or findings**

The responses to interrogatories, or findings, as appropriate, under subparagraph (A) shall specify the total amount of damages that the plaintiff is entitled to recover and the percentage of responsibility of each covered person found to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs.

**(C) Factors for consideration**

In determining the percentage of responsibility under this paragraph, the trier of fact shall consider—

- (i) the nature of the conduct of each covered person found to have caused or contributed to the loss incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs; and
- (ii) the nature and extent of the causal relationship between the conduct of each such person and the damages incurred by the plaintiff or plaintiffs.

**(4) Uncollectible share**

**(A) In general**

Notwithstanding paragraph (2)(B), upon <sup>1</sup> motion made not later than 6 months after a final judgment is entered in any private action, the court determines that all or part of the share of the judgment of the covered person is not collectible against that covered person, and is also not collectible against a covered person described in

paragraph (2)(A), each covered person described in paragraph (2)(B) shall be liable for the uncollectible share as follows:

**(i) Percentage of net worth**

Each covered person shall be jointly and severally liable for the uncollectible share if the plaintiff establishes that—

- (I) the plaintiff is an individual whose recoverable damages under the final judgment are equal to more than 10 percent of the net worth of the plaintiff; and
- (II) the net worth of the plaintiff is equal to less than \$200,000.

**(ii) Other plaintiffs**

With respect to any plaintiff not described in subclauses (I) and (II) of clause (i), each covered person shall be liable for the uncollectible share in proportion to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person, except that the total liability of a covered person under this clause may not exceed 50 percent of the proportionate share of that covered person, as determined under paragraph (3)(B).

**(iii) Net worth**

For purposes of this subparagraph, net worth shall be determined as of the date immediately preceding the date of the purchase or sale (as applicable) by the plaintiff of the security that is the subject of the action, and shall be equal to the fair market value of assets, minus liabilities, including the net value of the investments of the plaintiff in real and personal property (including personal residences).

**(B) Overall limit**

In no case shall the total payments required pursuant to subparagraph (A) exceed the amount of the uncollectible share.

**(C) Covered persons subject to contribution**

A covered person against whom judgment is not collectible shall be subject to contribution and to any continuing liability to the plaintiff on the judgment.

**(5) Right of contribution**

To the extent that a covered person is required to make an additional payment pursuant to paragraph (4), that covered person may recover contribution—

- (A) from the covered person originally liable to make the payment;
- (B) from any covered person liable jointly and severally pursuant to paragraph (2)(A);
- (C) from any covered person held proportionately liable pursuant to this paragraph who is liable to make the same payment and has paid less than his or her proportionate share of that payment; or
- (D) from any other person responsible for the conduct giving rise to the payment that would have been liable to make the same payment.

**(6) Nondisclosure to jury**

The standard for allocation of damages under paragraphs (2) and (3) and the procedure for reallocation of uncollectible shares under paragraph (4) shall not be disclosed to members of the jury.

**(7) Settlement discharge**

**(A) In general**

A covered person who settles any private action at any time before final verdict or judgment shall be discharged from all claims for contribution brought by other persons. Upon entry of the settlement by the court, the court shall enter a bar order constituting the final discharge of all obligations to the plaintiff of the settling covered person arising out of the action. The order shall bar all future claims for contribution arising out of the action—

- (i) by any person against the settling covered person; and
- (ii) by the settling covered person against any person, other than a person whose liability has been extinguished by the settlement of the settling covered person.

**(B) Reduction**

If a covered person enters into a settlement with the plaintiff prior to final verdict or judgment, the verdict or judgment shall be reduced by the greater of—

- (i) an amount that corresponds to the percentage of responsibility of that covered person; or
- (ii) the amount paid to the plaintiff by that covered person.

**(8) Contribution**

A covered person who becomes jointly and severally liable for damages in any private action may recover contribution from any other person who, if joined in the original action, would have been liable for the same damages. A claim for contribution shall be determined based on the percentage of responsibility of the claimant and of each person against whom a claim for contribution is made.

**(9) Statute of limitations for contribution**

In any private action determining liability, an action for contribution shall be brought not later than 6 months after the entry of a final, nonappealable judgment in the action, except that an action for contribution brought by a covered person who was required to make an additional payment pursuant to paragraph (4) may be brought not later than 6 months after the date on which such payment was made.

### **(10) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) a covered person "knowingly commits a violation of the securities laws"—

(i) with respect to an action that is based on an untrue statement of material fact or omission of a material fact necessary to make the statement not misleading, if—

(I) that covered person makes an untrue statement of a material fact, with actual knowledge that the representation is false, or omits to state a fact necessary in order to make the statement made not misleading, with actual knowledge that, as a result of the omission, one of the material representations of the covered person is false; and

(II) persons are likely to reasonably rely on that misrepresentation or omission; and

(ii) with respect to an action that is based on any conduct that is not described in clause (i), if that covered person engages in that conduct with actual knowledge of the facts and circumstances that make the conduct of that covered person a violation of the securities laws;

(B) reckless conduct by a covered person shall not be construed to constitute a knowing commission of a violation of the securities laws by that covered person;

(C) the term "covered person" means—

(i) a defendant in any private action arising under this chapter; or

(ii) a defendant in any private action arising under section 77k of this title, who is an outside director of the issuer of the securities that are the subject of the action; and

(D) the term "outside director" shall have the meaning given such term by rule or regulation of the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §21D, as added and amended Pub. L. 104–67, title I, §101(b), title II, §201(a), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 743, 758; Pub. L. 105–353, title I, §101(b)(2), title III, §301(b)(13), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3233, 3236; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §933(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1883.)

### **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1), (3)(A)(iii), (B)(iii)(I)(cc), (vi), (8), (b)(3)(C)(i), and (c), are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

### **AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 111–203 designated existing provisions as subpar. (A), inserted heading, substituted "Except as provided in subparagraph (B), in any" for "In any", and added subpar. (B).

**1998**—Subsec. (b)(3)(D). Pub. L. 105–353, §101(b)(2), added subpar. (D).

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 105–353, §301(b)(13)(B), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f).

Subsec. (g)(2)(B)(i). Pub. L. 105–353, §301(b)(13)(A), substituted "subparagraph (A)" for "paragraph (1)".

**1995**—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 104–67, §201(a), added subsec. (g).

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by section 101(b)(2) of Pub. L. 105–353 not to affect or apply to any action commenced before and pending on Nov. 3, 1998, see section 101(c) of Pub. L. 105–353, set out as a note under section 77p of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 104–67 not to affect or apply to any private action arising under securities laws commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 202 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 77k of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE**

This section not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as an Effective Date of 1995 Amendment note under section 77I of this title.

## CONSTRUCTION

Nothing in section to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104–67, set out as a note under section 78j–1 of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be preceded by "if,".

## §78u–5. Application of safe harbor for forward-looking statements

### (a) Applicability

This section shall apply only to a forward-looking statement made by—

- (1) an issuer that, at the time that the statement is made, is subject to the reporting requirements of section 78m(a) of this title or section 78o(d) of this title;
- (2) a person acting on behalf of such issuer;
- (3) an outside reviewer retained by such issuer making a statement on behalf of such issuer; or
- (4) an underwriter, with respect to information provided by such issuer or information derived from information provided by such issuer.

### (b) Exclusions

Except to the extent otherwise specifically provided by rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, this section shall not apply to a forward-looking statement—

- (1) that is made with respect to the business or operations of the issuer, if the issuer—
  - (A) during the 3-year period preceding the date on which the statement was first made—
    - (i) was convicted of any felony or misdemeanor described in clauses (i) through (iv) of section 78o(b)(4)(B) of this title; or
    - (ii) has been made the subject of a judicial or administrative decree or order arising out of a governmental action that—
      - (I) prohibits future violations of the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;
      - (II) requires that the issuer cease and desist from violating the antifraud provisions of the securities laws; or
      - (III) determines that the issuer violated the antifraud provisions of the securities laws;
  - (B) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with an offering of securities by a blank check company;
  - (C) issues penny stock;
  - (D) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a rollup transaction; or
  - (E) makes the forward-looking statement in connection with a going private transaction; or
- (2) that is—
  - (A) included in a financial statement prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - (B) contained in a registration statement of, or otherwise issued by, an investment company;
  - (C) made in connection with a tender offer;
  - (D) made in connection with an initial public offering;
  - (E) made in connection with an offering by, or relating to the operations of, a partnership, limited liability company, or a direct participation investment program; or
  - (F) made in a disclosure of beneficial ownership in a report required to be filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78m(d) of this title.

### (c) Safe harbor

#### (1) In general

Except as provided in subsection (b), in any private action arising under this chapter that is based on an untrue statement of a material fact or omission of a material fact necessary to make the statement not misleading, a person referred to in subsection (a) shall not be liable with respect to any forward-looking statement, whether written or oral, if and to the extent that—

- (A) the forward-looking statement is—
  - (i) identified as a forward-looking statement, and is accompanied by meaningful cautionary statements identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those in the forward-looking statement; or
  - (ii) immaterial; or

(B) the plaintiff fails to prove that the forward-looking statement—

- (i) if made by a natural person, was made with actual knowledge by that person that the statement was false or misleading; or
- (ii) if made by a business entity; <sup>1</sup> was—
  - (I) made by or with the approval of an executive officer of that entity; and
  - (II) made or approved by such officer with actual knowledge by that officer that the statement was false or misleading.

## **(2) Oral forward-looking statements**

In the case of an oral forward-looking statement made by an issuer that is subject to the reporting requirements of section 78m(a) of this title or section 78o(d) of this title, or by a person acting on behalf of such issuer, the requirement set forth in paragraph (1)(A) shall be deemed to be satisfied—

(A) if the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by a cautionary statement—

- (i) that the particular oral statement is a forward-looking statement; and
- (ii) that the actual results might differ materially from those projected in the forward-looking statement; and

(B) if—

- (i) the oral forward-looking statement is accompanied by an oral statement that additional information concerning factors that could cause actual results to materially differ from those in the forward-looking statement is contained in a readily available written document, or portion thereof;
- (ii) the accompanying oral statement referred to in clause (i) identifies the document, or portion thereof, that contains the additional information about those factors relating to the forward-looking statement; and
- (iii) the information contained in that written document is a cautionary statement that satisfies the standard established in paragraph (1)(A).

## **(3) Availability**

Any document filed with the Commission or generally disseminated shall be deemed to be readily available for purposes of paragraph (2).

## **(4) Effect on other safe harbors**

The exemption provided for in paragraph (1) shall be in addition to any exemption that the Commission may establish by rule or regulation under subsection (g).

## **(d) Duty to update**

Nothing in this section shall impose upon any person a duty to update a forward-looking statement.

## **(e) Dispositive motion**

On any motion to dismiss based upon subsection (c)(1), the court shall consider any statement cited in the complaint and any cautionary statement accompanying the forward-looking statement, which are not subject to material dispute, cited by the defendant.

## **(f) Stay pending decision on motion**

In any private action arising under this chapter, the court shall stay discovery (other than discovery that is specifically directed to the applicability of the exemption provided for in this section) during the pendency of any motion by a defendant for summary judgment that is based on the grounds that—

- (1) the statement or omission upon which the complaint is based is a forward-looking statement within the meaning of this section; and
- (2) the exemption provided for in this section precludes a claim for relief.

## **(g) Exemption authority**

In addition to the exemptions provided for in this section, the Commission may, by rule or regulation, provide exemptions from or under any provision of this chapter, including with respect to liability that is based on a statement or that is based on projections or other forward-looking information, if and to the extent that any such exemption is consistent with the public interest and the protection of investors, as determined by the Commission.

## **(h) Effect on other authority of Commission**

Nothing in this section limits, either expressly or by implication, the authority of the Commission to exercise similar authority or to adopt similar rules and regulations with respect to forward-looking statements under any other statute under which the Commission exercises rulemaking authority.

## **(i) Definitions**

For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

### **(1) Forward-looking statement**

The term "forward-looking statement" means—

(A) a statement containing a projection of revenues, income (including income loss), earnings (including earnings loss) per share, capital expenditures, dividends, capital structure, or other financial items;

(B) a statement of the plans and objectives of management for future operations, including plans or objectives relating to the products or services of the issuer;

(C) a statement of future economic performance, including any such statement contained in a discussion and analysis of financial condition by the management or in the results of operations included pursuant to the rules and regulations of the Commission;

(D) any statement of the assumptions underlying or relating to any statement described in subparagraph (A), (B), or (C);

(E) any report issued by an outside reviewer retained by an issuer, to the extent that the report assesses a forward-looking statement made by the issuer; or

(F) a statement containing a projection or estimate of such other items as may be specified by rule or regulation of the Commission.

## **(2) Investment company**

The term "investment company" has the same meaning as in section 80a-3(a) of this title.

## **(3) Going private transaction**

The term "going private transaction" has the meaning given that term under the rules or regulations of the Commission issued pursuant to section 78m(e) of this title.

## **(4) Person acting on behalf of an issuer**

The term "person acting on behalf of an issuer" means any officer, director, or employee of such issuer.

## **(5) Other terms**

The terms "blank check company", "rollup transaction", "partnership", "limited liability company", "executive officer of an entity" and "direct participation investment program", have the meanings given those terms by rule or regulation of the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §21E, as added Pub. L. 104-67, title I, §102(b), Dec. 22, 1995, 109 Stat. 753.)

## **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (c)(1), (f), and (g), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## **EFFECTIVE DATE**

This section not to affect or apply to any private action arising under this chapter or title I of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.), commenced before and pending on Dec. 22, 1995, see section 108 of Pub. L. 104-67, set out as an Effective Date of 1995 Amendment note under section 77I of this title.

## **CONSTRUCTION**

Nothing in section to be deemed to create or ratify any implied right of action, or to prevent Commission, by rule or regulation, from restricting or otherwise regulating private actions under this chapter, see section 203 of Pub. L. 104-67, set out as a note under section 78j-1 of this title.

<sup>1</sup> *So in original. The semicolon probably should be a comma.*

## **§78u-6. Securities whistleblower incentives and protection**

### **(a) Definitions**

In this section the following definitions shall apply:

#### **(1) Covered judicial or administrative action**

The term "covered judicial or administrative action" means any judicial or administrative action brought by the Commission under the securities laws that results in monetary sanctions exceeding \$1,000,000.

#### **(2) Fund**

The term "Fund" means the Securities and Exchange Commission Investor Protection Fund.

#### **(3) Original information**

The term "original information" means information that—

(A) is derived from the independent knowledge or analysis of a whistleblower;

(B) is not known to the Commission from any other source, unless the whistleblower is the original source of the information; and

(C) is not exclusively derived from an allegation made in a judicial or administrative hearing, in a governmental report, hearing, audit, or investigation, or from the news media, unless the whistleblower is a source of the information.

#### **(4) Monetary sanctions**

The term "monetary sanctions", when used with respect to any judicial or administrative action, means—

- (A) any monies, including penalties, disgorgement, and interest, ordered to be paid; and
- (B) any monies deposited into a disgorgement fund or other fund pursuant to section 308(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (15 U.S.C. 7246(b)), as a result of such action or any settlement of such action.

#### **(5) Related action**

The term "related action", when used with respect to any judicial or administrative action brought by the Commission under the securities laws, means any judicial or administrative action brought by an entity described in subclauses (I) through (IV) of subsection (h)(2)(D)(i) that is based upon the original information provided by a whistleblower pursuant to subsection (a) that led to the successful enforcement of the Commission action.

#### **(6) Whistleblower**

The term "whistleblower" means any individual who provides, or 2 or more individuals acting jointly who provide, information relating to a violation of the securities laws to the Commission, in a manner established, by rule or regulation, by the Commission.

### **(b) Awards**

#### **(1) In general**

In any covered judicial or administrative action, or related action, the Commission, under regulations prescribed by the Commission and subject to subsection (c), shall pay an award or awards to 1 or more whistleblowers who voluntarily provided original information to the Commission that led to the successful enforcement of the covered judicial or administrative action, or related action, in an aggregate amount equal to—

- (A) not less than 10 percent, in total, of what has been collected of the monetary sanctions imposed in the action or related actions; and
- (B) not more than 30 percent, in total, of what has been collected of the monetary sanctions imposed in the action or related actions.

#### **(2) Payment of awards**

Any amount paid under paragraph (1) shall be paid from the Fund.

### **(c) Determination of amount of award; denial of award**

#### **(1) Determination of amount of award**

##### **(A) Discretion**

The determination of the amount of an award made under subsection (b) shall be in the discretion of the Commission.

##### **(B) Criteria**

In determining the amount of an award made under subsection (b), the Commission—

- (i) shall take into consideration—
  - (I) the significance of the information provided by the whistleblower to the success of the covered judicial or administrative action;
  - (II) the degree of assistance provided by the whistleblower and any legal representative of the whistleblower in a covered judicial or administrative action;
  - (III) the programmatic interest of the Commission in deterring violations of the securities laws by making awards to whistleblowers who provide information that lead to the successful enforcement of such laws; and
  - (IV) such additional relevant factors as the Commission may establish by rule or regulation; and

(ii) shall not take into consideration the balance of the Fund.

#### **(2) Denial of award**

No award under subsection (b) shall be made—

- (A) to any whistleblower who is, or was at the time the whistleblower acquired the original information submitted to the Commission, a member, officer, or employee of—
  - (i) an appropriate regulatory agency;
  - (ii) the Department of Justice;
  - (iii) a self-regulatory organization;
  - (iv) the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board; or
  - (v) a law enforcement organization;

(B) to any whistleblower who is convicted of a criminal violation related to the judicial or administrative action for which the whistleblower otherwise could receive an award under this section;

(C) to any whistleblower who gains the information through the performance of an audit of financial statements required under the securities laws and for whom such submission would be contrary to the requirements of section 78j-1 of this title; or

(D) to any whistleblower who fails to submit information to the Commission in such form as the Commission may, by rule, require.

**(d) Representation**

**(1) Permitted representation**

Any whistleblower who makes a claim for an award under subsection (b) may be represented by counsel.

**(2) Required representation**

**(A) In general**

Any whistleblower who anonymously makes a claim for an award under subsection (b) shall be represented by counsel if the whistleblower anonymously submits the information upon which the claim is based.

**(B) Disclosure of identity**

Prior to the payment of an award, a whistleblower shall disclose the identity of the whistleblower and provide such other information as the Commission may require, directly or through counsel for the whistleblower.

**(e) No contract necessary**

No contract with the Commission is necessary for any whistleblower to receive an award under subsection (b), unless otherwise required by the Commission by rule or regulation.

**(f) Appeals**

Any determination made under this section, including whether, to whom, or in what amount to make awards, shall be in the discretion of the Commission. Any such determination, except the determination of the amount of an award if the award was made in accordance with subsection (b), may be appealed to the appropriate court of appeals of the United States not more than 30 days after the determination is issued by the Commission. The court shall review the determination made by the Commission in accordance with section 706 of title 5.

**(g) Investor Protection Fund**

**(1) Fund established**

There is established in the Treasury of the United States a fund to be known as the "Securities and Exchange Commission Investor Protection Fund".

**(2) Use of Fund**

The Fund shall be available to the Commission, without further appropriation or fiscal year limitation, for—

(A) paying awards to whistleblowers as provided in subsection (b); and

(B) funding the activities of the Inspector General of the Commission under section 78d(i) of this title.

**(3) Deposits and credits**

**(A) In general**

There shall be deposited into or credited to the Fund an amount equal to—

(i) any monetary sanction collected by the Commission in any judicial or administrative action brought by the Commission under the securities laws that is not added to a disgorgement fund or other fund under section 308 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (15 U.S.C. 7246) or otherwise distributed to victims of a violation of the securities laws, or the rules and regulations thereunder, underlying such action, unless the balance of the Fund at the time the monetary sanction is collected exceeds \$300,000,000;

(ii) any monetary sanction added to a disgorgement fund or other fund under section 308 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (15 U.S.C. 7246) that is not distributed to the victims for whom the Fund was established, unless the balance of the disgorgement fund at the time the determination is made not to distribute the monetary sanction to such victims exceeds \$200,000,000; and

(iii) all income from investments made under paragraph (4).

**(B) Additional amounts**

If the amounts deposited into or credited to the Fund under subparagraph (A) are not sufficient to satisfy an award made under subsection (b), there shall be deposited into or credited to the Fund an amount equal to the unsatisfied portion of the award from any monetary sanction collected by the Commission in the covered judicial or administrative action on which the award is based.

**(4) Investments**

**(A) Amounts in Fund may be invested**

The Commission may request the Secretary of the Treasury to invest the portion of the Fund that is not, in the discretion of the Commission, required to meet the current needs of the Fund.

**(B) Eligible investments**

Investments shall be made by the Secretary of the Treasury in obligations of the United States or obligations that are guaranteed as to principal and interest by the United States, with maturities suitable to the needs of the Fund as determined by the Commission on the record.

**(C) Interest and proceeds credited**

The interest on, and the proceeds from the sale or redemption of, any obligations held in the Fund shall be credited to the Fund.

**(5) Reports to Congress**

Not later than October 30 of each fiscal year beginning after July 21, 2010, the Commission shall submit to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate, and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives a report on—

(A) the whistleblower award program, established under this section, including—

- (i) a description of the number of awards granted; and
- (ii) the types of cases in which awards were granted during the preceding fiscal year;

(B) the balance of the Fund at the beginning of the preceding fiscal year;

(C) the amounts deposited into or credited to the Fund during the preceding fiscal year;

(D) the amount of earnings on investments made under paragraph (4) during the preceding fiscal year;

(E) the amount paid from the Fund during the preceding fiscal year to whistleblowers pursuant to subsection (b);

(F) the balance of the Fund at the end of the preceding fiscal year; and

(G) a complete set of audited financial statements, including—

- (i) a balance sheet;
- (ii) income statement; and
- (iii) cash flow analysis.

**(h) Protection of whistleblowers**

**(1) Prohibition against retaliation**

**(A) In general**

No employer may discharge, demote, suspend, threaten, harass, directly or indirectly, or in any other manner discriminate against, a whistleblower in the terms and conditions of employment because of any lawful act done by the whistleblower—

- (i) in providing information to the Commission in accordance with this section;
- (ii) in initiating, testifying in, or assisting in any investigation or judicial or administrative action of the Commission based upon or related to such information; or
- (iii) in making disclosures that are required or protected under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (15 U.S.C. 7201 et seq.), this chapter, including section 78j-1(m) of this title, section 1513(e) of title 18, and any other law, rule, or regulation subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission.

**(B) Enforcement**

**(i) Cause of action**

An individual who alleges discharge or other discrimination in violation of subparagraph (A) may bring an action under this subsection in the appropriate district court of the United States for the relief provided in subparagraph (C).

**(ii) Subpoenas**

A subpoena requiring the attendance of a witness at a trial or hearing conducted under this section may be served at any place in the United States.

**(iii) Statute of limitations**

**(I) In general**

An action under this subsection may not be brought—

- (aa) more than 6 years after the date on which the violation of subparagraph (A) occurred; or
- (bb) more than 3 years after the date when facts material to the right of action are known or reasonably should have been known by the employee alleging a violation of subparagraph (A).

**(II) Required action within 10 years**

Notwithstanding subclause (I), an action under this subsection may not in any circumstance be brought more than 10 years after the date on which the violation occurs.

**(C) Relief**

Relief for an individual prevailing in an action brought under subparagraph (B) shall include—

- (i) reinstatement with the same seniority status that the individual would have had, but for the discrimination;
- (ii) 2 times the amount of back pay otherwise owed to the individual, with interest; and
- (iii) compensation for litigation costs, expert witness fees, and reasonable attorneys' fees.

**(2) Confidentiality****(A) In general**

Except as provided in subparagraphs (B) and (C), the Commission and any officer or employee of the Commission shall not disclose any information, including information provided by a whistleblower to the Commission, which could reasonably be expected to reveal the identity of a whistleblower, except in accordance with the provisions of section 552a of title 5, unless and until required to be disclosed to a defendant or respondent in connection with a public proceeding instituted by the Commission or any entity described in subparagraph (C). For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this paragraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3) (B) of such section.

**(B) Exempted statute**

For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this paragraph shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3) (B) of such section 552.

**(C) Rule of construction**

Nothing in this section is intended to limit, or shall be construed to limit, the ability of the Attorney General to present such evidence to a grand jury or to share such evidence with potential witnesses or defendants in the course of an ongoing criminal investigation.

**(D) Availability to government agencies****(i) In general**

Without the loss of its status as confidential in the hands of the Commission, all information referred to in subparagraph (A) may, in the discretion of the Commission, when determined by the Commission to be necessary to accomplish the purposes of this chapter and to protect investors, be made available to—

- (I) the Attorney General of the United States;
- (II) an appropriate regulatory authority;
- (III) a self-regulatory organization;
- (IV) a State attorney general in connection with any criminal investigation;
- (V) any appropriate State regulatory authority;
- (VI) the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board;
- (VII) a foreign securities authority; and
- (VIII) a foreign law enforcement authority.

**(ii) Confidentiality****(I) In general**

Each of the entities described in subclauses (I) through (VI) of clause (i) shall maintain such information as confidential in accordance with the requirements established under subparagraph (A).

**(II) Foreign authorities**

Each of the entities described in subclauses (VII) and (VIII) of clause (i) shall maintain such information in accordance with such assurances of confidentiality as the Commission determines appropriate.

**(3) Rights retained**

Nothing in this section shall be deemed to diminish the rights, privileges, or remedies of any whistleblower under any Federal or State law, or under any collective bargaining agreement.

**(i) Provision of false information**

A whistleblower shall not be entitled to an award under this section if the whistleblower—

- (1) knowingly and willfully makes any false, fictitious, or fraudulent statement or representation; or
- (2) uses any false writing or document knowing the writing or document contains any false, fictitious, or fraudulent statement or entry.

**(j) Rulemaking authority**

The Commission shall have the authority to issue such rules and regulations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement the provisions of this section consistent with the purposes of this section.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §21F, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §922(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1841.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

The Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, referred to in subsec. (h)(1)(A)(iii), is Pub. L. 107–204, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 745. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 7201 of this title and Tables.

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (h)(1)(A)(iii), was in the original "the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.)". This chapter, referred to in subsec. (h)(2)(D)(i), was in the original "this Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## §78u–7. Implementation and transition provisions for whistleblower protection

### (a) Implementing rules

The Commission shall issue final regulations implementing the provisions of section 78u–6 of this title, as added by this subtitle, not later than 270 days after July 21, 2010.

### (b) Original information

Information provided to the Commission in writing by a whistleblower shall not lose the status of original information (as defined in section 78u–6(a)(3) of this title, as added by this subtitle) solely because the whistleblower provided the information prior to the effective date of the regulations, if the information is provided by the whistleblower after July 21, 2010.

### (c) Awards

A whistleblower may receive an award pursuant to section 78u–6 of this title, as added by this subtitle, regardless of whether any violation of a provision of the securities laws, or a rule or regulation thereunder, underlying the judicial or administrative action upon which the award is based, occurred prior to July 21, 2010.

### (d) Administration and enforcement

The Securities and Exchange Commission shall establish a separate office within the Commission to administer and enforce the provisions of section 78u–6 of this title (as add <sup>1</sup> by section 922(a)).<sup>2</sup> Such office shall report annually to the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives on its activities, whistleblower complaints, and the response of the Commission to such complaints.

(Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §924, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1850.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subtitle, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c), means subtitle B (§§921–929Z) of title IX of Pub. L. 111–203.

Section 922(a), referred to in subsec. (d), means section 922(a) of Pub. L. 111–203.

## CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Investor Protection and Securities Reform Act of 2010, and also as part of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and not as part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## DEFINITIONS

For definitions of "Commission" and "securities laws" as used in this section, see section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

<sup>1</sup> *So in original. Probably should be "added".*

<sup>2</sup> *See References in Text note below.*

## §78v. Hearings by Commission

Hearings may be public and may be held before the Commission, any member or members thereof, or any officer or officers of the Commission designated by it, and appropriate records thereof shall be kept.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §22, 48 Stat. 901.)

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## §78w. Rules, regulations, and orders; annual reports

### (a) Power to make rules and regulations; considerations; public disclosure

(1) The Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title shall each have power to make such rules and regulations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement the provisions of this chapter for which they are responsible or for the execution of the functions vested in them by this chapter, and may for such purposes classify persons, securities, transactions, statements, applications, reports, and other matters within their respective jurisdictions, and prescribe greater, lesser, or different requirements for different classes thereof. No provision of this chapter imposing any liability shall apply to any act done or omitted in good faith in conformity with a rule, regulation, or order of the Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, other agency enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title, or any self-regulatory organization, notwithstanding that such rule, regulation, or order may thereafter be amended or rescinded or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

(2) The Commission and the Secretary of the Treasury, in making rules and regulations pursuant to any provisions of this chapter, shall consider among other matters the impact any such rule or regulation would have on competition. The Commission and the Secretary of the Treasury shall not adopt any such rule or regulation which would impose a burden on competition not necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter. The Commission and the Secretary of the Treasury shall include in the statement of basis and purpose incorporated in any rule or regulation adopted under this chapter, the reasons for the Commission's or the Secretary's determination that any burden on competition imposed by such rule or regulation is necessary or appropriate in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter.

(3) The Commission and the Secretary, in making rules and regulations pursuant to any provision of this chapter, considering any application for registration in accordance with section 78s(a) of this title, or reviewing any proposed rule change of a self-regulatory organization in accordance with section 78s(b) of this title, shall keep in a public file and make available for copying all written statements filed with the Commission and the Secretary and all written communications between the Commission or the Secretary and any person relating to the proposed rule, regulation, application, or proposed rule change: *Provided, however,* That the Commission and the Secretary shall not be required to keep in a public file or make available for copying any such statement or communication which it may withhold from the public in accordance with the provisions of section 552 of title 5.

### (b) Annual report to Congress

(1) The Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title shall each make an annual report to the Congress on its work for the preceding year, and shall include in each such report whatever information, data, and recommendations for further legislation it considers advisable with regard to matters within its respective jurisdiction under this chapter.

(2) The appropriate regulatory agency for a self-regulatory organization shall include in its annual report to the Congress for each fiscal year, a summary of its oversight activities under this chapter with respect to such self-regulatory organization, including a description of any examination conducted as part of such activities of any such organization, any material recommendation presented as part of such activities to such organization for changes in its organization or rules, and any action by such organization in response to any such recommendation.

(3) The appropriate regulatory agency for any class of municipal securities dealers shall include in its annual report to the Congress for each fiscal year a summary of its regulatory activities pursuant to this chapter with respect to such municipal securities dealers, including the nature of and reason for any sanction imposed pursuant to this chapter against any such municipal securities dealer.

(4) The Commission shall also include in its annual report to the Congress for each fiscal year—

(A) a summary of the Commission's oversight activities with respect to self-regulatory organizations for which it is not the appropriate regulatory agency, including a description of any examination of any such organization, any material recommendation presented to any such organization for changes in its organization or rules, and any action by any such organization in response to any such recommendations;

(B) a statement and analysis of the expenses and operations of each self-regulatory organization in connection with the performance of its responsibilities under this chapter, for which purpose data pertaining to such expenses and operations shall be made available by such organization to the Commission at its request;

(C) the steps the Commission has taken and the progress it has made toward ending the physical movement of the securities certificate in connection with the settlement of securities transactions, and its recommendations, if any, for legislation to eliminate the securities certificate;

(D) the number of requests for exemptions from provisions of this chapter received, the number granted, and the basis upon which any such exemption was granted;

(E) a summary of the Commission's regulatory activities with respect to municipal securities dealers for which it is not the appropriate regulatory agency, including the nature of, and reason for, any sanction imposed in proceedings against such municipal securities dealers;

(F) a statement of the time elapsed between the filing of reports pursuant to section 78m(f) of this title and the public availability of the information contained therein, the costs involved in the Commission's processing of such reports and tabulating such information, the manner in which the Commission uses such information, and the steps the Commission has taken and the progress it has made toward requiring such reports to be filed and such information to be made available to the public in machine language;

(G) information concerning (i) the effects its rules and regulations are having on the viability of small brokers and dealers; (ii) its attempts to reduce any unnecessary reporting burden on such brokers and dealers; and (iii) its efforts to help to assure the continued participation of small brokers and dealers in the United States securities markets;

(H) a statement detailing its administration of the Freedom of Information Act, section 552 of title 5, including a copy of the report filed pursuant to subsection (d) of such section; and

(I) the steps that have been taken and the progress that has been made in promoting the timely public dissemination and availability for analytical purposes (on a fair, reasonable, and nondiscriminatory basis) of information concerning government securities transactions and quotations, and its recommendations, if any, for legislation to assure timely dissemination of (i) information on transactions in regularly traded government securities sufficient to permit the determination of the prevailing market price for such securities, and (ii) reports of the highest published bids and lowest published offers for government securities (including the size at which persons are willing to trade with respect to such bids and offers).

### **(c) Procedure for adjudication**

The Commission, by rule, shall prescribe the procedure applicable to every case pursuant to this chapter of adjudication (as defined in section 551 of title 5) not required to be determined on the record after notice and opportunity for hearing. Such rules shall, as a minimum, provide that prompt notice shall be given of any adverse action or final disposition and that such notice and the entry of any order shall be accompanied by a statement of written reasons.

### **(d) Cease-and-desist procedures**

Within 1 year after October 15, 1990, the Commission shall establish regulations providing for the expeditious conduct of hearings and rendering of decisions under section 78u-3 of this title, section 77h-1 of this title, section 80a-9(f) of this title, and section 80b-3(k) of this title.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §23, 48 Stat. 901; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, §203(a), 49 Stat. 704; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §8, 49 Stat. 1379; Pub. L. 88-467, §10, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 580; Pub. L. 94-29, §18, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 155; Pub. L. 99-571, title I, §102(j), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3220; Pub. L. 100-181, title III, §§324, 325, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259; Pub. L. 101-429, title II, §204, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 940; Pub. L. 103-202, title I, §107, Dec. 17, 1993, 107 Stat. 2351; Pub. L. 109-351, title IV, §401(a)(3), Oct. 13, 2006, 120 Stat. 1973; Pub. L. 111-203, title III, §376(4), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1569.)

## **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## **AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 111-203 struck out ", other than the Office of Thrift Supervision," before "shall each make".

**2006**—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 109-351 inserted "other than the Office of Thrift Supervision," before "shall each".

**1993**—Subsec. (b)(4)(C) to (K). Pub. L. 103-202, §107, redesignated subpars. (E) to (G) and (I) to (K) as (C) to (E) and (F) to (H), respectively, added a new subpar. (I), and struck out former subpars. (C), (D), and (H). Prior to amendment, subpars. (C), (D), and (H) read as follows:

"(C) beginning in 1975 and ending in 1980, information, data, and recommendations with respect to the development of a national system for the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of securities transactions, including a summary of the regulatory activities, operational capabilities, financial resources, and plans of self-regulatory organizations and registered transfer agents with respect thereto;

"(D) beginning in 1975 and ending in 1980, a description of the steps taken, and an evaluation of the progress made, toward the establishment of a national market system, and recommendations for further legislation it considers advisable with respect to such system;

"(H) beginning in 1975 and ending in 1980, a description of the effect the absence of any schedule or fixed rates of commissions, allowances, discounts, or other fees to be charged by members for effecting transactions on a national securities exchange is having on the maintenance of fair and orderly markets and the development of a national market system for securities;"

**1990**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-429 added subsec. (d).

**1987**—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 100-181, §324(1), inserted "or" before "any self-regulatory organization" in last sentence.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 100-181, §324(2), inserted "shall" after "section 78s(b) of this title,".

Subsec. (b)(4)(F). Pub. L. 100–181, §325, substituted "the" for "The".

**1986**—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(j)(1), (2), inserted "and the Secretary of the Treasury" in three places and "or the Secretary's" in one place.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 99–571, §102(j)(3), (4), inserted "and the Secretary" in three places and "or the Secretary" in one place.

**1975**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted references to other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title, regulations appropriate to implement the provisions of this chapter for which the agencies are responsible, the classification of persons, transactions, statements, applications, and reports, the prescribing of greater, lesser, or different requirements for different classifications, and the non-liability of self-regulatory organization, and added pars. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29 designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted "The Commission, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, and the other agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title, shall each make an annual report to the Congress on its work for the preceding year, and shall include in each such report whatever information, data, and recommendations for further legislation it considers advisable with regard to matters within its respective jurisdiction under this chapter" for "The Commission and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, respectively, shall include in their annual reports to Congress such information, data, and recommendation for further legislation as they may deem advisable with regard to matters within their respective jurisdictions under this chapter. The Commission shall include in its annual reports to the Congress for the fiscal years ended on June 30 of 1965, 1966, and 1967 information, data, and recommendations specifically related to the operation of the amendments to this chapter made by the Securities Acts Amendments of 1964", and added pars. (2) to (4).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsec. (c).

**1964**—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88–467 required the Commission in its annual reports to Congress for fiscal years ending June 30, 1965, 1966, and 1967, to furnish information, data, and recommendations specifically related to the operations of the amendments to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 made by the Securities Act Amendments of 1964.

**1936**—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, inserted second sentence.

### **CHANGE OF NAME**

Section 203(a) of act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board".

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the transfer date, see section 351 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 906 of Title 2, The Congress.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 101–429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101–429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78o–5 of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

### **CONSTRUCTION OF 1993 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 103–202 not to be construed to govern initial issuance of any public debt obligation or to grant any authority to (or extend any authority of) the Securities and Exchange Commission, any appropriate regulatory agency, or a self-regulatory organization to prescribe any procedure, term, or condition of such initial issuance, to promulgate any rule or regulation governing such

initial issuance, or to otherwise regulate in any manner such initial issuance, see section 111 of Pub. L. 103–202, set out as a note under section 78o–5 of this title.

### **TERMINATION OF REPORTING REQUIREMENTS**

For termination, effective May 15, 2000, of provisions of law requiring submittal to Congress of any annual, semiannual, or other regular periodic report listed in House Document No. 103–7 (in which the 2nd item on page 143, the 18th item on page 167, the 7th item on page 172, and 18th item on page 190 identify a reporting provision which, as subsequently amended, is contained in subsec. (b) of this section), see section 3003 of Pub. L. 104–66, as amended, set out as a note under section 1113 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## **§78x. Public availability of information**

### **(a) "Records" defined**

For purposes of section 552 of title 5 the term "records" includes all applications, statements, reports, contracts, correspondence, notices, and other documents filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission pursuant to this chapter or otherwise.

### **(b) Disclosure or personal use**

It shall be unlawful for any member, officer, or employee of the Commission to disclose to any person other than a member, officer, or employee of the Commission, or to use for personal benefit, any information contained in any application, statement, report, contract, correspondence, notice, or other document filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission (1) in contravention of the rules and regulations of the Commission under section 552 of title 5, or (2) in circumstances where the Commission has determined pursuant to such rules to accord confidential treatment to such information.

### **(c) Confidential disclosures**

The Commission may, in its discretion and upon a showing that such information is needed, provide all "records" (as defined in subsection (a)) and other information in its possession to such persons, both domestic and foreign, as the Commission by rule deems appropriate if the person receiving such records or information provides such assurances of confidentiality as the Commission deems appropriate.

### **(d) Records obtained from foreign securities authorities**

Except as provided in subsection (g), the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose records obtained from a foreign securities authority if (1) the foreign securities authority has in good faith determined and represented to the Commission that public disclosure of such records would violate the laws applicable to that foreign securities authority, and (2) the Commission obtains such records pursuant to (A) such procedure as the Commission may authorize for use in connection with the administration or enforcement of the securities laws, or (B) a memorandum of understanding. For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552.

### **(e) Freedom of Information Act**

For purposes of section 552(b)(8) of title 5 (commonly referred to as the Freedom of Information Act)—

- (1) the Commission is an agency responsible for the regulation or supervision of financial institutions; and
- (2) any entity for which the Commission is responsible for regulating, supervising, or examining under this chapter is a financial institution.

### **(f) Sharing privileged information with other authorities**

#### **(1) Privileged information provided by the Commission**

The Commission shall not be deemed to have waived any privilege applicable to any information by transferring that information to or permitting that information to be used by—

- (A) any agency (as defined in section 6 of title 18);
- (B) the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board;
- (C) any self-regulatory organization;
- (D) any foreign securities authority;
- (E) any foreign law enforcement authority; or
- (F) any State securities or law enforcement authority.

#### **(2) Nondisclosure of privileged information provided to the Commission**

The Commission shall not be compelled to disclose privileged information obtained from any foreign securities authority, or foreign law enforcement authority, if the authority has in good faith determined and represented to the Commission that the information is privileged.

### **(3) Nonwaiver of privileged information provided to the Commission**

#### **(A) In general**

Federal agencies, State securities and law enforcement authorities, self-regulatory organizations, and the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board shall not be deemed to have waived any privilege applicable to any information by transferring that information to or permitting that information to be used by the Commission.

#### **(B) Exception**

The provisions of subparagraph (A) shall not apply to a self-regulatory organization or the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board with respect to information used by the Commission in an action against such organization.

### **(4) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection—

(A) the term "privilege" includes any work-product privilege, attorney-client privilege, governmental privilege, or other privilege recognized under Federal, State, or foreign law;

(B) the term "foreign law enforcement authority" means any foreign authority that is empowered under foreign law to detect, investigate or prosecute potential violations of law; and

(C) the term "State securities or law enforcement authority" means the authority of any State or territory that is empowered under State or territory law to detect, investigate, or prosecute potential violations of law.

### **(g) Savings provision**

Nothing in this section shall—

(1) alter the Commission's responsibilities under the Right to Financial Privacy Act (12 U.S.C. 3401 et seq.), as limited by section 78u(h) of this title, with respect to transfers of records covered by such statutes, or

(2) authorize the Commission to withhold information from the Congress or prevent the Commission from complying with an order of a court of the United States in an action commenced by the United States or the Commission.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §24, 48 Stat. 901; Aug. 23, 1935, ch. 614, §203(a), 49 Stat. 704; Pub. L. 94–29, §19, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 158; Pub. L. 101–550, title II, §202(a), Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2715; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §§929I(a), 929K, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1857, 1860; Pub. L. 111–257, §1(a), Oct. 5, 2010, 124 Stat. 2646.)

## **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) and (e)(2), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Right to Financial Privacy Act, referred to in subsec. (g)(1), probably means the Right to Financial Privacy Act of 1978, title XI of Pub. L. 95–630, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3697, which is classified generally to chapter 35 (§3401 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3401 of Title 12 and Tables.

## **AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 111–203, §929K(1), substituted "subsection (g)" for "subsection (f)".

Pub. L. 111–203, §929I(a)(1), substituted "subsection (f)" for "subsection (e)".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 111–257 added subsec. (e) and struck out former subsec. (e). Prior to amendment, text read as follows:

"(1) **IN GENERAL.**—Except as provided in subsection (g), the Commission shall not be compelled to disclose records or information obtained pursuant to section 78q(b) of this title, or records or information based upon or derived from such records or information, if such records or information have been obtained by the Commission for use in furtherance of the purposes of this chapter, including surveillance, risk assessments, or other regulatory and oversight activities.

"(2) **TREATMENT OF INFORMATION.**—For purposes of section 552 of title 5, this subsection shall be considered a statute described in subsection (b)(3)(B) of such section 552. Collection of information pursuant to section 78q of this title shall be an administrative action involving an agency against specific individuals or agencies pursuant to section 3518(c)(1) of title 44."

Pub. L. 111–203, §929K(2), substituted "subsection (g)" for "subsection (f)" in par. (1).

Pub. L. 111–203, §929I(a)(3), added subsec. (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (f).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 111–203, §929K(4), added subsec. (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Pub. L. 111–203, §929I(a)(2), redesignated subsec. (e) as (f).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–203, §929K(3), redesignated subsec. (f) as (g).

**1990**—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101–550, §202(a)(1), struck out at end "Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from the Congress."

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 101–550, §202(a)(2), added subsecs. (c) to (e).

**1975**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 substituted "For purposes of section 552 of title 5, the term 'records' includes all applications, statements, reports, contracts, correspondence, notices, and other documents filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission pursuant to this chapter or otherwise" for "Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to require, or to authorize the Commission to require, the revealing of trade secrets or processes in any application, report, or document filed with the Commission under this chapter".

Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 94–29 redesignated subsec. (c) as (b) and substituted "application, statement, report, contract, correspondence, notice, or other document filed with or otherwise obtained by the Commission (1) in contravention of the rules and regulations of the Commission under section 552 of title 5, or (2) in circumstances where the Commission has determined pursuant to such rules to accord confidential treatment for such information. Nothing in this subsection shall authorize the Commission to withhold information from Congress" for "application, report, or document filed with the Commission which is not made available to the public pursuant to subsection (b) of this section: Provided, That the Commission may make available to the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System any information requested by the Board for the purpose of enabling it to perform its duties under this chapter". Former subsec. (b), providing for written objection to public disclosure of information, was struck out.

### CHANGE OF NAME

Section 203(a) of act Aug. 23, 1935, substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board".

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## §78y. Court review of orders and rules

### (a) Final Commission orders; persons aggrieved; petition; record; findings; affirmance, modification, enforcement, or setting aside of orders; remand to adduce additional evidence

(1) A person aggrieved by a final order of the Commission entered pursuant to this chapter may obtain review of the order in the United States Court of Appeals for the circuit in which he resides or has his principal place of business, or for the District of Columbia Circuit, by filing in such court, within sixty days after the entry of the order, a written petition requesting that the order be modified or set aside in whole or in part.

(2) A copy of the petition shall be transmitted forthwith by the clerk of the court to a member of the Commission or an officer designated by the Commission for that purpose. Thereupon the Commission shall file in the court the record on which the order complained of is entered, as provided in section 2112 of title 28 and the Federal Rules of Appellate Procedure.

(3) On the filing of the petition, the court has jurisdiction, which becomes exclusive on the filing of the record, to affirm or modify and enforce or to set aside the order in whole or in part.

(4) The findings of the Commission as to the facts, if supported by substantial evidence, are conclusive.

(5) If either party applies to the court for leave to adduce additional evidence and shows to the satisfaction of the court that the additional evidence is material and that there was reasonable ground for failure to adduce it before the Commission, the court may remand the case to the Commission for further proceedings, in whatever manner and on whatever conditions the court considers appropriate. If the case is remanded to the Commission, it shall file in the court a supplemental record containing any new evidence, any further or modified findings, and any new order.

### (b) Commission rules; persons adversely affected; petition; record; affirmance, enforcement, or setting aside of rules; findings; transfer of proceedings

(1) A person adversely affected by a rule of the Commission promulgated pursuant to section 78f, 78i(h)(2), 78k, 78k-1, 78o(c)(5) or (6), 78o-3, 78q, 78q-1, or 78s of this title may obtain review of this rule in the United States Court of Appeals for the circuit in which he resides or has his principal place of business or for the District of Columbia Circuit, by filing in such court, within sixty days after the promulgation of the rule, a written petition requesting that the rule be set aside.

(2) A copy of the petition shall be transmitted forthwith by the clerk of the court to a member of the Commission or an officer designated for that purpose. Thereupon, the Commission shall file in the court the rule under review and any documents referred to therein, the Commission's notice of proposed rulemaking and any documents referred to therein, all written submissions and the transcript of any oral presentations in the rulemaking, factual information not included in the foregoing that was considered by the Commission in the promulgation of the rule or proffered by the Commission as pertinent to the rule, the report of any advisory committee received or considered by the Commission in the rulemaking, and any other materials prescribed by the court.

(3) On the filing of the petition, the court has jurisdiction, which becomes exclusive on the filing of the materials set forth in paragraph (2) of this subsection, to affirm and enforce or to set aside the rule.

(4) The findings of the Commission as to the facts identified by the Commission as the basis, in whole or in part, of the rule, if supported by substantial evidence, are conclusive. The court shall affirm and enforce the rule unless the Commission's action in promulgating the rule is found to be arbitrary, capricious, an abuse of discretion, or otherwise not in accordance with law; contrary to constitutional right, power, privilege, or immunity; in excess of statutory jurisdiction, authority, or limitations, or short of statutory right; or without observance of procedure required by law.

(5) If proceedings have been instituted under this subsection in two or more courts of appeals with respect to the same rule, the Commission shall file the materials set forth in paragraph (2) of this subsection in that court in which a proceeding was first instituted. The other courts shall thereupon transfer all such proceedings to the court in which the materials have been filed. For the convenience of the parties in the interest of justice that court may thereafter transfer all the proceedings to any other court of appeals.

**(c) Objections not urged before Commission; stay of orders and rules; transfer of enforcement or review proceedings**

(1) No objection to an order or rule of the Commission, for which review is sought under this section, may be considered by the court unless it was urged before the Commission or there was reasonable ground for failure to do so.

(2) The filing of a petition under this section does not operate as a stay of the Commission's order or rule. Until the court's jurisdiction becomes exclusive, the Commission may stay its order or rule pending judicial review if it finds that justice so requires. After the filing of a petition under this section, the court, on whatever conditions may be required and to the extent necessary to prevent irreparable injury, may issue all necessary and appropriate process to stay the order or rule or to preserve status or rights pending its review; but (notwithstanding section 705 of title 5) no such process may be issued by the court before the filing of the record or the materials set forth in subsection (b)(2) of this section unless: (A) the Commission has denied a stay or failed to grant requested relief, (B) a reasonable period has expired since the filing of an application for a stay without a decision by the Commission, or (C) there was reasonable ground for failure to apply to the Commission.

(3) When the same order or rule is the subject of one or more petitions for review filed under this section and an action for enforcement filed in a district court of the United States under section 78u(d) or (e) of this title, that court in which the petition or the action is first filed has jurisdiction with respect to the order or rule to the exclusion of any other court, and thereupon all such proceedings shall be transferred to that court; but, for the convenience of the parties in the interest of justice, that court may thereafter transfer all the proceedings to any other court of appeals or district court of the United States, whether or not a petition for review or an action for enforcement was originally filed in the transferee court. The scope of review by a district court under section 78u(d) or (e) of this title is in all cases the same as by a court of appeals under this section.

**(d) Other appropriate regulatory agencies**

(1) For purposes of the preceding subsections of this section, the term "Commission" includes the agencies enumerated in section 78c(a)(34) of this title insofar as such agencies are acting pursuant to this chapter and the Secretary of the Treasury insofar as he is acting pursuant to section 78o-5 of this title.

(2) For purposes of subsection (a)(4) of this section and section 706 of title 5, an order of the Commission pursuant to section 78s(a) of this title denying registration to a clearing agency for which the Commission is not the appropriate regulatory agency or pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title disapproving a proposed rule change by such a clearing agency shall be deemed to be an order of the appropriate regulatory agency for such clearing agency insofar as such order was entered by reason of a determination by such appropriate regulatory agency pursuant to section 78s(a)(2) (C) or 78s(b)(4)(C) of this title that such registration or proposed rule change would be inconsistent with the safeguarding of securities or funds.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §25, 48 Stat. 901; June 7, 1934, ch. 426, 48 Stat. 926; June 25, 1948, ch. 646, §32(a), 62 Stat. 991; May 24, 1949, ch. 139, §127, 63 Stat. 107; Pub. L. 85-791, §10, Aug. 28, 1958, 72 Stat. 945; Pub. L. 94-29, §20, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 158; Pub. L. 99-571, title I, §102(k), Oct. 28, 1986, 100 Stat. 3220; Pub. L. 101-432, §6(b), Oct. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 975.)

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (d)(1), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Federal Rules of Appellate Procedure, referred to in subsec. (a)(2), are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

### AMENDMENTS

**1990**—Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101–432 inserted "78i(h)(2)," after "section 78f,".

**1986**—Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 99–571 inserted "and the Secretary of the Treasury insofar as he is acting pursuant to section 78o–5 of this title".

**1975**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29 revised existing provisions into five numbered paragraphs.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29 substituted provisions permitting persons adversely affected by any rule promulgated by the Commission pursuant to sections 78f, 78k, 78k–1, 78o(c)(5) or (6), 78o–3, 78q, 78q–1, or 78s of this title to obtain direct review in an appropriate Court of Appeals for provisions that commencement of proceedings under subsec. (a) shall not, unless specifically ordered by the court, operate as a stay of the Commission's order.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 94–29 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

**1958**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 85–791, in second sentence, substituted "transmitted by the clerk of the court to" for "served upon", struck out "certify and" before "file in the court", struck out "a transcript of" after "file in the court", and inserted "as provided in section 2112 of title 28", and, in third sentence, substituted "petition" for "transcript", and "jurisdiction, which upon the filing of the record shall be exclusive" for "exclusive jurisdiction".

### CHANGE OF NAME

Act June 25, 1948, eff. Sept. 1, 1948, as amended by act May 24, 1949, substituted "court of appeals" for "circuit court of appeals".

Act June 7, 1934, substituted "United States Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia" for "Court of Appeals for District of Columbia".

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1986 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 99–571 effective 270 days after Oct. 28, 1986, see section 401 of Pub. L. 99–571, set out as an Effective Date note under section 78o–5 of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## §78z. Unlawful representations

No action or failure to act by the Commission or the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in the administration of this chapter shall be construed to mean that the particular authority has in any way passed upon the merits of, or given approval to, any security or any transaction or transactions therein, nor shall such action or failure to act with regard to any statement or report filed with or examined by such authority pursuant to this chapter or rules and regulations thereunder, be deemed a finding by such authority that such statement or report is true and accurate on its face or that it is not false or misleading. It shall be unlawful to make, or cause to be made, to any prospective purchaser or seller of a security any representation that any such action or failure to act by any such authority is to be so construed or has such effect.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §26, 48 Stat. 902; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b)(5), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236.)

### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

### AMENDMENTS

**1998**—Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System" for "Federal Reserve Board".

## **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### **§78aa. Jurisdiction of offenses and suits**

#### **(a) In general**

The district courts of the United States and the United States courts of any Territory or other place subject to the jurisdiction of the United States shall have exclusive jurisdiction of violations of this chapter or the rules and regulations thereunder, and of all suits in equity and actions at law brought to enforce any liability or duty created by this chapter or the rules and regulations thereunder. Any criminal proceeding may be brought in the district wherein any act or transaction constituting the violation occurred. Any suit or action to enforce any liability or duty created by this chapter or rules and regulations thereunder, or to enjoin any violation of such chapter or rules and regulations, may be brought in any such district or in the district wherein the defendant is found or is an inhabitant or transacts business, and process in such cases may be served in any other district of which the defendant is an inhabitant or wherever the defendant may be found. In any action or proceeding instituted by the Commission under this chapter in a United States district court for any judicial district, a subpoena issued to compel the attendance of a witness or the production of documents or tangible things (or both) at a hearing or trial may be served at any place within the United States. Rule 45(c)(3)(A)(ii) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall not apply to a subpoena issued under the preceding sentence. Judgments and decrees so rendered shall be subject to review as provided in sections 1254, 1291, 1292, and 1294 of title 28. No costs shall be assessed for or against the Commission in any proceeding under this chapter brought by or against it in the Supreme Court or such other courts.

#### **(b) Extraterritorial jurisdiction**

The district courts of the United States and the United States courts of any Territory shall have jurisdiction of an action or proceeding brought or instituted by the Commission or the United States alleging a violation of the antifraud provisions of this chapter involving—

- (1) conduct within the United States that constitutes significant steps in furtherance of the violation, even if the securities transaction occurs outside the United States and involves only foreign investors; or
- (2) conduct occurring outside the United States that has a foreseeable substantial effect within the United States.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §27, 48 Stat. 902; June 25, 1936, ch. 804, 49 Stat. 1921; June 25, 1948, ch. 646, §32(b), 62 Stat. 991; May 24, 1949, ch. 139, §127, 63 Stat. 107; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §326, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §§929E(b), 929P(b)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1853, 1865.)

## **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Federal Rules of Civil Procedure, referred to in subsec. (a), are set out in the Appendix to Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure.

## **CODIFICATION**

As originally enacted section contained references to the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia. Act June 25, 1936, substituted "the district court of the United States for the District of Columbia" for "the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia", and act June 25, 1948, as amended by act May 24, 1949, substituted "United States District Court for the District of Columbia" for "district court of the United States for the District of Columbia". Pub. L. 100–181 struck out reference to the United States District Court for the District of Columbia. Previously, such words had been editorially eliminated as superfluous in view of section 132(a) of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure, which provides that "There shall be in each judicial district a district court which shall be a court of record known as the United States District Court for the district", and section 88 of Title 28 which provides that "the District of Columbia constitutes one judicial district".

## **AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Pub. L. 111–203, §929P(b)(2), designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted heading, and added subsec. (b).

Pub. L. 111–203, §929E(b), inserted "In any action or proceeding instituted by the Commission under this chapter in a United States district court for any judicial district, a subpoena issued to compel the

attendance of a witness or the production of documents or tangible things (or both) at a hearing or trial may be served at any place within the United States. Rule 45(c)(3)(A)(ii) of the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure shall not apply to a subpoena issued under the preceding sentence." after "defendant may be found."

**1987**—Pub. L. 100–181 struck out ", the United States District Court for the District of Columbia," after "district courts of the United States" and substituted "sections 1254, 1291, 1292, and 1294 of title 28" for "sections 128 and 240 of the Judicial Code, as amended (U.S.C., title 28, secs. 225 and 347)". See Codification note above.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

## **§78aa–1. Special provision relating to statute of limitations on private causes of action**

### **(a) Effect on pending causes of action**

The limitation period for any private civil action implied under section 78j(b) of this title that was commenced on or before June 19, 1991, shall be the limitation period provided by the laws applicable in the jurisdiction, including principles of retroactivity, as such laws existed on June 19, 1991.

### **(b) Effect on dismissed causes of action**

Any private civil action implied under section 78j(b) of this title that was commenced on or before June 19, 1991—

- (1) which was dismissed as time barred subsequent to June 19, 1991, and
- (2) which would have been timely filed under the limitation period provided by the laws applicable in the jurisdiction, including principles of retroactivity, as such laws existed on June 19, 1991,

shall be reinstated on motion by the plaintiff not later than 60 days after December 19, 1991.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §27A, as added Pub. L. 102–242, title IV, §476, Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2387.)

### **CONSTITUTIONALITY**

For information regarding constitutionality of certain provisions of section 27A of act June 6, 1934, as added by section 476 of Pub. L. 102–242, see Congressional Research Service, *The Constitution of the United States of America: Analysis and Interpretation*, Appendix 1, Acts of Congress Held Unconstitutional in Whole or in Part by the Supreme Court of the United States.

## **§78bb. Effect on existing law**

### **(a) Limitation on judgments**

#### **(1) In general**

No person permitted to maintain a suit for damages under the provisions of this chapter shall recover, through satisfaction of judgment in 1 or more actions, a total amount in excess of the actual damages to that person on account of the act complained of. Except as otherwise specifically provided in this chapter, nothing in this chapter shall affect the jurisdiction of the securities commission (or any agency or officer performing like functions) of any State over any security or any person insofar as it does not conflict with the provisions of this chapter or the rules and regulations under this chapter.

#### **(2) Rule of construction**

Except as provided in subsection (f), the rights and remedies provided by this chapter shall be in addition to any and all other rights and remedies that may exist at law or in equity.

#### **(3) State bucket shop laws**

No State law which prohibits or regulates the making or promoting of wagering or gaming contracts, or the operation of "bucket shops" or other similar or related activities, shall invalidate—

(A) any put, call, straddle, option, privilege, or other security subject to this chapter (except any security that has a pari-mutuel payout or otherwise is determined by the Commission, acting by rule, regulation, or order, to be appropriately subject to such laws), or apply to any activity which is incidental or related to the offer, purchase, sale, exercise, settlement, or closeout of any such security;

(B) any security-based swap between eligible contract participants; or

(C) any security-based swap effected on a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 78f(b) of this title.

#### **(4) Other State provisions**

No provision of State law regarding the offer, sale, or distribution of securities shall apply to any transaction in a security-based swap or a security futures product, except that this paragraph may not be construed as limiting any State antifraud law of general applicability. A security-based swap may not be regulated as an insurance contract under any provision of State law.

#### **(b) Modification of disciplinary procedures**

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed to modify existing law with regard to the binding effect (1) on any member of or participant in any self-regulatory organization of any action taken by the authorities of such organization to settle disputes between its members or participants, (2) on any municipal securities dealer or municipal securities broker of any action taken pursuant to a procedure established by the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board to settle disputes between municipal securities dealers and municipal securities brokers, or (3) of any action described in paragraph (1) or (2) on any person who has agreed to be bound thereby.

#### **(c) Continuing validity of disciplinary sanctions**

The stay, setting aside, or modification pursuant to section 78s(e) of this title of any disciplinary sanction imposed by a self-regulatory organization on a member thereof, person associated with a member, or participant therein, shall not affect the validity or force of any action taken as a result of such sanction by the self-regulatory organization prior to such stay, setting aside, or modification: *Provided*, That such action is not inconsistent with the provisions of this chapter or the rules or regulations thereunder. The rights of any person acting in good faith which arise out of any such action shall not be affected in any way by such stay, setting aside, or modification.

#### **(d) Physical location of facilities of registered clearing agencies or registered transfer agents not to subject changes in beneficial or record ownership of securities to State or local taxes**

No State or political subdivision thereof shall impose any tax on any change in beneficial or record ownership of securities effected through the facilities of a registered clearing agency or registered transfer agent or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor or upon the delivery or transfer of securities to or through or receipt from such agency or agent or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor, unless such change in beneficial or record ownership or such transfer or delivery or receipt would otherwise be taxable by such State or political subdivision if the facilities of such registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor were not physically located in the taxing State or political subdivision. No State or political subdivision thereof shall impose any tax on securities which are deposited in or retained by a registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor, unless such securities would otherwise be taxable by such State or political subdivision if the facilities of such registered clearing agency, registered transfer agent, or any nominee thereof or custodian therefor were not physically located in the taxing State or political subdivision.

#### **(e) Exchange, broker, and dealer commissions; brokerage and research services**

(1) No person using the mails, or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce, in the exercise of investment discretion with respect to an account shall be deemed to have acted unlawfully or to have breached a fiduciary duty under State or Federal law unless expressly provided to the contrary by a law enacted by the Congress or any State subsequent to June 4, 1975, solely by reason of his having caused the account to pay a member of an exchange, broker, or dealer an amount of commission for effecting a securities transaction in excess of the amount of commission another member of an exchange, broker, or dealer would have charged for effecting that transaction, if such person determined in good faith that such amount of commission was reasonable in relation to the value of the brokerage and research services provided by such member, broker, or dealer, viewed in terms of either that particular transaction or his overall responsibilities with respect to the accounts as to which he exercises investment discretion. This subsection is exclusive and plenary insofar as conduct is covered by the foregoing, unless otherwise expressly provided by contract: *Provided, however*, That nothing in this subsection shall be construed to impair or limit the power of the Commission under any other provision of this chapter or otherwise.

(2) A person exercising investment discretion with respect to an account shall make such disclosure of his policies and practices with respect to commissions that will be paid for effecting securities transactions, at such times and in such manner, as the appropriate regulatory agency, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors.

(3) For purposes of this subsection a person provides brokerage and research services insofar as he—

(A) furnishes advice, either directly or through publications or writings, as to the value of securities, the advisability of investing in, purchasing, or selling securities, and the availability of securities or purchasers or sellers of securities;

(B) furnishes analyses and reports concerning issuers, industries, securities, economic factors and trends, portfolio strategy, and the performance of accounts; or

(C) effects securities transactions and performs functions incidental thereto (such as clearance, settlement, and custody) or required in connection therewith by rules of the Commission or a self-regulatory organization of which such person is a member or person associated with a member or in which such person is a participant.

(4) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply with regard to securities that are security futures products.

**(f) Limitations on remedies**

**(1) Class action limitations**

No covered class action based upon the statutory or common law of any State or subdivision thereof may be maintained in any State or Federal court by any private party alleging—

(A) a misrepresentation or omission of a material fact in connection with the purchase or sale of a covered security; or

(B) that the defendant used or employed any manipulative or deceptive device or contrivance in connection with the purchase or sale of a covered security.

**(2) Removal of covered class actions**

Any covered class action brought in any State court involving a covered security, as set forth in paragraph (1), shall be removable to the Federal district court for the district in which the action is pending, and shall be subject to paragraph (1).

**(3) Preservation of certain actions**

**(A) Actions under State law of State of incorporation**

**(i) Actions preserved**

Notwithstanding paragraph (1) or (2), a covered class action described in clause (ii) of this subparagraph that is based upon the statutory or common law of the State in which the issuer is incorporated (in the case of a corporation) or organized (in the case of any other entity) may be maintained in a State or Federal court by a private party.

**(ii) Permissible actions**

A covered class action is described in this clause if it involves—

(I) the purchase or sale of securities by the issuer or an affiliate of the issuer exclusively from or to holders of equity securities of the issuer; or

(II) any recommendation, position, or other communication with respect to the sale of securities of an issuer that—

(aa) is made by or on behalf of the issuer or an affiliate of the issuer to holders of equity securities of the issuer; and

(bb) concerns decisions of such equity holders with respect to voting their securities, acting in response to a tender or exchange offer, or exercising dissenters' or appraisal rights.

**(B) State actions**

**(i) In general**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this subsection, nothing in this subsection may be construed to preclude a State or political subdivision thereof or a State pension plan from bringing an action involving a covered security on its own behalf, or as a member of a class comprised solely of other States, political subdivisions, or State pension plans that are named plaintiffs, and that have authorized participation, in such action.

**(ii) State pension plan defined**

For purposes of this subparagraph, the term "State pension plan" means a pension plan established and maintained for its employees by the government of a State or political subdivision thereof, or by any agency or instrumentality thereof.

**(C) Actions under contractual agreements between issuers and indenture trustees**

Notwithstanding paragraph (1) or (2), a covered class action that seeks to enforce a contractual agreement between an issuer and an indenture trustee may be maintained in a State or Federal court by a party to the agreement or a successor to such party.

**(D) Remand of removed actions**

In an action that has been removed from a State court pursuant to paragraph (2), if the Federal court determines that the action may be maintained in State court pursuant to this subsection, the Federal court shall remand such action to such State court.

**(4) Preservation of State jurisdiction**

The securities commission (or any agency or office performing like functions) of any State shall retain jurisdiction under the laws of such State to investigate and bring enforcement actions.

**(5) Definitions**

For purposes of this subsection, the following definitions shall apply:

**(A) Affiliate of the issuer**

The term "affiliate of the issuer" means a person that directly or indirectly, through one or more intermediaries, controls or is controlled by or is under common control with, the issuer.

**(B) Covered class action**

The term "covered class action" means—

(i) any single lawsuit in which—

(I) damages are sought on behalf of more than 50 persons or prospective class members, and questions of law or fact common to those persons or members of the prospective class, without reference to issues of individualized reliance on an alleged misstatement or omission, predominate over any questions affecting only individual persons or members; or

(II) one or more named parties seek to recover damages on a representative basis on behalf of themselves and other unnamed parties similarly situated, and questions of law or fact common to those persons or members of the prospective class predominate over any questions affecting only individual persons or members; or

(ii) any group of lawsuits filed in or pending in the same court and involving common questions of law or fact, in which—

(I) damages are sought on behalf of more than 50 persons; and

(II) the lawsuits are joined, consolidated, or otherwise proceed as a single action for any purpose.

**(C) Exception for derivative actions**

Notwithstanding subparagraph (B), the term "covered class action" does not include an exclusively derivative action brought by one or more shareholders on behalf of a corporation.

**(D) Counting of certain class members**

For purposes of this paragraph, a corporation, investment company, pension plan, partnership, or other entity, shall be treated as one person or prospective class member, but only if the entity is not established for the purpose of participating in the action.

**(E) Covered security**

The term "covered security" means a security that satisfies the standards for a covered security specified in paragraph (1) or (2) of section 18(b) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77r(b)], at the time during which it is alleged that the misrepresentation, omission, or manipulative or deceptive conduct occurred, except that such term shall not include any debt security that is exempt from registration under the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77a et seq.] pursuant to rules issued by the Commission under section 4(2) <sup>1</sup> of that Act [15 U.S.C. 77d(a)(2)].

**(F) Rule of construction**

Nothing in this paragraph shall be construed to affect the discretion of a State court in determining whether actions filed in such court should be joined, consolidated, or otherwise allowed to proceed as a single action.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §28, 48 Stat. 903; Pub. L. 94–29, §21, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 160; Pub. L. 97–303, §4, Oct. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1409; Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §§327–329, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259; Pub. L. 104–290, title I, §103(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3422; Pub. L. 105–353, title I, §101(b)(1), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3230; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §§203(a)(2), 210], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A–422, 2763A–436; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §767, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1799.)

**AMENDMENT OF SECTION**

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a) to (c) and (e), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Securities Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (f)(5)(E), is act May 27, 1933, ch. 38, title I, 48 Stat. 74, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§77a et seq.) of chapter 2A of this title. Section 4(2) of the Act was redesignated section 4(a)(2) by Pub. L. 112–106, title II, §201(b)(1), (c)(1), Apr. 5, 2012, 126 Stat. 314, and is classified to section 77d(a)(2) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 77a of this title and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–203 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) related to rights and remedies provided by this chapter and applicability of certain State securities laws.

**2000**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §210], inserted "subject to this chapter" after "privilege, or other security", substituted "any such security" for "any such instrument, if such instrument is traded pursuant to rules and regulations of a self-regulatory organization that are filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title", and inserted at end "No provision of State law regarding the offer, sale, or distribution of securities shall apply to any transaction in a security futures product, except that this sentence shall not be construed as limiting any State antifraud law of general applicability."

Subsec. (e)(4). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §203(a)(2)], added par. (4).

**1998**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–353, §101(b)(1)(A), substituted "Except as provided in subsection (f) of this section, the rights and remedies" for "The rights and remedies".

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 105–353, §101(b)(1)(B), added subsec. (f).

**1996**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–290 substituted "Except as otherwise specifically provided in this chapter, nothing" for "Nothing".

**1987**—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–181, §327, substituted "on" for "or" after "self-regulatory organization".

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 100–181, §328, substituted "change in beneficial" for "change is beneficial".

Subsec. (e)(1). Pub. L. 100–181, §329, substituted "subsequent to the date of enactment of the Securities Acts Amendments of 1975" for "subsequent to the date of enactment of the Securities Acts Amendments in 1975", which for purposes of codification was translated as "subsequent to June 4, 1975," thus requiring no change in text.

**1982**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97–303 inserted provision that no State law which prohibits or regulates the making or promoting of wagering or gaming contracts, or the operation of "bucket shops" or other similar or related activities, shall invalidate any put, call, straddle, option, privilege, or other security, or apply to any activity which is incidental or related to the offer, purchase, sale, exercise, settlement, or closeout of any such instrument, if such instrument is traded pursuant to rules and regulations of a self-regulatory organization that are filed with the Commission pursuant to section 78s(b) of this title.

**1975**—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94–29, §21(1), struck out provisions that nothing in this chapter be construed to modify existing law with regard to the binding effect on any member of an exchange of any disciplinary action taken by the authorities of an exchange and made the remaining provisions applicable to all members of and participants in all self-regulatory organizations as well as municipal securities professionals.

Subsecs. (c) to (e). Pub. L. 94–29, §21(2), added subsecs. (c) to (e).

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1998 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 105–353 not to affect or apply to any action commenced before and pending on Nov. 3, 1998, see section 101(c) of Pub. L. 105–353, set out as a note under section 77p of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

<sup>1</sup> *See References in Text note below.*

## §78cc. Validity of contracts

### (a) Waiver provisions

Any condition, stipulation, or provision binding any person to waive compliance with any provision of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder, or of any rule of a self-regulatory organization, shall be void.

**(b) Contract provisions in violation of chapter**

Every contract made in violation of any provision of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder, and every contract (including any contract for listing a security on an exchange) heretofore or hereafter made, the performance of which involves the violation of, or the continuance of any relationship or practice in violation of, any provision of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder, shall be void (1) as regards the rights of any person who, in violation of any such provision, rule, or regulation, shall have made or engaged in the performance of any such contract, and (2) as regards the rights of any person who, not being a party to such contract, shall have acquired any right thereunder with actual knowledge of the facts by reason of which the making or performance of such contract was in violation of any such provision, rule, or regulation: *Provided*, (A) That no contract shall be void by reason of this subsection because of any violation of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (3) of subsection (c) of section 78o of this title, and (B) that no contract shall be deemed to be void by reason of this subsection in any action maintained in reliance upon this subsection, by any person to or for whom any broker or dealer sells, or from or for whom any broker or dealer purchases, a security in violation of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (1) or (2) of subsection (c) of section 78o of this title, unless such action is brought within one year after the discovery that such sale or purchase involves such violation and within three years after such violation. The Commission may, in a rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to such paragraph (2) of such section 78o(c) of this title, designate such rule or regulation, or portion thereof, as a rule or regulation, or portion thereof, a contract in violation of which shall not be void by reason of this subsection.

**(c) Validity of loans, extensions of credit, and creation of liens; actual knowledge of violation**

Nothing in this chapter shall be construed (1) to affect the validity of any loan or extension of credit (or any extension or renewal thereof) made or of any lien created prior or subsequent to the enactment of this chapter, unless at the time of the making of such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or the creating of such lien, the person making such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or acquiring such lien shall have actual knowledge of facts by reason of which the making of such loan or extension of credit (or extension or renewal thereof) or the acquisition of such lien is a violation of the provisions of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder, or (2) to afford a defense to the collection of any debt or obligation or the enforcement of any lien by any person who shall have acquired such debt, obligation, or lien in good faith for value and without actual knowledge of the violation of any provision of this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder affecting the legality of such debt, obligation, or lien.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §29, 48 Stat. 903; June 25, 1938, ch. 677, §3, 52 Stat. 1076; Pub. L. 101-429, title V, §507, Oct. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 956; Pub. L. 111-203, title IX, §§927, 929T, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1852, 1867.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

**AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111-203, §§927, 929T, amended subsec. (a) identically, substituting "a self-regulatory organization," for "an exchange required thereby".

**1990**—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 101-429 substituted in cl. (A) "paragraph (3)" for "paragraph (2) or (3)" and in cl. (B) "paragraph (1) or (2)" for "paragraph (1)", and inserted at end "The Commission may, in a rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to such paragraph (2) of such section 78o(c) of this title, designate such rule or regulation, or portion thereof, as a rule or regulation, or portion thereof, a contract in violation of which shall not be void by reason of this subsection."

**1938**—Subsec. (b). Act June 25, 1938, inserted proviso.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 111-203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111-203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1990 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 101-429 effective Oct. 15, 1990, with provisions relating to civil penalties and accounting and disgorgement, see section 1(c)(1), (2) of Pub. L. 101-429, set out in a note under section 77g of this title.

**§78dd. Foreign securities exchanges**

**(a) Unlawful transactions on foreign securities exchanges**

It shall be unlawful for any broker or dealer, directly or indirectly, to make use of the mails or of any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce for the purpose of effecting on an exchange not within or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, any transaction in any security the issuer of which is a resident of, or is organized under the laws of, or has its principal place of business in, a place within or subject to the jurisdiction of the United States, in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for the protection of investors or to prevent the evasion of this chapter.

**(b) Business without the jurisdiction of the United States**

The provisions of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder shall not apply to any person insofar as he transacts a business in securities without the jurisdiction of the United States, unless he transacts such business in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate to prevent the evasion of this chapter.

**(c) Rule of construction**

No provision of this chapter that was added by the Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010, or any rule or regulation thereunder, shall apply to any person insofar as such person transacts a business in security-based swaps without the jurisdiction of the United States, unless such person transacts such business in contravention of such rules and regulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or appropriate to prevent the evasion of any provision of this chapter that was added by the Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010. This subsection shall not be construed to limit the jurisdiction of the Commission under any provision of this chapter, as in effect prior to July 21, 2010.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §30, 48 Stat. 904; Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §772(b), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1802.)

**AMENDMENT OF SECTION**

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010, referred to in subsec. (c), is title VII of Pub. L. 111–203, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1641, which enacted chapter 109 (§8301 et seq.) of this title and enacted and amended numerous other sections and notes in the Code. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 8301 of this title and Tables.

**AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–203 added subsec. (c).

**EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

**TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

**§78dd–1. Prohibited foreign trade practices by issuers****(a) Prohibition**

It shall be unlawful for any issuer which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78l of this title or which is required to file reports under section 78o(d) of this title, or for any officer, director, employee, or agent of such issuer or any stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such issuer, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce corruptly in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to—

(1) any foreign official for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official to use his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such issuer in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person;

(2) any foreign political party or official thereof or any candidate for foreign political office for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such party, official, or candidate to use its or his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such issuer in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person; or

(3) any person, while knowing that all or a portion of such money or thing of value will be offered, given, or promised, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, to any foreign political party or official thereof, or to any candidate for foreign political office, for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to use his or its influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such issuer in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person.

#### **(b) Exception for routine governmental action**

Subsections (a) and (g) shall not apply to any facilitating or expediting payment to a foreign official, political party, or party official the purpose of which is to expedite or to secure the performance of a routine governmental action by a foreign official, political party, or party official.

#### **(c) Affirmative defenses**

It shall be an affirmative defense to actions under subsection (a) or (g) that—

(1) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was lawful under the written laws and regulations of the foreign official's, political party's, party official's, or candidate's country; or

(2) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was a reasonable and bona fide expenditure, such as travel and lodging expenses, incurred by or on behalf of a foreign official, party, party official, or candidate and was directly related to—

(A) the promotion, demonstration, or explanation of products or services; or

(B) the execution or performance of a contract with a foreign government or agency thereof.

#### **(d) Guidelines by Attorney General**

Not later than one year after August 23, 1988, the Attorney General, after consultation with the Commission, the Secretary of Commerce, the United States Trade Representative, the Secretary of State, and the Secretary of the Treasury, and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall determine to what extent compliance with this section would be enhanced and the business community would be assisted by further clarification of the preceding provisions of this section and may, based on such determination and to the extent necessary and appropriate, issue—

(1) guidelines describing specific types of conduct, associated with common types of export sales arrangements and business contracts, which for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, the Attorney General determines would be in conformance with the preceding provisions of this section; and

(2) general precautionary procedures which issuers may use on a voluntary basis to conform their conduct to the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section.

The Attorney General shall issue the guidelines and procedures referred to in the preceding sentence in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and those guidelines and procedures shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

#### **(e) Opinions of Attorney General**

(1) The Attorney General, after consultation with appropriate departments and agencies of the United States and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall establish a procedure to provide responses to specific inquiries by issuers concerning conformance of their conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section. The Attorney

General shall, within 30 days after receiving such a request, issue an opinion in response to that request. The opinion shall state whether or not certain specified prospective conduct would, for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, violate the preceding provisions of this section. Additional requests for opinions may be filed with the Attorney General regarding other specified prospective conduct that is beyond the scope of conduct specified in previous requests. In any action brought under the applicable provisions of this section, there shall be a rebuttable presumption that conduct, which is specified in a request by an issuer and for which the Attorney General has issued an opinion that such conduct is in conformity with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, is in compliance with the preceding provisions of this section. Such a presumption may be rebutted by a preponderance of the evidence. In considering the presumption for purposes of this paragraph, a court shall weigh all relevant factors, including but not limited to whether the information submitted to the Attorney General was accurate and complete and whether it was within the scope of the conduct specified in any request received by the Attorney General. The Attorney General shall establish the procedure required by this paragraph in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and that procedure shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

(2) Any document or other material which is provided to, received by, or prepared in the Department of Justice or any other department or agency of the United States in connection with a request by an issuer under the procedure established under paragraph (1), shall be exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5 and shall not, except with the consent of the issuer, be made publicly available, regardless of whether the Attorney General responds to such a request or the issuer withdraws such request before receiving a response.

(3) Any issuer who has made a request to the Attorney General under paragraph (1) may withdraw such request prior to the time the Attorney General issues an opinion in response to such request. Any request so withdrawn shall have no force or effect.

(4) The Attorney General shall, to the maximum extent practicable, provide timely guidance concerning the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy with respect to the preceding provisions of this section to potential exporters and small businesses that are unable to obtain specialized counsel on issues pertaining to such provisions. Such guidance shall be limited to responses to requests under paragraph (1) concerning conformity of specified prospective conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section and general explanations of compliance responsibilities and of potential liabilities under the preceding provisions of this section.

#### **(f) Definitions**

For purposes of this section:

(1)(A) The term "foreign official" means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or of a public international organization, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality, or for or on behalf of any such public international organization.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the term "public international organization" means—

- (i) an organization that is designated by Executive order pursuant to section 288 of title 22; or
- (ii) any other international organization that is designated by the President by Executive order for the purposes of this section, effective as of the date of publication of such order in the Federal Register.

(2)(A) A person's state of mind is "knowing" with respect to conduct, a circumstance, or a result if—

- (i) such person is aware that such person is engaging in such conduct, that such circumstance exists, or that such result is substantially certain to occur; or
- (ii) such person has a firm belief that such circumstance exists or that such result is substantially certain to occur.

(B) When knowledge of the existence of a particular circumstance is required for an offense, such knowledge is established if a person is aware of a high probability of the existence of such circumstance, unless the person actually believes that such circumstance does not exist.

(3)(A) The term "routine governmental action" means only an action which is ordinarily and commonly performed by a foreign official in—

- (i) obtaining permits, licenses, or other official documents to qualify a person to do business in a foreign country;
- (ii) processing governmental papers, such as visas and work orders;
- (iii) providing police protection, mail pick-up and delivery, or scheduling inspections associated with contract performance or inspections related to transit of goods across country;
- (iv) providing phone service, power and water supply, loading and unloading cargo, or protecting perishable products or commodities from deterioration; or
- (v) actions of a similar nature.

(B) The term "routine governmental action" does not include any decision by a foreign official whether, or on what terms, to award new business to or to continue business with a particular party, or any action taken by a foreign official involved in the decisionmaking process to encourage a decision to award new business to or continue business with a particular party.

**(g) Alternative jurisdiction**

(1) It shall also be unlawful for any issuer organized under the laws of the United States, or a State, territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States or a political subdivision thereof and which has a class of securities registered pursuant to section 78l of this title or which is required to file reports under section 78o(d) of this title, or for any United States person that is an officer, director, employee, or agent of such issuer or a stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such issuer, to corruptly do any act outside the United States in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to any of the persons or entities set forth in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (a) of this section for the purposes set forth therein, irrespective of whether such issuer or such officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder makes use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in furtherance of such offer, gift, payment, promise, or authorization.

(2) As used in this subsection, the term "United States person" means a national of the United States (as defined in section 1101 of title 8) or any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship organized under the laws of the United States or any State, territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, or any political subdivision thereof.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §30A, as added Pub. L. 95–213, title I, §103(a), Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1495; amended Pub. L. 100–418, title V, §5003(a), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1415; Pub. L. 105–366, §2(a)–(c), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3302, 3303.)

**AMENDMENTS**

**1998**—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(a)(1), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

"(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or".

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(a)(2), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

"(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate,".

Subsec. (a)(3)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(a)(3), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

"(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(c)(2), substituted "Subsections (a) and (g)" for "Subsection (a)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(c)(3), substituted "subsection (a) or (g)" for "subsection (a)".

Subsec. (f)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(b), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: "The term 'foreign official' means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality."

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(c)(1), added subsec. (g).

**1988**—Pub. L. 100–418 substituted "Prohibited foreign trade" for "Foreign corrupt" in section catchline and amended text generally, revising and restating provisions of subsec. (a) relating to prohibitions, adding subsecs. (b) to (e), and redesignating provisions of subsec. (b) relating to definitions as subsec. (f) and amending those provisions generally.

**TREATMENT OF INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS PROVIDING COMMERCIAL COMMUNICATIONS SERVICES**

Pub. L. 105–366, §5, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3309, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section:

"(1) INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION PROVIDING COMMERCIAL COMMUNICATIONS SERVICES.—The term 'international organization providing commercial communications services' means—

"(A) the International Telecommunications Satellite Organization established pursuant to the Agreement Relating to the International Telecommunications Satellite Organization; and

"(B) the International Mobile Satellite Organization established pursuant to the Convention on the International Maritime Satellite Organization.

"(2) PRO-COMPETITIVE PRIVATIZATION.—The term 'pro-competitive privatization' means a privatization that the President determines to be consistent with the United States policy of obtaining full and open competition to such organizations (or their successors), and nondiscriminatory market access, in the provision of satellite services.

"(b) TREATMENT AS PUBLIC INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS.—

"(1) TREATMENT.—An international organization providing commercial communications services shall be treated as a public international organization for purposes of section 30A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78dd–1) and sections 104 and 104A of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (15 U.S.C. 78dd–2 [and 78dd–3]) until such time as the President certifies to the Committee on Commerce [now Committee on Energy and Commerce] of the House of Representatives and the Committees on Banking, Housing and Urban Affairs and Commerce, Science, and Transportation that such international organization providing commercial communications services has achieved a pro-competitive privatization.

"(2) LIMITATION ON EFFECT OF TREATMENT.—The requirement for a certification under paragraph (1), and any certification made under such paragraph, shall not be construed to affect the administration by the Federal Communications Commission of the Communications Act of 1934 [47 U.S.C. 151 et seq.] in authorizing the provision of services to, from, or within the United States over space segment of the international satellite organizations, or the privatized affiliates or successors thereof.

"(c) EXTENSION OF LEGAL PROCESS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as required by international agreements to which the United States is a party, an international organization providing commercial communications services, its officials and employees, and its records shall not be accorded immunity from suit or legal process for any act or omission taken in connection with such organization's capacity as a provider, directly or indirectly, of commercial telecommunications services to, from, or within the United States.

"(2) NO EFFECT ON PERSONAL LIABILITY.—Paragraph (1) shall not affect any immunity from personal liability of any individual who is an official or employee of an international organization providing commercial communications services.

"(3) EFFECTIVE DATE.—This subsection shall take effect on May 1, 1999.

"(d) ELIMINATION OR LIMITATION OF EXCEPTIONS.—

"(1) ACTION REQUIRED.—The President shall, in a manner that is consistent with requirements in international agreements to which the United States is a party, expeditiously take all appropriate actions necessary to eliminate or to reduce substantially all privileges and immunities that are accorded to an international organization described in subparagraph (A) or (B) of subsection (a)(1), its officials, its employees, or its records, and that are not eliminated pursuant to subsection (c).

"(2) DESIGNATION OF AGREEMENTS.—The President shall designate which agreements constitute international agreements to which the United States is a party for purposes of this section.

"(e) PRESERVATION OF LAW ENFORCEMENT AND INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS.—Nothing in subsection (c) or (d) of this section shall affect any immunity from suit or legal process of an international organization providing commercial communications services, or the privatized affiliates or successors thereof, for acts or omissions—

"(1) under chapter 119, 121, 206, or 601 of title 18, United States Code, the Foreign Intelligence Surveillance Act of 1978 (50 U.S.C. 1801 et seq.), section 514 of the Comprehensive Drug Abuse Prevention and Control Act of 1970 (21 U.S.C. 884), or Rule 104, 501, or 608 of the Federal Rules of Evidence [28 U.S.C. App.];

"(2) under similar State laws providing protection to service providers cooperating with law enforcement agencies pursuant to State electronic surveillance or evidence laws, rules, regulations, or procedures; or

"(3) pursuant to a court order.

"(f) RULES OF CONSTRUCTION.—

"(1) NEGOTIATIONS.—Nothing in this section shall affect the President's existing constitutional authority regarding the time, scope, and objectives of international negotiations.

"(2) PRIVATIZATION.—Nothing in this section shall be construed as legislative authorization for the privatization of INTELSAT or Inmarsat, nor to increase the President's authority with respect to negotiations concerning such privatization."

[Memorandum of President of the United States, Nov. 16, 1998, 63 F.R. 65997, delegated to Secretary of State functions and authorities vested in the President by section 5(d)(2) of Pub. L. 105–366, set out above.]

## ENFORCEMENT AND MONITORING

Pub. L. 105–366, §6, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3311, provided that:

"(a) REPORTS REQUIRED.—Not later than July 1 of 1999 and each of the 5 succeeding years, the Secretary of Commerce shall submit to the House of Representatives and the Senate a report that contains the following information with respect to implementation of the Convention:

"(1) RATIFICATION.—A list of the countries that have ratified the Convention, the dates of ratification by such countries, and the entry into force for each such country.

"(2) DOMESTIC LEGISLATION.—A description of domestic laws enacted by each party to the Convention that implement commitments under the Convention, and assessment of the compatibility of such laws with the Convention.

"(3) ENFORCEMENT.—As assessment of the measures taken by each party to the Convention during the previous year to fulfill its obligations under the Convention and achieve its object and purpose including—

"(A) an assessment of the enforcement of the domestic laws described in paragraph (2);

"(B) an assessment of the efforts by each such party to promote public awareness of such domestic laws and the achievement of such object and purpose; and

"(C) an assessment of the effectiveness, transparency, and viability of the monitoring process for the Convention, including its inclusion of input from the private sector and nongovernmental organizations.

"(4) LAWS PROHIBITING TAX DEDUCTION OF BRIBES.—An explanation of the domestic laws enacted by each party to the Convention that would prohibit the deduction of bribes in the computation of domestic taxes.

"(5) NEW SIGNATORIES.—A description of efforts to expand international participation in the Convention by adding new signatories to the Convention and by assuring that all countries which are or become members of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development are also parties to the Convention.

"(6) SUBSEQUENT EFFORTS.—An assessment of the status of efforts to strengthen the Convention by extending the prohibitions contained in the Convention to cover bribes to political parties, party officials, and candidates for political office.

"(7) ADVANTAGES.—Advantages, in terms of immunities, market access, or otherwise, in the countries or regions served by the organizations described in section 5(a) [set out as a note above], the reason for such advantages, and an assessment of progress toward fulfilling the policy described in that section.

"(8) BRIBERY AND TRANSPARENCY.—An assessment of anti-bribery programs and transparency with respect to each of the international organizations covered by this Act [enacting section 78dd–3 of this title, amending this section and sections 78dd–2 and 78ff of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section].

"(9) PRIVATE SECTOR REVIEW.—A description of the steps taken to ensure full involvement of United States private sector participants and representatives of nongovernmental organizations in the monitoring and implementation of the Convention.

"(10) ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.—In consultation with the private sector participants and representatives of nongovernmental organizations described in paragraph (9), a list of additional means for enlarging the scope of the Convention and otherwise increasing its effectiveness. Such additional means shall include, but not be limited to, improved recordkeeping provisions and the desirability of expanding the applicability of the Convention to additional individuals and organizations and the impact on United States business of section 30A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78dd–1] and sections 104 and 104A of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 [15 U.S.C. 78dd–2, 78dd–3].

"(b) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this section, the term 'Convention' means the Convention on Combating Bribery of Foreign Public Officials in International Business Transactions adopted on November 21, 1997, and signed on December 17, 1997, by the United States and 32 other nations."

### **INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS CONCERNING ACTS PROHIBITED WITH RESPECT TO ISSUERS AND DOMESTIC CONCERNS; REPORT TO CONGRESS**

Pub. L. 100–418, title V, §5003(d), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1424, provided that:

"(1) NEGOTIATIONS.—It is the sense of the Congress that the President should pursue the negotiation of an international agreement, among the members of the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development, to govern persons from those countries concerning acts prohibited with respect to issuers and domestic concerns by the amendments made by this section [amending sections 78dd–1, 78dd–2, and 78ff of this title]. Such international agreement should include a process by which problems and conflicts associated with such acts could be resolved.

"(2) REPORT TO CONGRESS.—(A) Within 1 year after the date of the enactment of this Act [Aug. 23, 1988], the President shall submit to the Congress a report on—

"(i) the progress of the negotiations referred to in paragraph (1),[;]

"(ii) those steps which the executive branch and the Congress should consider taking in the event that these negotiations do not successfully eliminate any competitive disadvantage of United States businesses that results when persons from other countries commit the acts described in paragraph (1); and

"(iii) possible actions that could be taken to promote cooperation by other countries in international efforts to prevent bribery of foreign officials, candidates, or parties in third countries.

"(B) The President shall include in the report submitted under subparagraph (A)—

"(i) any legislative recommendations necessary to give the President the authority to take appropriate action to carry out clauses (ii) and (iii) of subparagraph (A);

"(ii) an analysis of the potential effect on the interests of the United States, including United States national security, when persons from other countries commit the acts described in paragraph (1); and

"(iii) an assessment of the current and future role of private initiatives in curtailing such acts."

[For delegation of functions of the President under section 5003(d)(1) of Pub. L. 100-418 to the Secretary of State, see section 3-101 of Ex. Ord. No. 12661, Dec. 27, 1988, 54 F.R. 779, set out as a note under section 2901 of Title 19, Customs Duties.]

## **EX. ORD. NO. 13259. DESIGNATION OF PUBLIC INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATIONS FOR PURPOSES OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934 AND THE FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES ACT OF 1977**

Ex. Ord. No. 13259, Mar. 19, 2002, 67 F.R. 13239, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including section 30A(f)(1)(B)(ii) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78dd-1(f)(1)(B)(ii)) and sections 104(h)(2)(B)(ii) and 104A(f)(2)(B)(ii) of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977 (15 U.S.C. 78dd-2(h)(2)(B)(ii), 78dd-3(f)(2)(B)(ii)), I hereby designate as "public international organizations" for the purposes of application of section 30A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and sections 104 and 104A of the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977:

(a) The European Union, including: the European Communities (the European Community, the European Coal & Steel Community, and the European Atomic Energy Community); institutions of the European Union, such as the European Commission, the Council of the European Union, the European Parliament, the European Court of Justice, the European Court of Auditors, the Economic and Social Committee, the Committee of the Regions, the European Central Bank, and the European Investment Bank; and any departments, agencies, and instrumentalities thereof; and

(b) The European Police Office (Europol), including any departments, agencies, and instrumentalities thereof.

Designation in this Executive Order is intended solely to further the purposes of the statutes mentioned above and is not determinative of whether an entity is a public international organization for the purpose of other statutes or regulations.

GEORGE W. BUSH.

## **§78dd-2. Prohibited foreign trade practices by domestic concerns**

### **(a) Prohibition**

It shall be unlawful for any domestic concern, other than an issuer which is subject to section 78dd-1 of this title, or for any officer, director, employee, or agent of such domestic concern or any stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such domestic concern, to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce corruptly in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to—

(1) any foreign official for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official to use his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such domestic concern in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person;

(2) any foreign political party or official thereof or any candidate for foreign political office for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such party, official, or candidate to use its or his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such domestic concern in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person; or

(3) any person, while knowing that all or a portion of such money or thing of value will be offered, given, or promised, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, to any foreign political party or official thereof, or to any candidate for foreign political office, for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to use his or its influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such domestic concern in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person.

**(b) Exception for routine governmental action**

Subsections (a) and (i) shall not apply to any facilitating or expediting payment to a foreign official, political party, or party official the purpose of which is to expedite or to secure the performance of a routine governmental action by a foreign official, political party, or party official.

**(c) Affirmative defenses**

It shall be an affirmative defense to actions under subsection (a) or (i) that—

(1) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was lawful under the written laws and regulations of the foreign official's, political party's, party official's, or candidate's country; or

(2) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was a reasonable and bona fide expenditure, such as travel and lodging expenses, incurred by or on behalf of a foreign official, party, party official, or candidate and was directly related to—

(A) the promotion, demonstration, or explanation of products or services; or

(B) the execution or performance of a contract with a foreign government or agency thereof.

**(d) Injunctive relief**

(1) When it appears to the Attorney General that any domestic concern to which this section applies, or officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder thereof, is engaged, or about to engage, in any act or practice constituting a violation of subsection (a) or (i) of this section, the Attorney General may, in his discretion, bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States to enjoin such act or practice, and upon a proper showing, a permanent injunction or a temporary restraining order shall be granted without bond.

(2) For the purpose of any civil investigation which, in the opinion of the Attorney General, is necessary and proper to enforce this section, the Attorney General or his designee are empowered to administer oaths and affirmations, subpoena witnesses, take evidence, and require the production of any books, papers, or other documents which the Attorney General deems relevant or material to such investigation. The attendance of witnesses and the production of documentary evidence may be required from any place in the United States, or any territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, at any designated place of hearing.

(3) In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpoena issued to, any person, the Attorney General may invoke the aid of any court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which such investigation or proceeding is carried on, or where such person resides or carries on business, in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of books, papers, or other documents. Any such court may issue an order requiring such person to appear before the Attorney General or his designee, there to produce records, if so ordered, or to give testimony touching the matter under investigation. Any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof. All process in any such case may be served in the judicial district in which such person resides or may be found. The Attorney General may make such rules relating to civil investigations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement the provisions of this subsection.

**(e) Guidelines by Attorney General**

Not later than 6 months after August 23, 1988, the Attorney General, after consultation with the Securities and Exchange Commission, the Secretary of Commerce, the United States Trade Representative, the Secretary of State, and the Secretary of the Treasury, and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall determine to what extent compliance with this section would be enhanced and the business community would be assisted by further clarification of the preceding provisions of this section and may, based on such determination and to the extent necessary and appropriate, issue—

(1) guidelines describing specific types of conduct, associated with common types of export sales arrangements and business contracts, which for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, the Attorney General determines would be in conformance with the preceding provisions of this section; and

(2) general precautionary procedures which domestic concerns may use on a voluntary basis to conform their conduct to the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section.

The Attorney General shall issue the guidelines and procedures referred to in the preceding sentence in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and those guidelines and procedures shall be subject to the

provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

#### **(f) Opinions of Attorney General**

(1) The Attorney General, after consultation with appropriate departments and agencies of the United States and after obtaining the views of all interested persons through public notice and comment procedures, shall establish a procedure to provide responses to specific inquiries by domestic concerns concerning conformance of their conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section. The Attorney General shall, within 30 days after receiving such a request, issue an opinion in response to that request. The opinion shall state whether or not certain specified prospective conduct would, for purposes of the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, violate the preceding provisions of this section. Additional requests for opinions may be filed with the Attorney General regarding other specified prospective conduct that is beyond the scope of conduct specified in previous requests. In any action brought under the applicable provisions of this section, there shall be a rebuttable presumption that conduct, which is specified in a request by a domestic concern and for which the Attorney General has issued an opinion that such conduct is in conformity with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy, is in compliance with the preceding provisions of this section. Such a presumption may be rebutted by a preponderance of the evidence. In considering the presumption for purposes of this paragraph, a court shall weigh all relevant factors, including but not limited to whether the information submitted to the Attorney General was accurate and complete and whether it was within the scope of the conduct specified in any request received by the Attorney General. The Attorney General shall establish the procedure required by this paragraph in accordance with the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 5 of title 5 and that procedure shall be subject to the provisions of chapter 7 of that title.

(2) Any document or other material which is provided to, received by, or prepared in the Department of Justice or any other department or agency of the United States in connection with a request by a domestic concern under the procedure established under paragraph (1), shall be exempt from disclosure under section 552 of title 5 and shall not, except with the consent of the domestic concern, be made publicly available, regardless of whether the Attorney General responds to such a request or the domestic concern withdraws such request before receiving a response.

(3) Any domestic concern who has made a request to the Attorney General under paragraph (1) may withdraw such request prior to the time the Attorney General issues an opinion in response to such request. Any request so withdrawn shall have no force or effect.

(4) The Attorney General shall, to the maximum extent practicable, provide timely guidance concerning the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy with respect to the preceding provisions of this section to potential exporters and small businesses that are unable to obtain specialized counsel on issues pertaining to such provisions. Such guidance shall be limited to responses to requests under paragraph (1) concerning conformity of specified prospective conduct with the Department of Justice's present enforcement policy regarding the preceding provisions of this section and general explanations of compliance responsibilities and of potential liabilities under the preceding provisions of this section.

#### **(g) Penalties**

(1)(A) Any domestic concern that is not a natural person and that violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be fined not more than \$2,000,000.

(B) Any domestic concern that is not a natural person and that violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(2)(A) Any natural person that is an officer, director, employee, or agent of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who willfully violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be fined not more than \$100,000 or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

(B) Any natural person that is an officer, director, employee, or agent of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who violates subsection (a) or (i) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(3) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) upon any officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder of a domestic concern, such fine may not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such domestic concern.

#### **(h) Definitions**

For purposes of this section:

(1) The term "domestic concern" means—

(A) any individual who is a citizen, national, or resident of the United States; and

(B) any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship which has its principal place of business in the United States, or which is organized under the laws of a State of the United States or a territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States.

(2)(A) The term "foreign official" means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or of a public international organization, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality, or for or on behalf of any such public international organization.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the term "public international organization" means—

(i) an organization that is designated by Executive order pursuant to section 288 of title 22; or

(ii) any other international organization that is designated by the President by Executive order for the purposes of this section, effective as of the date of publication of such order in the Federal Register.

(3)(A) A person's state of mind is "knowing" with respect to conduct, a circumstance, or a result if—

(i) such person is aware that such person is engaging in such conduct, that such circumstance exists, or that such result is substantially certain to occur; or

(ii) such person has a firm belief that such circumstance exists or that such result is substantially certain to occur.

(B) When knowledge of the existence of a particular circumstance is required for an offense, such knowledge is established if a person is aware of a high probability of the existence of such circumstance, unless the person actually believes that such circumstance does not exist.

(4)(A) The term "routine governmental action" means only an action which is ordinarily and commonly performed by a foreign official in—

(i) obtaining permits, licenses, or other official documents to qualify a person to do business in a foreign country;

(ii) processing governmental papers, such as visas and work orders;

(iii) providing police protection, mail pick-up and delivery, or scheduling inspections associated with contract performance or inspections related to transit of goods across country;

(iv) providing phone service, power and water supply, loading and unloading cargo, or protecting perishable products or commodities from deterioration; or

(v) actions of a similar nature.

(B) The term "routine governmental action" does not include any decision by a foreign official whether, or on what terms, to award new business to or to continue business with a particular party, or any action taken by a foreign official involved in the decision-making process to encourage a decision to award new business to or continue business with a particular party.

(5) The term "interstate commerce" means trade, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between any foreign country and any State or between any State and any place or ship outside thereof, and such term includes the intrastate use of—

(A) a telephone or other interstate means of communication, or

(B) any other interstate instrumentality.

#### **(i) Alternative jurisdiction**

(1) It shall also be unlawful for any United States person to corruptly do any act outside the United States in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to any of the persons or entities set forth in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of subsection (a), for the purposes set forth therein, irrespective of whether such United States person makes use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce in furtherance of such offer, gift, payment, promise, or authorization.

(2) As used in this subsection, the term "United States person" means a national of the United States (as defined in section 1101 of title 8) or any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship organized under the laws of the United States or any State, territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, or any political subdivision thereof.

(Pub. L. 95–213, title I, §104, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1496; Pub. L. 100–418, title V, §5003(c), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1419; Pub. L. 103–322, title XXXIII, §330005, Sept. 13, 1994, 108 Stat. 2142; Pub. L. 105–366, §3, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3304.)

### **CODIFICATION**

Section was enacted as part of Pub. L. 95–213, the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, and not as part of act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which comprises this chapter.

### **AMENDMENTS**

**1998**—Subsec. (a)(1)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(a)(1), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

"(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or".

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(a)(2), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

"(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, or (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate,".

Subsec. (a)(3)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(a)(3), amended subpar. (A) generally. Prior to amendment, subpar. (A) read as follows:

"(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, or (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or"

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(d)(2), substituted "Subsections (a) and (i)" for "Subsection (a)".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(d)(3), substituted "subsection (a) or (i)" for "subsection (a)" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(d)(4), substituted "subsection (a) or (i)" for "subsection (a)".

Subsec. (g)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(b)(1), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows:

"(1)(A) Any domestic concern that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than \$2,000,000.

"(B) Any domestic concern that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General."

Subsec. (g)(2). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(b)(2), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows:

"(2)(A) Any officer or director of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who willfully violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than \$100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

"(B) Any employee or agent of a domestic concern who is a United States citizen, national, or resident or is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (other than an officer, director, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern), and who willfully violates subsection (a) of this section, shall be fined not more than \$100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

"(C) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of a domestic concern, or stockholder acting on behalf of such domestic concern, who violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General."

Subsec. (h)(2). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(c), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "The term 'foreign official' means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality."

Subsec. (h)(4)(A). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(e), substituted "The" for "For purposes of paragraph (1), the" in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 105–366, §3(d)(1), added subsec. (i).

1994—Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 103–322 substituted "domestic concern" for "issuer" in closing provisions.

1988—Pub. L. 100–418 substituted "Prohibited foreign trade" for "Foreign corrupt" in section catchline and amended text generally, revising and restating as subsecs. (a) to (h) provisions of former subsecs. (a) to (d).

### **§78dd–3. Prohibited foreign trade practices by persons other than issuers or domestic concerns**

#### **(a) Prohibition**

It shall be unlawful for any person other than an issuer that is subject to section 78dd–1 of this title or a domestic concern (as defined in section 78dd–2 of this title), or for any officer, director, employee, or agent of such person or any stockholder thereof acting on behalf of such person, while in the territory of the United States, corruptly to make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate commerce or to do any other act in furtherance of an offer, payment, promise to pay, or authorization of the payment of any money, or offer, gift, promise to give, or authorization of the giving of anything of value to—

(1) any foreign official for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official in his official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such official, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official to use his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person;

(2) any foreign political party or official thereof or any candidate for foreign political office for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such party, official, or candidate in its or his official capacity, (ii) inducing such party, official, or candidate to do or omit to do an act in violation of the lawful duty of such party, official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such party, official, or candidate to use its or his influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person; or

(3) any person, while knowing that all or a portion of such money or thing of value will be offered, given, or promised, directly or indirectly, to any foreign official, to any foreign political party or official thereof, or to any candidate for foreign political office, for purposes of—

(A)(i) influencing any act or decision of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate in his or its official capacity, (ii) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to do or omit to do any act in violation of the lawful duty of such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate, or (iii) securing any improper advantage; or

(B) inducing such foreign official, political party, party official, or candidate to use his or its influence with a foreign government or instrumentality thereof to affect or influence any act or decision of such government or instrumentality,

in order to assist such person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, any person.

**(b) Exception for routine governmental action**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to any facilitating or expediting payment to a foreign official, political party, or party official the purpose of which is to expedite or to secure the performance of a routine governmental action by a foreign official, political party, or party official.

**(c) Affirmative defenses**

It shall be an affirmative defense to actions under subsection (a) of this section that—

(1) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was lawful under the written laws and regulations of the foreign official's, political party's, party official's, or candidate's country; or

(2) the payment, gift, offer, or promise of anything of value that was made, was a reasonable and bona fide expenditure, such as travel and lodging expenses, incurred by or on behalf of a foreign official, party, party official, or candidate and was directly related to—

(A) the promotion, demonstration, or explanation of products or services; or

(B) the execution or performance of a contract with a foreign government or agency thereof.

**(d) Injunctive relief**

(1) When it appears to the Attorney General that any person to which this section applies, or officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder thereof, is engaged, or about to engage, in any act or practice constituting a violation of subsection (a) of this section, the Attorney General may, in his discretion, bring a civil action in an appropriate district court of the United States to enjoin such act or practice, and upon a proper showing, a permanent injunction or a temporary restraining order shall be granted without bond.

(2) For the purpose of any civil investigation which, in the opinion of the Attorney General, is necessary and proper to enforce this section, the Attorney General or his designee are empowered to administer oaths and affirmations, subpoena witnesses, take evidence, and require the production of any books, papers, or other documents which the Attorney General deems relevant or material to such investigation. The attendance of witnesses and the production of documentary evidence may be required from any place in the United States, or any territory, possession, or commonwealth of the United States, at any designated place of hearing.

(3) In case of contumacy by, or refusal to obey a subpoena issued to, any person, the Attorney General may invoke the aid of any court of the United States within the jurisdiction of which such investigation or proceeding is carried on, or where such person resides or carries on business, in requiring the attendance and testimony of witnesses and the production of books, papers, or other documents. Any such court may issue an order requiring such person to appear before the Attorney General or his designee, there to produce records, if so ordered, or to give testimony touching the matter under investigation. Any failure to obey such order of the court may be punished by such court as a contempt thereof.

(4) All process in any such case may be served in the judicial district in which such person resides or may be found. The Attorney General may make such rules relating to civil investigations as may be necessary or appropriate to implement the provisions of this subsection.

**(e) Penalties**

(1)(A) Any juridical person that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than \$2,000,000.

(B) Any juridical person that violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(2)(A) Any natural person who willfully violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than \$100,000 or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

(B) Any natural person who violates subsection (a) of this section shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Attorney General.

(3) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) upon any officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder of a person, such fine may not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such person.

**(f) Definitions**

For purposes of this section:

(1) The term "person", when referring to an offender, means any natural person other than a national of the United States (as defined in section 1101 of title 8 <sup>1</sup> or any corporation, partnership, association, joint-stock company, business trust, unincorporated organization, or sole proprietorship organized under the law of a foreign nation or a political subdivision thereof.

(2)(A) The term "foreign official" means any officer or employee of a foreign government or any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof, or of a public international organization, or any person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any such government or department, agency, or instrumentality, or for or on behalf of any such public international organization.

(B) For purposes of subparagraph (A), the term "public international organization" means—

- (i) an organization that is designated by Executive order pursuant to section 288 of title 22; or
- (ii) any other international organization that is designated by the President by Executive order for the purposes of this section, effective as of the date of publication of such order in the Federal Register.

(3)(A) A person's state of mind is knowing, with respect to conduct, a circumstance or a result if—

- (i) such person is aware that such person is engaging in such conduct, that such circumstance exists, or that such result is substantially certain to occur; or
- (ii) such person has a firm belief that such circumstance exists or that such result is substantially certain to occur.

(B) When knowledge of the existence of a particular circumstance is required for an offense, such knowledge is established if a person is aware of a high probability of the existence of such circumstance, unless the person actually believes that such circumstance does not exist.

(4)(A) The term "routine governmental action" means only an action which is ordinarily and commonly performed by a foreign official in—

- (i) obtaining permits, licenses, or other official documents to qualify a person to do business in a foreign country;
- (ii) processing governmental papers, such as visas and work orders;
- (iii) providing police protection, mail pick-up and delivery, or scheduling inspections associated with contract performance or inspections related to transit of goods across country;
- (iv) providing phone service, power and water supply, loading and unloading cargo, or protecting perishable products or commodities from deterioration; or
- (v) actions of a similar nature.

(B) The term "routine governmental action" does not include any decision by a foreign official whether, or on what terms, to award new business to or to continue business with a particular party, or any action taken by a foreign official involved in the decision-making process to encourage a decision to award new business to or continue business with a particular party.

(5) The term "interstate commerce" means trade, commerce, transportation, or communication among the several States, or between any foreign country and any State or between any State and any place or ship outside thereof, and such term includes the intrastate use of—

- (A) a telephone or other interstate means of communication, or
- (B) any other interstate instrumentality.

(Pub. L. 95–213, title I, §104A, as added Pub. L. 105–366, §4, Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3306.)

**CODIFICATION**

Section was enacted as part of Pub. L. 95–213, the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, and not as part of act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which comprises this chapter.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. A closing parenthesis probably should appear.

**§78ee. Transaction fees**

**(a) Recovery of costs of annual appropriation**

The Commission shall, in accordance with this section, collect transaction fees and assessments that are designed to recover the costs to the Government of the annual appropriation to the Commission by Congress.

**(b) Exchange-traded securities**

Subject to subsection (j), each national securities exchange shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate equal to \$15 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>100</sub> per \$1,000,000 of the aggregate dollar amount of sales of securities (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)) transacted on such national securities exchange.

**(c) Off-exchange trades of exchange registered and last-sale-reported securities**

Subject to subsection (j), each national securities association shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate equal to \$15 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>100</sub> per \$1,000,000 of the aggregate dollar amount of sales transacted by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange of securities (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)) registered on a national securities exchange or subject to prompt last sale reporting pursuant to the rules of the Commission or a registered national securities association.

**(d) Assessments on security futures transactions**

Each national securities exchange and national securities association shall pay to the Commission an assessment equal to \$0.009 for each round turn transaction (treated as including one purchase and one sale of a contract of sale for future delivery) on a security future traded on such national securities exchange or by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange, except that for fiscal year 2007 and each succeeding fiscal year such assessment shall be equal to \$0.0042 for each such transaction.

**(e) Dates for payments**

The fees and assessments required by subsections (b), (c), and (d) of this section shall be paid—

(1) on or before March 15, with respect to transactions and sales occurring during the period beginning on the preceding September 1 and ending at the close of the preceding December 31; and

(2) on or before September 25, with respect to transactions and sales occurring during the period beginning on the preceding January 1 and ending at the close of the preceding August 31.

**(f) Exemptions**

The Commission, by rule, may exempt any sale of securities or any class of sales of securities from any fee or assessment imposed by this section, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the equal regulation of markets and brokers and dealers, and the development of a national market system.

**(g) Publication**

The Commission shall publish in the Federal Register notices of the fee and assessment rates applicable under this section for each fiscal year not later than 30 days after the date on which an Act making a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted, together with any estimates or projections on which such fees are based.

**(h) Pro rata application**

The rates per \$1,000,000 required by this section shall be applied pro rata to amounts and balances of less than \$1,000,000.

**(i) Deposit of fees**

**(1) Offsetting collections**

Fees collected pursuant to subsections (b), (c), and (d) for any fiscal year—

(A) shall be deposited and credited as offsetting collections to the account providing appropriations to the Commission; and

(B) except as provided in subsection (k), shall not be collected for any fiscal year except to the extent provided in advance in appropriation Acts.

**(2) General revenues prohibited**

No fees collected pursuant to subsections (b), (c), and (d) for fiscal year 2002 or any succeeding fiscal year shall be deposited and credited as general revenue of the Treasury.

**(j) Adjustments to fee rates**

**(1) Annual adjustment**

Subject to subsections (i)(1)(B) and (k), for each fiscal year, the Commission shall by order adjust each of the rates applicable under subsections (b) and (c) for such fiscal year to a uniform adjusted rate that, when applied to the baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales for such fiscal year, is reasonably likely to produce aggregate fee collections under this section (including assessments collected under subsection (d) of this section) that are equal to the regular appropriation to the Commission by Congress for such fiscal year.

**(2) Mid-year adjustment**

Subject to subsections (i)(1)(B) and (k), for each fiscal year, the Commission shall determine, by March 1 of such fiscal year, whether, based on the actual aggregate dollar volume of sales during the first 5 months of such fiscal year, the baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar volume of sales used under paragraph (1) for such fiscal year is reasonably likely to be 10 percent (or more) greater or less than the actual aggregate dollar volume of sales for such fiscal year. If the Commission so determines, the Commission shall by order, no later than March 1, adjust each of

the rates applicable under subsections (b) and (c) for such fiscal year to a uniform adjusted rate that, when applied to the revised estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales for the remainder of such fiscal year, is reasonably likely to produce aggregate fee collections under this section (including fees collected during such five-month period and assessments collected under subsection (d) of this section) that are equal to the regular appropriation to the Commission by Congress for such fiscal year. In making such revised estimate, the Commission shall, after consultation with the Congressional Budget Office and the Office of Management and Budget, use the same methodology required by subsection (l).

### **(3) Review**

In exercising its authority under this subsection, the Commission shall not be required to comply with the provisions of section 553 of title 5. An adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (1) or (2) and published under subsection (g) shall not be subject to judicial review.

### **(4) Effective date**

#### **(A) Annual adjustment**

Subject to subsections (i)(1)(B) and (k), an adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (1) shall take effect on the later of—

- (i) the first day of the fiscal year to which such rate applies; or
- (ii) 60 days after the date on which an Act making a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted.

#### **(B) Mid-year adjustment**

An adjusted rate prescribed under paragraph (2) shall take effect on April 1 of the fiscal year to which such rate applies.

### **(k) Lapse of appropriation**

If on the first day of a fiscal year a regular appropriation to the Commission has not been enacted, the Commission shall continue to collect (as offsetting collections) the fees and assessments under subsections (b), (c), and (d) at the rate in effect during the preceding fiscal year, until 60 days after the date such a regular appropriation is enacted.

### **(l) Baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales**

The baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales for any fiscal year is the baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales of securities (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)) to be transacted on each national securities exchange and by or through any member of each national securities association (otherwise than on a national securities exchange) during such fiscal year as determined by the Commission, after consultation with the Congressional Budget Office and the Office of Management and Budget, using the methodology required for making projections pursuant to section 907 of title 2.

### **(m) Transmittal of Commission budget requests**

#### **(1) Budget required**

For fiscal year 2012, and each fiscal year thereafter, the Commission shall prepare and submit a budget to the President. Whenever the Commission submits a budget estimate or request to the President or the Office of Management and Budget, the Commission shall concurrently transmit copies of the estimate or request to the Committee on Appropriations of the Senate, the Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate, and the Committee on Financial Services of the House of Representatives.

#### **(2) Submission to Congress**

The President shall submit each budget submitted under paragraph (1) to Congress, in unaltered form, together with the annual budget for the Administration submitted by the President.

#### **(3) Contents**

The Commission shall include in each budget submitted under paragraph (1)—

- (A) an itemization of the amount of funds necessary to carry out the functions of the Commission.
- (B) an amount to be designated as contingency funding to be used by the Commission to address unanticipated needs; and
- (C) a designation of any activities of the Commission for which multi-year budget authority would be suitable.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §31, 48 Stat. 904; Mar. 17, 1944, ch. 101, 58 Stat. 117; Pub. L. 94–29, §22, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 162; Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, §405(a), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3442; Pub. L. 105–353, title III, §301(b) (14), Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3236; Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)], Dec. 21, 2000, 114 Stat. 2763, 2763A-432; Pub. L. 107–123, §§2, 3, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2390; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §991(a)(1), (d)(1), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1950, 1954.)

## **AMENDMENTS**

**2010**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(a)(1)(A), added subsec. (a) and struck out former subsec. (a). Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "The Commission shall, in accordance with this section, collect transaction fees and assessments that are designed to recover the costs to the Government of the supervision and regulation of securities markets and securities professionals, and costs related to such supervision and regulation, including enforcement activities, policy and rulemaking activities, administration, legal services, and international regulatory activities."

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(a)(1)(B), substituted "September 25" for "September 30".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(a)(1)(C), substituted "30 days after the date on which an Act making a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted" for "April 30 of the fiscal year preceding the fiscal year to which such rate applies".

Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(a)(1)(D), added subsec. (j) and struck out former subsec. (j) which related to recapture of projection windfalls for further rate reductions.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(a)(1)(E), substituted "60 days" for "30 days".

Subsec. (l). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(a)(1)(F), substituted "Baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales" for "Definitions" in heading and struck out introductory provisions "For purposes of this section:", par. (2) designation and heading "Baseline estimate of the aggregate dollar amount of sales", and par. (1) which provided table of target offsetting collection amounts for fiscal years 2002 through 2011.

Subsec. (m). Pub. L. 111–203, §991(d)(1), added subsec. (m).

**2002**—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(1), substituted "Subject to subsection (j), each" for "Every" and struck out at end "Fees collected pursuant to this subsection shall be deposited and collected as general revenue of the Treasury."

Pub. L. 107–123, §2(1)–(3), substituted "\$15 per \$1,000,000" for "1/300 of one percent" and "security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)" for "and security futures products" and struck out ", except that for fiscal year 2007 or any succeeding fiscal year such rate shall be equal to 1/800 of one percent of such aggregate dollar amount of sales" before period at end of first sentence.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(3), redesignated subsec. (d) as (c), substituted "Off-exchange trades of exchange registered and last-sale-reported securities" for "Off-exchange trades of last-sale-reported securities" in subsec. heading, struck out par. (1) heading, substituted "Subject to subsection (j), each national securities" for "Each national securities", inserted "registered on a national securities exchange or" after "narrow-based security index)", struck out ", excluding any sales for which a fee is paid under subsection (c) of this section" after "national securities association", and struck out pars. (2) and (3), which related to deposit of fees and lapse of appropriations.

Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(2), struck out heading and text of former subsec. (c). Text read as follows: "Each national securities association shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate equal to 1/300 of one percent of the aggregate dollar amount of sales transacted by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange of securities registered on such an exchange (other than bonds, debentures, other evidences of indebtedness, and security futures products), except that for fiscal year 2007 or any succeeding fiscal year such rate shall be equal to 1/800 of one percent of such aggregate dollar amount of sales. Fees collected pursuant to this subsection shall be deposited and collected as general revenue of the Treasury."

Pub. L. 107–123, §2(1),(2), (4), which directed that subsec. (d) be amended by substituting "\$15 per \$1,000,000" for "1/300 of one percent" and "security futures products, and options on securities indexes (excluding a narrow-based security index)" for "and security futures products", and striking out ", except that for fiscal year 2007, or any succeeding fiscal year, such rate shall be equal to 1/800 of one percent of such aggregate dollar amount of sale" before period at end of par. (1), was executed by making the amendment in subsec. (c), to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the amendment by Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(3), which redesignated subsec. (d) as (c). See above.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(4), (6), redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and substituted "except that for fiscal year 2007 and each succeeding fiscal year such assessment shall be equal to \$0.0042 for each such transaction" for "except that for fiscal year 2007 or any succeeding fiscal year such assessment shall be equal to \$0.0075 for each such transaction. Assessments collected pursuant to this subsection shall be deposited and collected as general revenue of the Treasury". Former subsec. (d) redesignated (c).

Pub. L. 107–123, §2(5), which directed that subsec. (e) be amended by substituting "\$0.009" for "\$0.02", was executed by making the amendment in subsec. (d), to reflect the probable intent of Congress and the amendment by Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(4), (6) which redesignated subsec. (e) as (d). See above.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(5), (6), redesignated subsec. (f) as (e) and substituted "Dates for payments" for "Dates for payment of fees" in heading and "The fees and assessments required" for "The fees required" in introductory provisions. Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(6), redesignated subsec. (g) as (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (e).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(6), (b)(2), redesignated subsec. (h) as (g) and inserted before period at end "not later than April 30 of the fiscal year preceding the fiscal year to which such rate applies, together with any estimates or projections on which such fees are based". Former subsec. (g) redesignated (f).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(6), redesignated subsec. (i), as enacted by Pub. L. 107–123, §2(6), as (h). See below. Former subsec. (h) redesignated (g).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(a)(7), added subsec. (i).

Pub. L. 107–123, §2(6), added subsec. (i).

Subsecs. (j) to (l). Pub. L. 107–123, §3(b)(1), added subsecs. (j) to (l).

**2000**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(1)], inserted "and assessments" after "fees".

Subsecs. (b), (c), (d)(1). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(2)], substituted "other evidences of indebtedness, and security futures products" for "and other evidences of indebtedness".

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(6)], added subsec. (e). Former subsec. (e) redesignated (f).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(5)], redesignated subsec. (e) as (f). Former subsec. (f) redesignated (g).

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(3)], inserted "or assessment" after "fee".

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(5)], redesignated subsec. (f) as (g). Former subsec. (g) redesignated (h).

Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(4)], inserted "and assessment" after "fee".

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 106–554, §1(a)(5) [title II, §206(f)(5)], redesignated subsec. (g) as (h).

**1998**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 105–353 substituted "this section" for "this subsection".

**1996**—Pub. L. 104–290 reenacted section catchline without change and amended text generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "Every national securities exchange shall pay to the Commission on or before March 15 of each calendar year a fee in an amount equal to one three-hundredths of 1 per centum of the aggregate dollar amount of the sales of securities (other than bonds, debentures, and other evidences of indebtedness) transacted on such national securities exchange during each preceding calendar year to which this section applies. Every registered broker and dealer shall pay to the Commission on or before March 15 of each calendar year a fee in an amount equal to one three-hundredths of 1 per centum of the aggregate dollar amount of the sales of securities registered on a national securities exchange (other than bonds, debentures, and other evidences of indebtedness) transacted by such broker or dealer otherwise than on such an exchange during each preceding calendar year: *Provided, however,* That no payment shall be required for any calendar year in which such payment would be less than one hundred dollars. The Commission, by rule, may exempt any sale of securities or any class of sales of securities from any fee imposed by this section, if the Commission finds that such exemption is consistent with the public interest, the equal regulation of markets and brokers and dealers, and the development of a national market system."

**1975**—Pub. L. 94–29 amended section generally, extending provisions requiring the payment of fees to include transactions in listed securities which occur in the over-the-counter market.

**1944**—Act Mar. 17, 1944, amended section generally, inserting provisions exempting from the payment of the fee securities designated for exemption by the Secretary of the Treasury.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by section 991(d)(1) of Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §991(a)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1951, provided that: "The amendments made by this subsection [amending this section] shall take effect on the later of—

"(A) October 1, 2011; or

"(B) the date of enactment of an Act making a regular appropriation to the [Securities and Exchange] Commission for fiscal year 2012 [Div. C of Pub. L. 112–74, approved Dec. 23, 2011]."

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2002 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 107–123, §11, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2401, provided that:

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsections (b) and (c), the amendments made by this Act [see Short Title of 2002 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] shall take effect on October 1, 2001.

"(b) IMMEDIATE TRANSACTION FEE REDUCTIONS.—The amendments made by section 2 [amending this section] shall take effect on the later of—

"(1) the first day of fiscal year 2002; or

"(2) thirty days after the date on which a regular appropriation to the Commission for such fiscal year is enacted.

"(c) ADDITIONAL EXCEPTIONS.—The authorities provided by section 6(b)(9) of the Securities Act of 1933 [15 U.S.C. 77f(b)(9)] and sections 13(e)(9), 14(g)(9), and 31(k) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78m(e)(9), 78n(g)(9), and 78ee(k)], as so designated by this Act, shall not apply until October 1, 2002."

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1996 AMENDMENT**

Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, §405(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3443, provided that:

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in paragraph (2), the amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to transactions in securities that occur on or after October 1, 1997.

"(2) OFF-EXCHANGE TRADES OF LAST SALE REPORTED TRANSACTIONS.—The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall apply with respect to transactions described in section 31(d)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [subsec. (d)(1) of this section] (as amended by subsection (a) of this section) that occur on or after September 1, 1997."

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective Jan. 1, 1976, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### **TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS**

For transfer of functions of Securities and Exchange Commission, with certain exceptions, to Chairman of such Commission, see Reorg. Plan No. 10 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3175, 64 Stat. 1265, set out under section 78d of this title.

### **SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION OVERPAYMENT CREDIT**

Pub. L. 115–174, title V, §505, May 24, 2018, 132 Stat. 1362, provided that:

"(a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section—

"(1) the term 'Commission' means the Securities and Exchange Commission;

"(2) the term 'national securities association' means an association that is registered under section 15A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78o–3); and

"(3) the term 'national securities exchange' means an exchange that is registered as a national securities exchange under section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78f).

"(b) CREDIT FOR OVERPAYMENT OF FEES.—Notwithstanding section 31(j) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78ee(j)), and subject to subsection (c) of this section, if a national securities exchange or a national securities association has paid fees and assessments to the Commission in an amount that is more than the amount that the exchange or association was required to pay under section 31 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78ee) and, not later than 10 years after the date of such payment, the exchange or association informs the Commission about the payment of such excess amount, the Commission shall offset future fees and assessments due by that exchange or association in an amount that is equal to the difference between the amount that the exchange or association paid and the amount that the exchange or association was required to pay under such section 31.

"(c) APPLICABILITY.—Subsection (b) shall apply only to fees and assessments that a national securities exchange or a national securities association was required to pay to the Commission before the date of enactment of this Act [May 24, 2018]."

### **BUDGET OF THE PRESIDENT**

Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §991(d)(2), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1954, provided that: "For fiscal year 2012, and each fiscal year thereafter, the annual budget for the Administration submitted by the President to Congress shall reflect the amendments made by this section [amending this section and sections 77f, 78d, 78m, 78n, and 78kk of this title]."

### **STUDY OF THE EFFECT OF FEE REDUCTIONS**

Pub. L. 107–123, §9, Jan. 16, 2002, 115 Stat. 2400, provided that:

"(a) STUDY.—The Office of Economic Analysis of the Securities and Exchange Commission (hereinafter referred to as the 'Office') shall conduct a study of the extent to which the benefits of reductions in fees

effected as a result of this Act [see Short Title of 2002 Amendment note set out under section 78a of this title] are passed on to investors.

"(b) **FACTORS FOR CONSIDERATION.**—In conducting the study under subsection (a), the Office shall—

"(1) consider the various elements of the securities industry directly and indirectly benefiting from the fee reductions, including purchasers and sellers of securities, members of national securities exchanges, issuers, broker-dealers, underwriters, participants in investment companies, retirement programs, and others;

"(2) consider the impact on different types of investors, such as individual equity holders, individual investment company shareholders, businesses, and other types of investors;

"(3) include in the interpretation of the term 'investor' shareholders of entities subject to the fee reductions; and

"(4) consider the economic benefits to investors flowing from the fee reductions to include such factors as market efficiency, expansion of investment opportunities, and enhanced liquidity and capital formation.

"(c) **REPORT TO CONGRESS.**—Not later than 2 years after the date of the enactment of this Act [Jan. 16, 2002], the Securities and Exchange Commission shall submit to the Congress the report prepared by the Office on the findings of the study conducted under subsection (a)."

### **FEES FROM NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS FOR MEMBER TRANSACTIONS OTHER THAN ON NATIONAL SECURITIES EXCHANGES**

Pub. L. 104–208, div. A, title I, §101(a) [title V], Sept. 30, 1996, 110 Stat. 3009, 3009-61, provided in part: "That effective January 1, 1997, every national securities association shall pay to the Commission a fee at a rate of one-three-hundredth of one percentum of the aggregate dollar amount of sales transacted by or through any member of such association otherwise than on a national securities exchange (other than bonds, debentures, and other evidences of indebtedness) subject to prompt last sale reporting pursuant to the rules of the Commission or a registered national securities association, excluding any sales for which a fee is paid under section 31 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78ee), and such increase shall be deposited as an offsetting collection to this appropriation, to remain available until expended, to recover the costs to the Government of the supervision and regulation of securities markets and securities professionals: *Provided further*, That the fee due from every national securities association shall be paid on or before September 30, 1997, with respect to transactions and sales occurring during the period beginning on January 1, 1997, and ending at the close of August 31, 1997".

### **ADJUSTMENT OF TRANSACTION FEE RATE**

By order dated Apr. 17, 2018, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$13.00 per \$1,000,000, effective May 22, 2018, see 83 F.R. 17577.

By order dated May 31, 2017, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$23.10 per \$1,000,000, effective July 4, 2017, see 82 F.R. 25895.

By order dated Jan. 7, 2016, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$21.80 per \$1,000,000, effective Feb. 16, 2016, see 81 F.R. 1458.

By order dated Jan. 15, 2015, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$18.40 per \$1,000,000, effective Feb. 14, 2015, see 80 F.R. 2978.

By order dated Feb. 12, 2014, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$22.10 per \$1,000,000, effective Mar. 18, 2014, see 79 F.R. 9504.

By order dated Apr. 25, 2013, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$17.40 per \$1,000,000, effective May 25, 2013, see 78 F.R. 25515.

By order dated Mar. 1, 2012, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$22.40 per \$1,000,000, effective Apr. 1, 2012, see 77 F.R. 13663.

By order dated Jan. 20, 2012, the Securities and Exchange Commission adjusted the fee rates applicable under subsecs. (b) and (c) of this section to \$18.00 per \$1,000,000, effective Feb. 21, 2012, see 77 F.R. 3818.

<sup>1</sup> *See Adjustment of Transaction Fee Rate notes below.*

## §78ff. Penalties

### (a) Willful violations; false and misleading statements

Any person who willfully violates any provision of this chapter (other than section 78dd–1 of this title), or any rule or regulation thereunder the violation of which is made unlawful or the observance of which is required under the terms of this chapter, or any person who willfully and knowingly makes, or causes to be made, any statement in any application, report, or document required to be filed under this chapter or any rule or regulation thereunder or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title, or by any self-regulatory organization in connection with an application for membership or participation therein or to become associated with a member thereof which statement was false or misleading with respect to any material fact, shall upon conviction be fined not more than \$5,000,000, or imprisoned not more than 20 years, or both, except that when such person is a person other than a natural person, a fine not exceeding \$25,000,000 may be imposed; but no person shall be subject to imprisonment under this section for the violation of any rule or regulation if he proves that he had no knowledge of such rule or regulation.

### (b) Failure to file information, documents, or reports

Any issuer which fails to file information, documents, or reports required to be filed under subsection (d) of section 78o of this title or any rule or regulation thereunder shall forfeit to the United States the sum of \$100 for each and every day such failure to file shall continue. Such forfeiture, which shall be in lieu of any criminal penalty for such failure to file which might be deemed to arise under subsection (a) of this section, shall be payable into the Treasury of the United States and shall be recoverable in a civil suit in the name of the United States.

### (c) Violations by issuers, officers, directors, stockholders, employees, or agents of issuers

(1)(A) Any issuer that violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be fined not more than \$2,000,000.

(B) Any issuer that violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Commission.

(2)(A) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who willfully violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be fined not more than \$100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

(B) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who violates subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1 of this title shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000 imposed in an action brought by the Commission.

(3) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) upon any officer, director, employee, agent, or stockholder of an issuer, such fine may not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such issuer.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §32, 48 Stat. 904; May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §9, 49 Stat. 1380; June 25, 1938, ch. 677, §4, 52 Stat. 1076; Pub. L. 88–467, §11, Aug. 20, 1964, 78 Stat. 580; Pub. L. 94–29, §§23, 27(b), June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 162, 163; Pub. L. 95–213, title I, §103(b), Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1496; Pub. L. 98–376, §3, Aug. 10, 1984, 98 Stat. 1265; Pub. L. 100–418, title V, §5003(b), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1419; Pub. L. 100–704, §4, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4680; Pub. L. 105–366, §2(d), Nov. 10, 1998, 112 Stat. 3303; Pub. L. 107–204, title XI, §1106, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 810.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

**2002**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 107–204 substituted "\$5,000,000, or imprisoned not more than 20 years" for "\$1,000,000, or imprisoned not more than 10 years" and "\$25,000,000" for "\$2,500,000".

**1998**—Subsec. (c)(1). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(d)(1), (2), substituted "subsection (a) or (g) of section 78dd–1" for "section 78dd–1(a)" in subpars. (A) and (B).

Subsec. (c)(2). Pub. L. 105–366, §2(d)(3), amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows:

"(2)(A) Any officer or director of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who willfully violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall be fined not more than \$100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

"(B) Any employee or agent of an issuer who is a United States citizen, national, or resident or is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (other than an officer, director, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer), and who willfully violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title, shall be fined not more than \$100,000, or imprisoned not more than 5 years, or both.

"(C) Any officer, director, employee, or agent of an issuer, or stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall be subject to a civil penalty of not more than \$10,000

imposed in an action brought by the Commission."

**1988**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–704 substituted "\$1,000,000" for "\$100,000", "10 years" for "five years", "is a person other than a natural person" for "is an exchange", and "\$2,500,000" for "\$500,000".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–418 amended subsec. (c) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (c) read as follows:

"(1) Any issuer which violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than \$1,000,000.

"(2) Any officer or director of an issuer, or any stockholder acting on behalf of such issuer, who willfully violates section 78dd–1(a) of this title shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than \$10,000, or imprisoned not more than five years, or both.

"(3) Whenever an issuer is found to have violated section 78dd–1(a) of this title, any employee or agent of such issuer who is a United States citizen, national, or resident or is otherwise subject to the jurisdiction of the United States (other than an officer, director, or stockholder of such issuer), and who willfully carried out the act or practice constituting such violation shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than \$10,000, or imprisoned not more than five years, or both.

"(4) Whenever a fine is imposed under paragraph (2) or (3) of this subsection upon any officer, director, stockholder, employee, or agent of an issuer, such fine shall not be paid, directly or indirectly, by such issuer."

**1984**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 98–376 substituted "\$100,000" for "\$10,000".

**1977**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 95–213, §103(b)(1), inserted "(other than section 78dd–1 of this title)" after "Any person who willfully violates any provision of this chapter".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95–213, §103(b)(2), added subsec. (c).

**1975**—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94–29, §§23(1), 27(b), inserted "or by any self-regulatory organization in connection with an application for membership or participation therein or to become associated with a member thereof," and substituted "or imprisoned not more than five years" for "or imprisoned not more than two years".

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94–29, §23(2), struck out subsec. (c) which rendered this section inapplicable to violations of any rule or regulation prescribed pursuant to paragraph (3) of subsection (c) of section 78o of this title.

**1964**—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 88–467 substituted "required to be filed under" for "pursuant to an undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in" and inserted "or any rule or regulation thereunder" after "section 78o of this title."

**1938**—Subsec. (c). Act June 25, 1938, added subsec. (c).

**1936**—Subsec. (a). Act May 27, 1936, inserted "or any undertaking contained in a registration statement as provided in subsection (d) of section 78o of this title".

Subsec. (b). Act May 27, 1936, added subsec. (b).

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–704 not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704, set out as a note under section 78o of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 98–376 effective Aug. 10, 1984, see section 7 of Pub. L. 98–376, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1975 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 94–29 effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

### **EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1964 AMENDMENT**

Amendment by Pub. L. 88–467 effective Aug. 20, 1964, see section 13 of Pub. L. 88–467, set out as a note under section 78c of this title.

## **§78gg. Separability**

If any provision of this chapter, or the application of such provision to any person or circumstances, shall be held invalid, the remainder of the chapter and the application of such provision to persons or circumstances other than those as to which it is held invalid, shall not be affected thereby.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §33, 48 Stat. 905.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

### §78hh. Effective date

This chapter shall become effective on July 1, 1934, except that sections 78f and 78l(b to e) of this title shall become effective on September 1, 1934; and sections 78e, 78g, 78h, 78i(a)(6), 78j, 78k, 78l(a), 78m, 78n, 78o, 78p, 78q, 78r, 78s, and 78dd of this title shall become effective on October 1, 1934.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §34, 48 Stat. 905.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "This Act". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

### §78hh–1. Effective date of certain sections

This Act shall become effective on May 27, 1936; except that clause (2) of subsection (f) of section 78l of this title, and subsections (a) and (d) of section 78o of this title, shall become effective ninety days after May 27, 1936, and that clause (3) of subsection (f) of section 78l of this title shall become effective six months after May 27, 1936.

(May 27, 1936, ch. 462, §12, 49 Stat. 1380.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is act May 27, 1936, ch. 462, 49 Stat. 1375, popularly known as the Unlisted Securities Trading Act, which enacted sections 78l–1, 78o–1, 78o–2, and 78hh–1 of this title, and amended sections 78l, 78o, 78q, 78r, 78t, 78u, 78w, and 78ff of this title.

## CODIFICATION

Section was not enacted as a part of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 which comprises this chapter.

### §78ii. Omitted

## CODIFICATION

Section, act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title II, §210, 48 Stat. 908, transferred the powers, duties and functions of the Federal Trade Commission under subchapter I of chapter 2A of this title to the Securities and Exchange Commission. Pending proceedings before the Federal Trade Commission were continued before the Securities and Exchange Commission.

### §78jj. Repealed. Pub. L. 100–181, title III, §330, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1259

Section, act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title II, §211, 48 Stat. 909, provided for a study and report by Securities and Exchange Commission of reorganization proceedings. Study as basis for Trust Indenture Act of 1939, see section 77bbb of this title.

### §78kk. Authorization of appropriations

In addition to any other funds authorized to be appropriated to the Commission, there are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission—

- (1) for fiscal year 2011, \$1,300,000,000;
- (2) for fiscal year 2012, \$1,500,000,000;
- (3) for fiscal year 2013, \$1,750,000,000;
- (4) for fiscal year 2014, \$2,000,000,000; and
- (5) for fiscal year 2015, \$2,250,000,000.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §35, as added Pub. L. 94–29, §24, June 4, 1975, 89 Stat. 162; amended Pub. L. 95–20, Apr. 13, 1977, 91 Stat. 47; Pub. L. 95–211, Dec. 19, 1977, 91 Stat. 1492; Pub. L. 95–425, §1, Oct. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 962; Pub. L. 96–477, title IV, §401, Oct. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 2291; Pub. L. 100–181, title I, §101, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1249; Pub. L. 100–704, §8, Nov. 19, 1988, 102 Stat. 4683; Pub. L. 101–550, title I, §102, Nov. 15, 1990, 104 Stat. 2713; Pub. L. 104–290, title IV, §403, Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3441; Pub. L. 105–353, title II, §201, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3233; Pub. L. 107–204, title VI, §601, July 30, 2002, 116 Stat. 793; Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §991(c), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1953.)

### CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 94–29, which directed amendment of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by adding this section at the end, is reflected in the source credit above as adding this section to title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

### AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Pub. L. 111–203 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, section related to appropriation for fiscal year 2003 and specified amounts to fund certain additional compensation, for mitigation activities after the Sept. 11, 2001, attacks, and to add additional oversight personnel and improve investigative and disciplinary efforts.

**2002**—Pub. L. 107–204 amended section generally, updating fiscal year from 1999 to 2003, striking out subsec. designations, and substituting provisions relating to funding of additional compensation, terrorist-related information technology, security enhancements, and recovery and mitigation activities, and an additional 200 qualified professionals to provide enhanced oversight for provisions relating to miscellaneous expenses such as meetings and official functions.

**1998**—Pub. L. 105–353 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission \$300,000,000 for fiscal year 1997, in addition to any other funds authorized to be appropriated to the Commission."

**1996**—Pub. L. 104–290 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission—

"(1) \$178,023,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1990; and

"(2) \$212,609,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1991."

**1990**—Pub. L. 101–550 amended section generally, substituting present provisions for former provisions which provided for fiscal years 1988 and 1989: in subsec. (a), for authorization of appropriations for the Commission; in subsec. (b), for amounts for the EDGAR system; and in subsec. (c), for amounts for reception and representation expenses and for membership in the International Organization of Securities Commissions.

**1988**—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–704 added subsec. (c).

**1987**—Pub. L. 100–181 amended section generally. Prior to amendment, text read as follows: "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out the functions, powers, and duties of the Commission not to exceed \$51,000,000 for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1976, \$56,500,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1977, \$63,750,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1978, \$69,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1979, \$79,000,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1980, \$85,500,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1981, \$96,640,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1982, and \$106,610,000 for the fiscal year ending September 30, 1983. For fiscal years succeeding fiscal year 1983, there may be appropriated such sums as the Congress may hereafter authorize by law."

**1980**—Pub. L. 96–477 authorized appropriations of \$85,500,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1981, \$96,640,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1982, and \$106,610,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1983, and provided that for fiscal years succeeding 1983, there may be appropriated such sums as Congress may authorize by law.

**1978**—Pub. L. 95–425 inserted provision authorizing appropriations of not to exceed \$69,000,000, and \$79,000,000 for fiscal years ending Sept. 30, 1979 and 1980, respectively, and substituted "fiscal year 1980" for "fiscal year 1978".

**1977**—Pub. L. 95–211 authorized appropriations of not to exceed \$63,750,000 for fiscal year ending Sept. 30, 1978, and substituted "For the fiscal years succeeding fiscal year 1978" for "For fiscal years succeeding the 1977 fiscal year" in provisions relating to appropriations for succeeding fiscal years.

Pub. L. 95–20 substituted "\$56,500,000" for "\$55,000,000".

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as an Effective Date note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and

Banking.

### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 100–704 not applicable to actions occurring before Nov. 19, 1988, see section 9 of Pub. L. 100–704 set out as a note under section 78o of this title.

### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective June 4, 1975, see section 31(a) of Pub. L. 94–29, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

## §78//. Requirements for the EDGAR system

The Commission, by rule or regulation—

- (1) shall provide that any information in the EDGAR system that is required to be disseminated by the contractor—
  - (A) may be sold or disseminated by the contractor only pursuant to a uniform schedule of fees prescribed by the Commission;
  - (B) may be obtained by a purchaser by direct interconnection with the EDGAR system;
  - (C) shall be equally available on equal terms to all persons; and
  - (D) may be used, resold, or redisseminated by any person who has lawfully obtained such information without restriction and without payment of additional fees or royalties; and

(2) shall require that persons, or classes of persons, required to make filings with the Commission submit such filings in a form and manner suitable for entry into the EDGAR system and shall specify the date that such requirement is effective with respect to that person or class; except that the Commission may exempt persons or classes of persons, or filings or classes of filings, from such rules or regulations in order to prevent hardships or to avoid imposing unreasonable burdens or as otherwise may be necessary or appropriate.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §35A, as added Pub. L. 100–181, title I, §102, Dec. 4, 1987, 101 Stat. 1249; amended Pub. L. 105–353, title II, §202, Nov. 3, 1998, 112 Stat. 3234.)

### CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 100–181, which directed amendment of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by adding this section after section 35 of the Act, is reflected in the source credit above as adding this section to title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress. See Codification note set out under section 78kk of this title.

### AMENDMENTS

**1998**—Subsecs. (a) to (c). Pub. L. 105–353, §202(1), struck out subsecs. (a) to (c) which: in subsec. (a) required certifications and reports as prerequisite to obligation or expenditure of funds for establishment or operation of EDGAR system, and provided that former section 78kk(b) amounts were to be exclusive source of funds for systems procurement and operation; in subsec. (b) required report on status of EDGAR development, implementation, and progress to certain Congressional committees at six-month intervals; and in subsec. (c) required certification to Congressional committees of total costs, cost/benefit analysis, assurances of compliance, capabilities of system, competence of personnel, and review of test group filings prior to entering into contract for EDGAR system.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 105–353, §202(2), struck out "(d)" before "The Commission" in introductory provisions, in par. (2) substituted period for "; and" at end, and struck out par. (3) which read as follows: "shall require all persons who make any filing with the Commission, in addition to complying with such other rules concerning the form and manner of filing as the Commission may prescribe, to submit such filings in written or printed form—

"(A) for a period of at least one year after the effective date specified for such person or class under paragraph (2); or

"(B) for a shorter period if the Commission determines that the EDGAR system (i) is reliable, (ii) provides a suitable alternative to such written and printed filings, and (iii) assures that the provision of information through the EDGAR system is as effective and efficient for filers, users, and disseminators as provision of such information in written or printed form."

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 105–353, §202(1), struck out subsec. (e) which read as follows: "For the purposes of carrying out its responsibilities under subsection (d)(3) of this section, the Commission shall consult with representatives of persons filing, disseminating, and using information contained in filings with the Commission."

## §78mm. General exemptive authority

### (a) Authority

#### (1) In general

Except as provided in subsection (b), but notwithstanding any other provision of this chapter, the Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may conditionally or unconditionally exempt any person, security, or transaction, or any class or classes of persons, securities, or transactions, from any provision or provisions of this chapter or of any rule or regulation thereunder, to the extent that such exemption is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with the protection of investors.

#### (2) Procedures

The Commission shall, by rule or regulation, determine the procedures under which an exemptive order under this section shall be granted and may, in its sole discretion, decline to entertain any application for an order of exemption under this section.

### (b) Limitation

The Commission may not, under this section, exempt any person, security, or transaction, or any class or classes of persons, securities, or transactions from section 78o–5 of this title or the rules or regulations issued thereunder or (for purposes of section 78o–5 of this title and the rules and regulations issued thereunder) from any definition in paragraph (42), (43), (44), or (45) of section 78c(a) of this title.

### (c) Derivatives

Unless the Commission is expressly authorized by any provision described in this subsection to grant exemptions, the Commission shall not grant exemptions, with respect to amendments made by subtitle B of the Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010, with respect to paragraphs (65), (66), (68), (69), (70), (71), (72), (73), (74), (75), (76), and (79) of section 78c(a) of this title, and sections 78j–2(a), 78j–2(b), 78j–2(c), 78m–1, 78o–10, 78q–1(g), 78q–1(h), 78q–1(i), 78q–1(j), 78q–1(k), and 78q–1(l) of this title; provided that the Commission shall have exemptive authority under this chapter with respect to security-based swaps as to the same matters that the Commodity Futures Trading Commission has under the Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010 with respect to swaps, including under section 6(c) of title 7.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §36, as added Pub. L. 104–290, title I, §105(b), Oct. 11, 1996, 110 Stat. 3424; amended Pub. L. 111–203, title VII, §772(a), July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1801.)

#### AMENDMENT OF SECTION

*Unless otherwise provided, amendment by subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see 2010 Amendment notes and Effective Date of 2010 Amendment note below.*

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsecs. (a)(1) and (c), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title.

The Wall Street Transparency and Accountability Act of 2010, referred to in subsec. (c), is title VII of Pub. L. 111–203, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1641, which enacted chapter 109 (§8301 et seq.) of this title and enacted and amended numerous other sections and notes in the Code. Subtitle B of the Act enacted subchapter II (§8341 et seq.) of chapter 109 and sections 78c–3 to 78c–5, 78j–2, 78m–1, and 78o–10 of this title, amended sections 77b, 77b–1, 77e, 77q, 78c, 78c–1, 78f, 78i, 78j, 78m, 78o, 78p, 78q–1, 78t, 78u–1, 78u–2, 78bb, 78dd, 78mm, 80a–2, and 80b–2 of this title, enacted provisions set out as a note under section 77b of this title, and amended provisions set out as a note under section 78c of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 8301 of this title and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

**2010**—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 111–203 added subsec. (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 2010 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 111–203 effective on the later of 360 days after July 21, 2010, or, to the extent a provision of subtitle B (§§761–774) of title VII of Pub. L. 111–203 requires a rulemaking, not less than 60 days after publication of the final rule or regulation implementing such provision of subtitle B, see section 774 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 77b of this title.

## §78nn. Tennessee Valley Authority

### (a) In general

Commencing with the issuance by the Tennessee Valley Authority of an annual report on Commission Form 10–K (or any successor thereto) for fiscal year 2006 and thereafter, the Tennessee Valley Authority shall file with the Commission, in accordance with such rules and regulations as the Commission has prescribed or may prescribe, such periodic, current, and supplementary information, documents, and reports as would be required pursuant to section 78m of this title if the Tennessee Valley Authority were an issuer of a security registered pursuant to section 78l of this title. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, the Tennessee Valley Authority shall not be required to register any securities under this chapter, and shall not be deemed to have registered any securities under this chapter.

### (b) Limited treatment as issuer

Commencing with the issuance by the Tennessee Valley Authority of an annual report on Commission Form 10–K (or any successor thereto) for fiscal year 2006 and thereafter, the Tennessee Valley Authority shall be deemed to be an issuer for purposes of section 78j–1 of this title, other than for subsection (m)(1) or (m)(3) of section 78j–1 of this title. The Tennessee Valley Authority shall not be required by this subsection to comply with the rules issued by any national securities exchange or national securities association in response to rules issued by the Commission pursuant to section 78j–1(m)(1) of this title.

### (c) No effect on TVA authority

Nothing in this section shall be construed to diminish, impair, or otherwise affect the authority of the Board of Directors of the Tennessee Valley Authority to carry out its statutory functions under the Tennessee Valley Authority Act of 1933 [16 U.S.C. 831 et seq.].

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §37, as added Pub. L. 108–447, div. H, title V, §520(2), Dec. 8, 2004, 118 Stat. 3267.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (a), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title and Codification note below.

The Tennessee Valley Authority Act of 1933, referred to in subsec. (c), is act May 18, 1933, ch. 32, 48 Stat. 58, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 12A (§831 et seq.) of Title 16, Conservation. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 831 of Title 16 and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

Pub. L. 108–447, which directed amendment of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by adding this section at the end, is reflected in the source credit above as adding this section to title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

## §78oo. Federal National Mortgage Association, Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, Federal Home Loan Banks

### (a) Federal National Mortgage Association and Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation

No class of equity securities of the Federal National Mortgage Association or the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation shall be treated as an exempted security for purposes of section 78l, 78m, 78n, or 78p of this title.

### (b) Federal Home Loan Banks

#### (1) Registration

Each Federal Home Loan Bank shall register a class of its common stock under section 78l(g) of this title, not later than 120 days after July 30, 2008, and shall thereafter maintain such registration and be treated for purposes of this chapter as an "issuer", the securities of which are required to be registered under section 78l of this title, regardless of the number of members holding such stock at any given time.

#### (2) Standards relating to audit committees

Each Federal Home Loan Bank shall comply with the rules issued by the Commission under section 78j–1(m) of this title.

### (c) Definitions

For purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

#### (1) Federal Home Loan Bank; member

The terms "Federal Home Loan Bank" and "member", have the same meanings as in section 1422 of title 12.

#### (2) Federal National Mortgage Association

The term "Federal National Mortgage Association" means the corporation created by the Federal National Mortgage Association Charter Act [12 U.S.C. 1716 et seq.].

### **(3) Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation**

The term "Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation" means the corporation created by the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation Act [12 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.].

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §38, as added Pub. L. 110–289, div. A, title I, §1112, July 30, 2008, 122 Stat. 2677.)

## **REFERENCES IN TEXT**

This chapter, referred to in subsec. (b)(1), was in the original "this title". See References in Text note set out under section 78a of this title and Codification note below.

The Federal National Mortgage Association Charter Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(2), is title III of act June 27, 1934, ch. 847, 48 Stat. 1252, which is classified generally to subchapter III (§1716 et seq.) of chapter 13 of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1716 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation Act, referred to in subsec. (c)(3), is title III of Pub. L. 91–351, July 24, 1970, 84 Stat. 451, which is classified generally to chapter 11A (§1451 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title and Statement of Purpose note set out under section 1451 of Title 12 and Tables.

## **CODIFICATION**

Pub. L. 110–289, which directed amendment of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 by adding this section at the end, is reflected in the source credit above as adding this section to title I of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

## **§78pp. Investor Advisory Committee**

### **(a) Establishment and purpose**

#### **(1) Establishment**

There is established within the Commission the Investor Advisory Committee (referred to in this section as the "Committee").

#### **(2) Purpose**

The Committee shall—

(A) advise and consult with the Commission on—

- (i) regulatory priorities of the Commission;
- (ii) issues relating to the regulation of securities products, trading strategies, and fee structures, and the effectiveness of disclosure;
- (iii) initiatives to protect investor interest; and
- (iv) initiatives to promote investor confidence and the integrity of the securities marketplace; and

(B) submit to the Commission such findings and recommendations as the Committee determines are appropriate, including recommendations for proposed legislative changes.

### **(b) Membership**

#### **(1) In general**

The members of the Committee shall be—

- (A) the Investor Advocate;
- (B) a representative of State securities commissions;
- (C) a representative of the interests of senior citizens; and
- (D) not fewer than 10, and not more than 20, members appointed by the Commission, from among individuals who—
  - (i) represent the interests of individual equity and debt investors, including investors in mutual funds;
  - (ii) represent the interests of institutional investors, including the interests of pension funds and registered investment companies;
  - (iii) are knowledgeable about investment issues and decisions; and
  - (iv) have reputations of integrity.

#### **(2) Term**

Each member of the Committee appointed under paragraph (1)(B) shall serve for a term of 4 years.

#### **(3) Members not Commission employees**

Members appointed under paragraph (1)(B) shall not be deemed to be employees or agents of the Commission solely because of membership on the Committee.

**(c) Chairman; vice chairman; secretary; assistant secretary**

**(1) In general**

The members of the Committee shall elect, from among the members of the Committee—

- (A) a chairman, who may not be employed by an issuer;
- (B) a vice chairman, who may not be employed by an issuer;
- (C) a secretary; and
- (D) an assistant secretary.

**(2) Term**

Each member elected under paragraph (1) shall serve for a term of 3 years in the capacity for which the member was elected under paragraph (1).

**(d) Meetings**

**(1) Frequency of meetings**

The Committee shall meet—

- (A) not less frequently than twice annually, at the call of the chairman of the Committee; and
- (B) from time to time, at the call of the Commission.

**(2) Notice**

The chairman of the Committee shall give the members of the Committee written notice of each meeting, not later than 2 weeks before the date of the meeting.

**(e) Compensation and travel expenses**

Each member of the Committee who is not a full-time employee of the United States shall—

(1) be entitled to receive compensation at a rate not to exceed the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay in effect for a position at level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5 for each day during which the member is engaged in the actual performance of the duties of the Committee; and

(2) while away from the home or regular place of business of the member in the performance of services for the Committee, be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in the same manner as persons employed intermittently in the Government service are allowed expenses under section 5703(b)<sup>1</sup> of title 5.

**(f) Staff**

The Commission shall make available to the Committee such staff as the chairman of the Committee determines are necessary to carry out this section.

**(g) Review by Commission**

The Commission shall—

- (1) review the findings and recommendations of the Committee; and
- (2) each time the Committee submits a finding or recommendation to the Commission, promptly issue a public statement—
  - (A) assessing the finding or recommendation of the Committee; and
  - (B) disclosing the action, if any, the Commission intends to take with respect to the finding or recommendation.

**(h) Committee findings**

Nothing in this section shall require the Commission to agree to or act upon any finding or recommendation of the Committee.

**(i) Federal Advisory Committee Act**

The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall not apply with respect to the Committee and its activities.

**(j) Authorization of appropriations**

There is authorized to be appropriated to the Commission such sums as are necessary to carry out this section.

(June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §39, as added Pub. L. 111–203, title IX, §911, July 21, 2010, 124 Stat. 1822.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (i), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective 1 day after July 21, 2010, except as otherwise provided, see section 4 of Pub. L. 111–203, set out as a note under section 5301 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

<sup>1</sup> *So in original. Section 5703 of Title 5 does not contain a subsec. (b).*

## §78qq. Small Business Capital Formation Advisory Committee

### (a) Establishment and purpose

#### (1) Establishment

There is established within the Commission the Small Business Capital Formation Advisory Committee (hereafter in this section referred to as the "Committee").

#### (2) Functions

##### (A) In general

The Committee shall provide the Commission with advice on the Commission's rules, regulations, and policies with regard to the Commission's mission of protecting investors, maintaining fair, orderly, and efficient markets, and facilitating capital formation, as such rules, regulations, and policies relate to—

- (i) capital raising by emerging, privately held small businesses ("emerging companies") and publicly traded companies with less than \$250,000,000 in public market capitalization ("smaller public companies") through securities offerings, including private and limited offerings and initial and other public offerings;
- (ii) trading in the securities of emerging companies and smaller public companies; and
- (iii) public reporting and corporate governance requirements of emerging companies and smaller public companies.

##### (B) Limitation

The Committee shall not provide any advice with respect to any policies, practices, actions, or decisions concerning the Commission's enforcement program.

### (b) Membership

#### (1) In general

The members of the Committee shall be—

- (A) the Advocate for Small Business Capital Formation;
- (B) not fewer than 10, and not more than 20, members appointed by the Commission, from among individuals—
  - (i) who represent—
    - (I) emerging companies engaging in private and limited securities offerings or considering initial public offerings ("IPO") (including the companies' officers and directors);
    - (II) the professional advisors of such companies (including attorneys, accountants, investment bankers, and financial advisors); and
    - (III) the investors in such companies (including angel investors, venture capital funds, and family offices);
  - (ii) who are officers or directors of minority-owned small businesses or women-owned small businesses;
  - (iii) who represent—
    - (I) smaller public companies (including the companies' officers and directors);
    - (II) the professional advisors of such companies (including attorneys, auditors, underwriters, and financial advisors); and
    - (III) the pre-IPO and post-IPO investors in such companies (both institutional, such as venture capital funds, and individual, such as angel investors); and
  - (iv) who represent participants in the marketplace for the securities of emerging companies and smaller public companies, such as securities exchanges, alternative trading systems, analysts, information processors, and transfer agents; and
- (C) three non-voting members—
  - (i) one of whom shall be appointed by the Investor Advocate;
  - (ii) one of whom shall be appointed by the North American Securities Administrators Association; and
  - (iii) one of whom shall be appointed by the Administrator of the Small Business Administration.

#### (2) Term

Each member of the Committee appointed under subparagraph (B), (C)(ii), or (C)(iii) of paragraph (1) shall serve for a term of 4 years.

#### (3) Members not Commission employees

Members appointed under subparagraph (B), (C)(ii), or (C)(iii) of paragraph (1) shall not be treated as employees or agents of the Commission solely because of membership on the Committee.

### (c) Chairman; vice chairman; secretary; assistant secretary

#### (1) In general

The members of the Committee shall elect, from among the members of the Committee—

- (A) a chairman;
- (B) a vice chairman;
- (C) a secretary; and
- (D) an assistant secretary.

**(2) Term**

Each member elected under paragraph (1) shall serve for a term of 3 years in the capacity for which the member was elected under paragraph (1).

**(d) Meetings**

**(1) Frequency of meetings**

The Committee shall meet—

- (A) not less frequently than four times annually, at the call of the chairman of the Committee; and
- (B) from time to time, at the call of the Commission.

**(2) Notice**

The chairman of the Committee shall give the members of the Committee written notice of each meeting, not later than 2 weeks before the date of the meeting.

**(e) Compensation and travel expenses**

Each member of the Committee who is not a full-time employee of the United States shall—

(1) be entitled to receive compensation at a rate not to exceed the daily equivalent of the annual rate of basic pay in effect for a position at level V of the Executive Schedule under section 5316 of title 5 for each day during which the member is engaged in the actual performance of the duties of the Committee; and

(2) while away from the home or regular place of business of the member in the performance of services for the Committee, be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, in the same manner as persons employed intermittently in the Government service are allowed expenses under section 5703 of title 5.

**(f) Staff**

The Commission shall make available to the Committee such staff as the chairman of the Committee determines are necessary to carry out this section.

**(g) Review by Commission**

The Commission shall—

(1) review the findings and recommendations of the Committee; and

(2) each time the Committee submits a finding or recommendation to the Commission, promptly issue a public statement—

(A) assessing the finding or recommendation of the Committee; and

(B) disclosing the action, if any, the Commission intends to take with respect to the finding or recommendation.

**(h) Federal Advisory Committee Act**

The Federal Advisory Committee Act (5 U.S.C. App.) shall not apply with respect to the Committee and its activities. (June 6, 1934, ch. 404, title I, §40, as added Pub. L. 114–284, §2(b), Dec. 16, 2016, 130 Stat. 1450.)

**REFERENCES IN TEXT**

The Federal Advisory Committee Act, referred to in subsec. (h), is Pub. L. 92–463, Oct. 6, 1972, 86 Stat. 770, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.